



ALFRED NOBEL UNIVERSITY

PRACTICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR

PART II



УНІВЕРСИТЕТ імені АЛЬФРЕДА НОБЕЛЯ

**К.О. ВЕЛЬЧЄВА
В.В. МУРИЧ**

ПРАКТИЧНА ГРАМАТИКА АНГЛІЙСЬКОЇ МОВИ

Частина II

НАВЧАЛЬНИЙ ПОСІБНИК

3-тє видання, доопрацьоване

Дніпро
2018

Рецензенти:

М.Ю. Волкова, кандидат філологічних наук, доцент, доцент кафедри англійської філології Дніпровського національного університету імені Олеся Гончара;

Т.В. Іщенко, кандидат філологічних наук, доцент кафедри англійської філології та перекладу Університету імені Альфреда Нобеля.

Вельчева К.О.

В 28 Practical English Grammar = Практична граматики англійської мови. Ч. II.: навчальний посібник / К.О. Вельчева, В.В. Мурич. – Дніпро: Університет імені Альфреда Нобеля, 2018. – 312 с.

ISBN 978-966-434-410-1

Посібник є другою частиною комплексу тренувальних і умовно-комунікативних вправ для засвоєння граматичних форм та формування перекладацьких навичок.

Кожний з п'яти розділів посібника містить теоретичний матеріал та практичні завдання, спрямовані на розвиток граматичних навичок та умінь. Може бути використаний для набуття знань з практичної граматики англійської мови та перекладацьких навичок та умінь студентами спеціальності «Філологія».

Видання призначене також для тих, хто готується до складання тестів з англійської мови FCE, IELTS тощо.

УДК 81'367

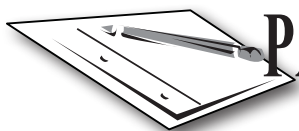
© К.О. Вельчева, В.В. Мурич, 2018

© Університет імені Альфреда Нобеля,
оформлення, 2018

3MICT

PART I. The Verb	5
1. The Verb as Part of Speech.....	5
2. The Category of Mood.....	8
3. The Subjunctive Mood.....	9
PART II. The Infinitive	55
4. The Non-Finite Forms of the Verb	55
5. Types of the Infinitive Stem.....	55
6. Features and Forms of the Infinitive	61
7. The Syntactical Functions of the Infinitive	69
8. Predicative Constructions with the Infinitive.....	97
PART III. The Gerund	137
9. Grammatical Meaning of the Gerund	137
10. Features and Forms of the Gerund.....	137
11. The Syntactical Functions of the Gerund.....	143
12. The Gerund and the Infinitive Compared	178
13. The Gerund and the Verbal Noun Compared	189
PART IV. The Participle	192
14. Features and Forms of the Participle	192
15. The Syntactical Functions of the Participle	197
16. Predicative Constructions with the Participle	209
PART V. Modal Verbs	242
17. Definition and General Characteristics of Modal Verbs.....	242
18. Can	242
19. May	250
20. Must	256
21. Have to	262
22. Need	266
23. Be to	268

24. Should, Ought	273
25. Shall, Will, Would	281
26. General Revision.....	297



PART I

The Verb

1. THE VERB AS PART OF SPEECH

1.1. The verb is a part of speech which denotes an action or a state.

According to their morphological structure verbs are divided into:

- a) **simple** – consisting of only one root morpheme (*ask, build, come*);
- b) **derived** – consisting of one root morpheme and one or more prefix or suffix. The main verb-forming suffixes are *-ize, -ify, -en, -ate* (*criticize, justify, blacken, enumerate*). The verb-forming prefixes are *en-, be-* (*enlarge, behead*);
- c) **compound** – consisting of more than one stem (*whitewash, stirfry, daydream*);
- d) **phrasal** – consisting of a verbal stem and an adverbial particle (*give in, bring up, look out, put on*).

1.2. According to their syntactic function verbs are divided into:

- a) **notional verbs** – they have a full meaning of their own and can be used without any additional words as a simple predicate.
 - *They returned yesterday.*
- b) **modal verbs** – they are used to show the speaker's attitude towards the action or state indicated by the infinitive. They show that the action or state is considered possible, impossible, necessary, doubtful, etc. The modal verbs are *can (could), may (might), must, should, ought, shall, will, would, need, dare*. The modal expressions *be+Infinitive* and *have+Infinitive* also belong here.
 - *You ought to help your friend. We are to meet at 7 o'clock.*
- c) **auxiliary verbs** – their role is purely grammatical. English auxiliaries are *do, have, be, shall, should, will, would*.
 - *He is watching TV. She has drawn a picture. I don't like it. We will buy a dog.*
- d) **link verbs** – they are used to form the compound nominal predicate. The most common link verbs are *be, become, grow, get, turn, look, seem, smell, taste, feel*.

- *He is a doctor. It grew warmer. I'm getting tired. You look good today. The salad smells bad.*

1.3. Notional verbs can be transitive and intransitive.

Transitive verbs can take a direct object, i.e. they express an action which passes on to a person or thing directly.

- *I have read the newspaper. I don't know him.*

Intransitive verbs cannot take a direct object.

- *He swam across the river. She stood still.*

There are verbs which in different contexts can be transitive or intransitive:

- *The woman opened the door.*
- *The door opened.*

1.4. Verbs have finite and non-finite forms. Finite forms can be used as the predicate of a sentence. They possess the morphological categories of person, number, tense, aspect, perfect, voice and mood.

Non-finite forms (or **verbals**) are the infinitive, the gerund and the participle. They possess the categories of perfect and voice, the infinitive also has the category of aspect. Modal verbs lack non-finite forms.

The Morphological Categories of the Verb

1.5. English morphological categories are formed synthetically and analytically.

Synthetic forms unite the lexical and the grammatical meaning in one word. These are, for example, the Present and the Past Simple affirmative (*sing, sings, sang*).

Analytical forms consist of at least two elements, and verbal forms of this type are made up of an auxiliary verb (or verbs) and a notional verb. The notional verb in this case is represented by participle I, participle II or the infinitive.

- *Jane is singing. The song has been sung. Do you sing?*

The verb has the categories of person, number, tense, aspect, perfect, voice and mood.

The category of person shows whether the action is performed by the speaker (the 1st person), someone addressed by the speaker (the 2nd person) or someone/something other than the speaker or the person addressed (the 3rd person).

The category of number shows whether the action is performed by one or more than one persons or non-persons.

The category of tense expresses the relationship between the time of the action and the time of speaking.

The time of speaking is designated as the present, the time that follows the time of speaking is designated as the future, the time that precedes the time of speaking is designated as the past. Accordingly there is the present tense, the future tense and the past tense. Besides, there is the future in the past tense in English: here the future is looked upon not from the point of view of the moment of speaking (the present) but from the point of view of some moment in the past.

Each tense is represented by 4 verb forms.

The category of aspect shows the character of the action, i.e. whether the action is taken in progress or is simply stated.

Continuous Aspect	Non-continuous (Common) Aspect
<i>is speaking</i>	<i>speaks</i>
<i>was speaking</i>	<i>spoke</i>
<i>will be speaking</i>	<i>will speak</i>
<i>has been speaking</i>	<i>has spoken</i>

Some verbs do not have the forms of the continuous aspect. They are called **state verbs**.

The category of perfect is formed by the opposition of the perfect to the non-perfect. The perfect forms denote actions preceding certain moments of time in the present, past or future. The non-perfect forms denote actions belonging to certain moments of time in the present, past or future.

Perfect	Non-perfect
<i>I have seen the film, and I think it is dull</i>	<i>I see you are tired</i>
<i>At last you are here! I've been waiting for you so long!</i>	<i>Whom are you waiting for?</i>
<i>She had left by the 2nd of September</i>	<i>She left on the 2nd of September.</i>
<i>She had been sleeping for half an hour when the telephone woke her</i>	<i>When the fire began, everybody was sleeping</i>
<i>I'll have returned before you get the supper ready</i>	<i>I'll return at 10</i>

The category of voice indicates the relation of the predicate to the subject and the object. There are 2 main voices in English: the active voice and the passive voice. The active voice indicates that the action is done by the subject. The passive voice indicates that the action is directed towards the subject.

2. THE CATEGORY OF MOOD

2.1. Mood is a grammatical category which indicates the attitude of the speaker towards the action expressed by the verb from the point of view of its reality.

There are three moods in the English language:

- the indicative mood
- the imperative mood
- the subjunctive mood

2.2. The indicative mood shows that the action or state expressed by the verb is presented as a fact. The indicative mood is also used to express a real condition.

- *We went home early in the evening.*
- *If it rains, I will stay at home.*

2.3. The imperative mood expresses a command or a request. The imperative mood has only one form which coincides with the infinitive without the particle *to*.

- *Be quiet and hear what I tell you.*
- *Don't make noise!*
- *Let the children go home at once.*
- *Let's go and have some fresh coffee.*

The auxiliary verb **do** may also be used in affirmative sentences to make the request more emphatic.

- *Do answer my question!!!*

2.4. The subjunctive mood is used to express non-facts: unreal actions and states, or hypothetical ones. “An action or a state is hypothetical” means that the speaker does not know whether it will take place or not.

- *I wish I were ten years younger.*
- *We suggest that Emily should stay with us.*

The subjunctive mood is also used to express an emotional attitude of the speaker to real facts.

- *It is sad that we should have made such a mistake.*

2.4.1. In Modern English the subjunctive mood has synthetic and analytical forms. The synthetic forms are the Present Subjunctive of all the verbs and the Past Subjunctive of the verb *to be*.

The Present Subjunctive coincides with the form of the bare infinitive (*be, go, see*) for all persons both in the singular and plural.

- *I suggest that he go there.*
- *He required that everything be kept secret.*
- *I recommend that we not approve this letter.*

The Past Subjunctive exists in Modern English only in the form *were* which is used for all persons both in the singular and plural.

- *If only I were you!*
- *If it were true!*

2.4.2. The analytical forms of the subjunctive mood consist of the verbs *should, would, may, might, could* + the infinitive of the notional verb.

- *If he were here, he could (would, might) suggest something.*
- *Whoever you may be, I am deeply grateful to you.*
- *I insist that they should come.*

2.4.3. Other forms of the English subjunctive mood coincide with the forms of the Past Simple, the Past Perfect, the Past Continuous and the Past Perfect Continuous. But in this case their meanings are different from tenses in the indicative mood, because they express non-facts.

- *If my children were revising for their exam now, I would be delighted.*
- *The sentries pay no attention to tourists as if they didn't exist.*

3. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

3.1. The Traditional Use of the Subjunctive Mood

The subjunctive mood is used in set phrases expressing:

a) Wish

- *Long live the Queen!*
- *God save the king!*
- *God bless you.*
- *Success attend you!*
- *May success attend you!*
- *May you be happy!*

b) Concession

- *So be it. Be it so.*
- *Come what may.*
- *Cost what it may.*

c) Oaths and imprecations

- *Heaven forbid!*
- *Far be it from me to talk back!*
- *Manners be hanged!*
- *The devil take it!*

d) In some expressions

- *Suffice it to say that the movie had a happy ending.*

3.2. The Subjunctive Mood in Subject Clauses

In subject clauses after a principal clause of the type *It is important... , It was necessary... should + simple infinitive is used.*

It	is was will be	necessary obligatory important vital essential crucial imperative desirable advisable urgent right best better requested demanded recommended arranged ordered of vital importance a good / bad idea	that he (should) come
----	----------------------	---	------------------------------

- *It is better for these young men that they (should) not remain here. – Для этих молодых людей было бы лучше не оставаться здесь.*
- *It is requested that every student (should) register at the dean's office. – Просят, чтобы все студенты зарегистрировались в деканате (или: Всех студентов просят ...).*
- *It will be arranged that all the children (should) get a sit down meal in the middle of the day. – Для детей будет организовано горячее питание в середине дня.*

• *It is crucial that a car (should) be waiting for the president when the meeting is over. – Критически важно, чтобы президента после заседания ожидала машина.*

In American English the pattern with the Present Subjunctive is predominant.

• *It was of vital importance that his brother be put forward as the candidate for this district.*

Practice

Ex. 1. Translate the sentences into Russian or Ukrainian.

1. It is necessary for my uncle that we should come to his party.
2. It will be better for my health that I should drink clean water.
3. Is it important that the sitting take place tonight?
4. It was better for us that our house should be redecorated by next month.
5. It is obligatory that every student shouldn't miss Practical Grammar classes.
6. It is important that we should book the room in this hotel.
7. It was ordered that no ship leave the harbour before daybreak.
8. It is important that the city authorities should organize a concert for children.
9. It's necessary that a new nursery school should be opened in this region.
10. It was right that this interesting story should be told in detail.
11. It was recommended that our boss should increase the worker's salary.
12. It's of vital importance that Dad should take children to school in the morning.
13. It is a good idea that you be standing there when he gets off the plane.

Ex. 2. Complete the sentences.

1. It is necessary that she ...
2. It was better for your children that they ...
3. It is obligatory that he ...
4. It's desirable that we ...
5. It is of vital importance that he ...
6. It is recommended that he ...
7. It is requested that the girl ...
8. It is important that our family ...
9. It's right for our mother that she ...
10. It was necessary that this information ...

Ex. 3. Translate from Russian into English.

1. Необходимо, чтобы контракт подписали вовремя.
2. Для всей семьи было бы лучше, чтобы они не ехали отдыхать.

3. Было желательно, чтобы студенты этой группы сдали экзамен в этом семестре.

4. Важно, чтобы клиенты получили все данные о сроках платежа.

5. Требуется, чтобы все студенты написали курсовую работу.

6. Было крайне важно, чтобы мы встретили их на вокзале.

7. Было бы лучше всего, чтобы мы выехали раньше.

8. Для Анны желательно, чтобы доктор назначил операцию на вторник.

9. Нам рекомендовали, чтобы наш отец обратился в банк.

10. Для меня важно, чтобы все жили в мире.

11. Для нашего города было бы лучше, чтобы власти отремонтировали дороги.

12. Мне рекомендовали, чтобы мои родители срочно обратились к доктору.

13. Для моих друзей было бы правильно, чтобы они наконец поехали отдыхать.

14. Следует ли нам искать каждое новое слово в словаре?

15. Студентов просят не уносить газеты из читального зала.

Ex. 4. Change the grammatical structure of the sentences using the subjunctive mood.

1. It was necessary for him to stay in this comfortable hotel.

2. It's desirable for our planet to be cleaned.

3. It's better for George to book the tickets to the theatre beforehand.

4. It was right for them to hurry up in order not to miss the bus.

5. It's obligatory for people to protect our nature.

6. It was important for our company to find a new office building.

7. It's recommended for all our students not to miss their lectures.

8. It was of vital importance for us to fix a fence because of our neighbours' dog.

9. It's desirable for Mr Smith to buy a new suit for the interview.

10. It's important for young people to take care of their health.

11. It will be better for him to stay at home.

12. It is necessary for my colleagues to be friendly to new-comers.

13. It is obligatory for pets to be fed regularly.

14. It's recommended for the old man to stay in hospital.

Ex. 5. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Важливо, щоб усі наші брати приїхали на річницю до нашої бабусі.

2. Було необхідно, щоб усі учні нашої школи одягали шкільну форму.

3. Було б непогано, щоб батько повіз нас до школи.

4. Це правильно, щоб кожна дитина в родині мала свою кімнату.

5. Бажано, щоб ми зустрілися трохи раніше біля кінотеатру.

6. Життєво необхідно, щоб він привіз гроші, які заборгував мені.
7. Йому рекомендовано, щоб він терміново зв'язався зі своїми рідними.
8. Для цієї молоді дівчини було б добре, щоб її рідна сестра підписала всі документи.
9. Обов'язково, щоб усі викладачі вчасно здали свої звіти.
10. **Вкрай необхідно, щоб він відправив цей лист до того, як пошта буде зачинена.**
11. Для мене важливо, щоб викладач читав лекцію не швидко і голосно.
12. Директору театру важливо, щоб робітники закінчили ремонт до початку сезону.
13. Матері обов'язково, щоб її діти гарно вчилися.
14. Бажано, щоб цей вчений написав про свої дослідження у книзі.
15. Життєво необхідно, щоб ми дійшли згоди щодо схеми оподаткування.
16. Буде правильно, щоб наш уряд прийняв необхідні закони у сфері малого бізнесу.
17. Доктори рекомендували йому, щоб він залишався у ліжку до кінця тижня.
18. Було б гарно, щоб мій батько навчив мене керувати авто.
19. Обов'язково, щоб він не забув свій паспорт.
20. Важливо, щоб ми зберегли цю таємницю.

3.3. The Subjunctive Mood in Object Clauses

3.3.1. When we find verbs and word-groups denoting order, suggestion, advice, desire, etc. in the principal clause, in the object clause the structure **should+simple infinitive** is used.

He	orders (ordered) suggests (suggested) proposes (proposed) recommends (recommended) demands (demanded) desires (desired) insists (insisted) urges (urged) requires (required) requests (requested) asks (asked) is anxious (was anxious) will see (he saw) to it	that the meeting (should) start at 5
----	---	---

• *Professor Langdon proposed to us that the committee (should) consider our application.* – Профессор Лэнгдон предложил нам, чтобы комитет рассмотрел наше заявление.

• *He arranged that we (should) stay the night in the empty school building.* – Он договорился, что мы переночуем в пустом здании школы.

• *He was very anxious that I (should) stay to dinner.* – Ему очень хотелось, чтобы я остался обедать.

• *I will see to it that the employees (should) not make personal phone calls during business hours.* – Я прослежу, чтобы сотрудники не совершали личных звонков в рабочее время.

In American English the Present Subjunctive (*we go, we stay*) in this sentence pattern is predominant.

3.3.2. The subjunctive mood is used in object clauses introduced by the conjunction *lest* if in the principal clause the predicate is expressed by a verb denoting fear (*to fear, to be afraid, to be scared, to be terrified, to be anxious, to worry, to be troubled, to be in terror, to tremble, to dread*). **Should** is used for all persons.

• *She fears lest she should be blamed.* – Она боится, как бы ее не осудили.

• *He trembled lest his secret should be discovered.* – Он дрожал при мысли, что его тайна будет раскрыта.

After verbs denoting fear object clauses are often introduced by the conjunction *that*, in which case the modal verb **may (might) + Infinitive** is used. The choice of either *may* or *might* depends on the tense of the verb in the main clause.

• *She is afraid that her husband may forget about it.* – Она боится, как бы ее муж не забыл об этом.

• *She was afraid that her husband might forget about it.* – Она боялась, как бы ее муж не забыл об этом.

Practice

Ex. 1. Translate the sentences into Russian or Ukrainian.

1. I don't demand that you should memorize the text.
2. The teacher requested that all students should send in their second assignment in grammar before the winter session.
3. Do you suggest that we should give up the idea?
4. I don't insist that you do it now only that it should be done.
5. Have you arranged that she should be met at the station?

6. The dean requests that all those who want to join the dramatic society should register with the monitor.
7. I suggest that we start right away.

Ex. 2. Put the verbs in the brackets into the correct form.

1. No one demanded that the meeting (to be adjourned).
2. She suggested that I (to speak).
3. She has arranged that the books (to be bought).
4. She positively insists that the margins (to be) on the left side of the page.
5. Did anyone insist that measures (to be taken)?
6. She promised to arrange that mother (to come and sit) with the baby.
7. He ordered that nothing (to be touched).
8. The family agreed that the girl (to be sent) to school.
9. The foreman urged that we (to begin) immediately.
10. The doctor recommended that the child (to stay) in bed.

Ex. 3. Translate the sentences into Russian or into Ukrainian.

1. We fear lest she should go there alone.
2. They trembled lest their house should be destroyed.
3. We were afraid lest our friends should come in time.
4. They fear lest she should tell their secret to everyone.
5. The children trembled lest their teacher should call to their mother.
6. The girl trembled lest her father should forbid her to see her boyfriend.
7. We fear lest we should miss our bus.
8. They trembled lest they should stay in this hotel for a week.
9. He was afraid lest his intentions should be known.
10. I was scared lest my parents should know about my tests results.

Ex. 4. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Боюсь, как бы он не сделал ошибку.
2. Он боялся, как бы они не опоздали.
3. Он беспокоился, как бы мы не опоздали на поезд.
4. Он отвел (withdraw) глаза, чтобы она ничего в них не прочла.
5. Мы боялись, как бы она ничего не заподозрила.
6. Дети боялись, как бы родители не узнали о разбитом окне.
7. Анна боялась, как бы ее не обвинили в преступлении.
8. Боюсь, как бы он не женился на ней.
9. Они боялись, как бы мы не узнали об их отношениях.
10. Родители боялись, как бы их сын не стал наркоманом.
11. Он предложил, чтобы мы вместе пошли на каток.

12. Я договорился, чтобы вам дали комнату рядом с моей.
13. Никто не требовал, чтобы ее исключили.
14. Вы настаиваете, чтобы мы пришли в воскресенье?
15. Студенты просили, чтобы лекцию прочитали еще раз.
16. Он будет настаивать, чтобы мы это сделали сами.
17. Руководитель предложил, чтобы все служащие носили одежду одного цвета.
18. Активисты призывают к тому, чтобы атомная станция была закрыта.
19. Предлагаю, чтобы охрана уже стояла вокруг самолета, когда президент выйдет из него.
20. Мы проследим, чтобы правила не нарушались.

3.4. The Subjunctive Mood in Predicative and Appositive Clauses

The subjunctive mood is used in predicative and appositive clauses when the subject of the principal clause is expressed by an abstract noun such as *wish, suggestion, aim, idea, order*, etc. In this case the subjunctive with the mood auxiliary **should** (for all persons) or **the Present Subjunctive** is used.

• *Mary's wish was that our mother (should) come and live with her.* – Мэри хотелось, чтобы наша мать переехала к ней жить. (*predicative clause*).

• *Your advice that he (should) wait till next week is reasonable.* – Ваш совет, чтобы он подождал до следующей недели, разумен. (*appositive clause*).

Practice

Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian or Russian and define the type of the clause.

1. Pauline's wish was that her parents should live together.
2. The idea was that I should speak to him in the morning.
3. The lady's wish was that her husband should come in time.
4. Our aim was that we should do everything up to the end.
5. One of the conditions was that I should go abroad.
6. The order that he should come surprised me.
7. His suggestion that we stop and have a look round the castle was rather sudden.
8. His arrangement with them had been that they should meet them at Plymouth.

9. She was flattered by his request that she should temporarily keep his house.

Ex. 2. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Его гениальная идея состояла в том, чтобы взять кредит в банке.

2. Нам всем хотелось, чтобы наш проект был прибыльным.

3. Наша цель заключалась в том, чтобы дойти до третьего тура соревнований.

4. Желанием девушки было, чтоб ее уважали на работе.

5. Предложение заключается в том, чтобы мы поехали вместе за город.

6. Отцу хотелось, чтобы дочь удачно вышла замуж.

7. Одно из условий заключалось в том, чтобы мы переехали в новый дом.

8. Наш план состоит в том, чтобы позвонить ему первыми.

9. Одно из условий заключается в том, чтобы я получил высшее образование.

10. Решение офицера о том, что солдаты должны замаскироваться в лесу, было одобрено.

11. Желанием Стивена было, чтобы его сын выздоровел.

12. Джек желал, чтобы его внимательно выслушали на суде.

13. Его неудачный план заключался в том, чтобы он поехал в путешествие.

14. Наша цель в том, чтобы он завоевал первое место на соревнованиях.

15. Условие о том, чтобы переводчики остались в другой комнате во время перерыва в переговорах, было странным.

3.5. The Subjunctive Mood in Adverbial Clauses of Condition (Conditionals)

3.5.1. Complex sentences may include conditional clauses expressing real condition and unreal condition. In the first case the indicative mood is used, in the second the subjunctive. Since the majority of conditional clauses are introduced by the conjunction *if*, they are often called “if-clauses”. Other conjunctions used to introduce conditional clauses are *unless*, *in case*, *supposing (that)*, *suppose (that)*, *providing (that)*, *provided (that)*, *on condition (that)*, *as/so long as*.

There are four types of conditional sentences:

Real condition Type 0 (general truth)	If- clause If you put some salt onto ice, <i>Present Simple</i>	Main clause it <u>melts</u> <i>Present Simple</i>
Real condition Type 1 (real present)	If- clause If Emily sees a mouse now, <i>Present Simple</i>	Main clause she <u>will scream</u> <i>will \ can \ may + bare infinitive</i>
Unreal condition Type 2 (unreal present)	If- clause If Emily <u>saw</u> a mouse now, <i>were \ Past Simple \ Past Continuous</i>	Main clause she <u>would scream</u> <i>would \ could \ might + bare infinitive</i>
Unreal condition Type 3 (unreal past)	If- clause If Emily <u>had seen</u> a mouse then, <i>Past Perfect \ Past Perfect Continuous</i>	Main clause she <u>would have screamed</u> <i>would \ could \ might + perfect bare infinitive</i>

Could do / could have done means would be able / would have been able.

Might do / might have done means would perhaps do / would perhaps have done.

More examples:

Type 2

- *If I had free time now, I could join you.*
- *If it weren't raining now, we would be walking in the park.*
- *If he were here, he might help you.*

Type 3

- *If you had called me yesterday, I would have joined you.*
- *Ellie could have won if she had run a bit faster.*
- *If it hadn't been raining all day, I would have come to you.*

Mixed Conditionals

There are two mixed types of sentences of unreal condition. In the first of these the condition refers to the past and the consequence refers to the present or future.

Type 3

Type 2

- *If you had taken your medicine yesterday, you would be well now.* – Если бы вы вчера приняли лекарство, теперь вы были бы здоровы.

In the second type the condition refers to no particular time and the consequence refers to the past.

Type 2

Type 3

- *If he were not so absent-minded, he would not have mistaken you for your sister.* – Если бы он не был таким рассеянным, он не принял бы вас за вашу сестру.

Adverbial clauses of condition containing the verbs *had*, *were*, *could*, *should* are often introduced without any conjunction. In these cases we find inversion.

- *Had the wanderer remained awake for another half-hour, a strange sight would have met his eyes.* – Если бы путешественник продолжал бодрствовать еще в течение получаса, его глазам представилось бы странное зрелище.

- *Mary would indeed have been grateful to Miss Dunstable, could she have known all that lady did for her.* – Мэри и в самом деле была бы благодарна мисс Данстэбл, если бы она могла знать все, что эта дама для нее сделала.

- *Were I you, I wouldn't take one step out that door.* – На моем месте я бы и шагу не ступил за эту дверь.

Unreal conditions can also be expressed in the following ways:

- **But for** the rain, we would go down to the country. – Если бы не дождь, мы бы поехали за город.

- **If it were not for** your help, I would not be able to finish my work in time. – Если бы не ваша помощь, я не смог бы вовремя закончить работу.

- **If it hadn't been for** your parents, we would have been in great trouble. – Если бы не твои родители, у нас были бы большие проблемы.

3.5.2. The structures typical of main clauses representing an unreal action can also be used without an if-clause:

- *To my mind, it would be very unwise of you.*
- *He knows I could never tell him a lie.*
- *Twenty years ago I would have strongly disapproved of you.*
- *There was a wonderful concert at the Victoria Hall we could have gone to. But we missed it.*

Practice

Ex. 1. Answer the questions.

1. What happens if flowers don't get any water?
2. What must a driver do if the traffic lights are red?
3. What materials do you need if you want to write a letter?
4. What do you like to drink when you are very thirsty?
5. Who do businessmen go to see if they want to borrow money?
6. What do you expect a teacher to do if you make a mistake?
7. What must one have if one wants to visit a foreign country?
8. Who do people go to see if they are ill?
9. What happens if there is a power failure?
10. How do people dress in your country if they work in an office?

Ex. 2. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense form.

1. Someone (steal) your car if you leave it unlocked.
2. If I find your passport, I (telephone) you at once.
3. If I see him, I (give) him a lift.
4. If he (wash) my car, I will give him 20 \$.
5. If you put on the kettle, I (make) the tea.
6. The table will collapse if you (stand) on it.
7. If he (eat) all that, he will be ill.
8. The police (arrest) him if they catch him.
9. If he (read) in bad light, he will ruin his eyes.
10. What will happen if my parachute (not open)?
11. I'll be very angry if my students (make) any more mistakes.
12. If you (not go) away, I will send for the police.
13. If you come late, they (not let) you in.
14. If he (work) hard today, he can have a holiday tomorrow.
15. Unless you are more careful, you (have) an accident.
16. If he (be) late, we'll go without him.
17. She won't open the door unless she (know) who it is.
18. If you (not like) this dress, I'll bring you another.
19. We'll have to move upstairs if the river (rise) any higher.
20. If you don't tell me the truth at once, I (not trust) you again.

Ex. 3. Complete the sentences using conditionals.

1. I will accept your explanation only if ...
2. We'll just manage to catch the train if ...
3. If I see him again, I ...
4. If my bank manger lends me the money, ...
5. What will happen if ...?

6. If you don't hear from me by next Friday, ...
7. If your work continues to improve, ...
8. ... only if you promise to return it back to me.
9. What will he say if ...?
10. Give him time and ...
11. If you send her some roses, she ...
12. She'll be upset if ...
13. If you take a pill, ...
14. If you forget about your wife's birthday, ...
15. If you agree on waiting a few more minutes, ...

Ex. 4. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Ми зможемо встигнути на ранковий рейс автобуса, якщо будемо їсти швидше.
2. Ми пошлемо за лікарем, якщо вона почуватиметься гірше.
3. Дайте мені більше часу, і я виконаю всі домашні завдання.
4. Що він скаже, коли дізнається про розбиту машину?
5. Якщо ти не забудеш завести свій будильник на шосту годину ранку, ти не проспий.
6. Що ви зробите, якщо ваш учитель не дозволить вам піти до лісу?
7. Якщо циркова група вирушить на світанку, вона приїде до місця її нових гастролей до настання темряви.
8. Ти мусиш розповісти йому все, якщо не хочеш, щоб це зробив хтось інший.
9. Якщо вона буде слухатися його порад, то швидко потрапить до в'язниці.
10. Якщо завтра не буде дощу, ми поїдемо до лісу збирати гриби.
11. Я не засну, якщо вона не вимкне телевізор.
12. Якщо вона погодиться вийти за нього заміж, то через місяць ми поїдемо на весілля.
13. Якщо ти не припиниш шуміти, я не дозволю тобі залишитися на уроці.
14. Якщо вона дозволить своєму синові робити все, що йому заманеться, в майбутньому вона втратить над ним контроль.
15. Якщо директор прийде вчасно, збори почнуться о десятій, так, як і було заплановано.
16. Якщо він не вчитиметься добре, батько не купить йому велосипед.
17. Якщо директор школи не призначить нам нового вчителя, ми відмовляємося ходити до школи.
18. Якщо Естер залишить дітей без нагляду, з їхнім будинком може статися щось жахливе.

Ex. 5. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense form.

1. I'll look for your note-book and if I (find) it, I (give) you a ring.
2. If you (smoke) in a non-smoking compartment, the other passengers (object).
3. I won't wake up unless I (hear) the alarm.
4. If you (feel) too hot during the night, turn down the central heating.
5. I'll wash the glasses in this hot water. – No, don't. If you (put) them into the hot water, they (crack).
6. The lift wasn't working when I was here last. If it still (not work), we (have) to use the stairs.
7. He's only 16 but he wants to leave school at the end of the term. – If he (leave) school now, he (be) sorry afterwards.
8. I expect it will freeze tonight. – If it (freeze) tonight, the roads (be) very slippery tomorrow.
9. This book is overdue. If you (not take) it back to the library tomorrow, you (pay) a fine.
10. You'd better take the day off if you (not feel) well tomorrow.
11. If a driver (brake) suddenly on a wet road, his car (skid).
12. If you (like), I (get) you a job in this company.
13. My dog never starts a fight. He never growls unless the other dog (growl) first.
14. You can use my phone if yours (not work).
15. I hate my job. – If you (hate) it, why you (not change) it?
16. If you (hear) from Nick, could you please let me know?
17. If you (not know) the meaning of the word, you may use a dictionary.
18. If you (care) to see some of his drawings, I (send) them round to your office.
19. The police will check the knife for fingerprints. If your fingerprints are on it, you (be) charged with murder.

Ex. 6. Barbara is going for a long walk in the country. She is going to take these things with her.

Some chocolate a map an umbrella her camera some water a towel a mobile phone.

She decided to take these things because:

- 1) Perhaps she'll want to have a swim.
- 2) She might want to take some photos.
- 3) It's possible she'll get lost.
- 4) Perhaps she'll get thirsty.
- 5) She might get hungry.
- 6) Perhaps it will rain.

7) She might want to phone her friends.

Write sentences with IN CASE saying why Barbara has decided to take these things with her.

e.g. She is going to take some chocolate in case she gets hungry.

Ex. 7. What do you say in these situations? Use IN CASE.

1. It's possible that Mary will need to contact you, so you give her your phone number.

You say: Here's my phone number _____

2. A friend of yours is going away for a long time. Maybe you won't see her again before she goes, so you decide to say goodbye now.

You say : _____

3. It's possible that our relatives will come. So you go to the shop to buy some food.

You say: _____

4. It's possible that Ann will call. You don't want to go out.

You say: _____

5. It's possible that it will rain. You want to take an umbrella.

You say: _____

6. You are shopping in a supermarket with a friend. You think you have everything you need but perhaps you've forgotten something. Your friend has the list. You ask him to check it.

You say: _____

7. It's possible that Sarah won't be able to find your house. You are going to draw a map for her.

You say: _____

Ex. 8. Put in IF or IN CASE.

1. Ann might phone this evening. I don't want to go out ... she phones.

2. You should tell the police ... your bicycle is stolen.

3. I hope you'll come to London sometime. ... you come, you can stay with us.

4. This letter is for Susan. Can you give it to her ... you see her?

5. Write your name and address on your bag ... you lose it.

6. Go to the lost property office ... you lose your suitcase.

7. The burglar alarm will ring ... somebody tries to break into the house.

8. I've just painted the door. I'll put a WET PAINT notice to it ... somebody doesn't realize it's just been painted.

9. I was advised to arrange insurance ... I needed medical treatment while I was abroad.

Ex. 9. Write a new sentence with the same meaning. Use UNLESS in your sentences.

MODEL: *You must work much harder or you won't pass the exam.*

– *You won't pass the exam unless you work much harder.*

1. Listen carefully or you won't know what to do.
2. She must apologize to me or I'll never speak to her again.
3. You have to speak very slowly or he won't be able to understand you.
4. The company must offer me more money or I'm going to look for another job.
5. We have to hurry or we'll be late.

Ex. 10. Choose the correct word or expression for each sentence.

1. You can use my car unless/as long as you drive carefully.
2. I'm playing tennis tomorrow unless/providing it's raining.
3. I'm playing tennis tomorrow unless/providing it's not raining.
4. I don't mind if you come in late unless/as long as you come in quietly.
5. I'm going now unless/provided you want me to stay.
6. I don't watch TV unless/as long as I've got nothing else to do.
7. Children are allowed to use the swimming pool unless/provided they are with an adult.
8. Unless/provided they are with an adult, children are not allowed to use the swimming pool.
9. We can sit here in the corner unless/as long as you'd rather sit over there by the window.
10. Our holiday cost a lot of money. – Did it? Well, that doesn't matter unless/as long as you enjoyed yourselves.

Ex. 11. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Я не знаю, придет ли он к нам вечером, но если он придет, я расскажу ему об этом.

2. Я не знаю, позвонит ли она мне, но если позвонит, я приглашу ее на день рождения.

3. Я еще не знаю, поеду ли я отдыхать, но если поеду, я возьму тебя с собой.

4. Мы не знаем, пойдет ли она смотреть этот фильм, но если она пойдет, мы к ней присоединимся.

5. Мы не имеем ни малейшего представления о том, когда он вернется из Киева, но когда он вернется, он навестит нас.

6. Спросите ее, когда она закончит читать эту книгу. Когда она закончит, она должна будет вернуть ее в библиотеку.

7. Я не знаю, когда он нас навестит. Но когда он придет, я представлю вас ему.

8. Я не знаю, когда он купит новую машину, но когда он ее купит, он поедет путешествовать.

9. Интересно, закончит ли она свою работу вовремя, и если закончит, пойдет ли в кино.

10. Мы не знаем, когда закончится собрание, но когда оно закончится, мы пойдем в лабораторию.

11. Я не знаю, когда мама придет с работы, но когда она придет, я тебе позвоню.

12. Я думаю, что мне не понадобится много времени, чтобы убрать квартиру, и как только я освобожусь, я дам тебе знать.

13. Я не уверена, вернется ли она в зал, где все собираются. Но если она зайдет, скажи ей, чтобы она позвонила мужу.

14. Интересно, когда они закончат ремонт этого здания. Я знаю, что как только они закончат, мы туда переедем.

15. Мы не знаем, когда он будет выступать в Киеве, но когда он приедет, мы пойдем на его концерт.

16. Я уеду, как только сдам все экзамены.

17. Не уходите, пока я с ней не поговорю.

18. Я не знаю, когда он вернется.

19. Вы ничего не поймете, пока не прочтете книгу сами.

20. Пока ты будешь кормить детей, я пойду спрошу, напишет ли она письмо.

Ex. 12. Translate the sentences into English, using Type 2 Conditionals.

1. Если бы он был здесь, он бы что-нибудь предложил.

2. Если бы вы пригласили его, он был бы очень доволен. Пригласите его.

3. Если бы я знал французский, я бы помог вам.

4. Если бы он был более пунктуальным, с ним было бы легче иметь дело.

5. Если бы Ричард был здесь, он бы дал вам другой совет.

6. Почему бы вам не принять участие в завтрашнем соревновании? Вы могли бы выиграть его.

7. Если бы не дождь, я бы к вам приехал.

8. Если бы я смог связаться с мистером Спарком, мы сразу решили бы этот вопрос. Попробую позвонить ему на работу.

9. Если бы он был более компетентным и опытным, он не чувствовал бы себя так неловко.

Ex. 13. Translate the sentences into English, using Type 3 Conditionals.

1. Если бы вы сдержали свое обещание, он бы на вас не сердился. Почему вы не сделали этого?
2. Если бы вы прочли предисловие перед тем, как читать книгу, вы не задали бы такого вопроса.
3. Если бы он перестал заниматься французским, его бы не послали во Францию. Он уже три года живет в Париже, не так ли?
4. Если бы вы вмешались в их разговор, вы бы все испортили. Хорошо, что Джон помешал вам сделать это.
5. Если бы вы не начали спорить, он бы не рассердился. Теперь придется его успокаивать.
6. Если бы мы взяли такси, мы бы не опоздали на поезд. Теперь нам придется ждать два с половиной часа.
7. Если бы вы сказали об этом раньше, план был бы изменен.
8. Если бы вы сказали об этом раньше, план мог бы быть изменен.
9. Если бы вы сказали об этом раньше, план, возможно, был бы изменен.

Ex. 14. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form, comment on the type of the conditionals.

1. If he were not such an outstanding actor, he (not to have) so many admirers.
2. If you (to give) me your address, I'll write you a letter.
3. If she (not to be) so absent-minded, she would be a much better student.
4. If my sister doesn't go to the South, we (to spend) summer together.
5. If they (not to go) to London last year, they wouldn't have heard that famous musician.
6. If you (not to get) tickets for the concert, we'll stay at home.
7. If you were not so careless about your health, you (to consult) the doctor.
8. I would be delighted if I (to have) such a beautiful fur coat.
9. If it (to rain), we'll have to stay at home.
10. If he (to work) hard, he would have achieved great progress.
11. If it is not so cold, I (not to put) a coat.
12. I (to write) the composition long ago if you hadn't disturbed me.
13. If he (not to read) so much, he would not be so clever.
14. If my friend (to be) at home, he will tell us what to do.

Ex. 15. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1. If you (not to buy) coffee, we will drink tea.
2. If he is free tomorrow, he certainly (to come) to our party.

3. My brother would not have missed so many lessons if he (not to hurt) his leg.
4. If my friend (to work) in my office, we would meet every day.
5. If you spoke English every day, you (to improve) your language skills.
6. If you get a “five”, your mother (to be) happy.
7. If she (to return) earlier, she would have been able to see him before he left.
8. If these shoes were not too big for me, I (to buy) them.
9. If you (to ring) me up, I’ll tell you a secret.
10. If you (to be) a poet, you would write beautiful poetry.
11. If he (to come) to our house yesterday, he would have met his friend.
12. If he (not to pass) his exam, he will not get a scholarship.
13. If she (not to help) me, I would have been in a very difficult situation.
14. My father would have more free time if he (not to read) so many newspapers.

Ex. 16. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1. If I find your passport, I (phone) you at once.
2. If he (wash) my car, I’ll give him \$20.
3. If I were you, I (tell) the truth.
4. If I (have) a lot of money, I (drink) wine with every meal.
5. If we (work) all night, we (finish) in time, but we have no intention of working all night.
6. If I (win) these Games, everybody (ask) me for an autograph.
7. If I (know) two foreign languages, I (go) to work or study somewhere.
8. If he (behave) himself, the teacher (not/punish) him.
9. If you (not/eat) meat, I (bring) you some fish.
10. If he (be) here yesterday, he (help) us.
11. If you (come) ten minutes earlier, you (meet) her.
12. If you (not/be) firm with children, they (misbehave).
13. If you (tell) me earlier that he never paid his debts, I (not/lend) him the money.
14. I (be) very excited if my students (invite) me to their concert.
15. If she (listen) to my directions, she (not/turn down) the wrong street.
16. If the earth suddenly (stop) spinning, we all (fly) off it.
17. If I (see) a tiger walking across our park, I (climb) a tree.

Ex. 17. Translate the sentences into English and comment on the type of the conditionals.

1. Если бы я знал французский, я бы уже давно поговорил с ней.
2. Если бы я знал немецкий, я бы читал Гете в оригинале.

3. Если бы я жил близко, я бы чаще заходил к вам.
4. Если бы вы не прервали нас вчера, мы бы закончили работу вовремя.
5. Если бы он не следовал советам врача, он бы не поправился так быстро.
6. Если бы он не был талантливым художником, его картину не приняли бы на выставку.
7. Если бы вы тогда послушались моего совета, вы бы сейчас не были в таком затруднительном положении.
8. Если бы я не был так занят в эти дни, я бы помог тебе вчера.
9. Если бы он был внимательнее, он бы узнал меня вчера в театре.
10. Она здорова. Если бы она была больна, ее брат сказал бы мне об этом вчера.
11. Вы бы много знали, если бы регулярно читали этот журнал.
12. Если бы я узнала об этом раньше, то не сидела бы сейчас дома.
13. Если бы мои родители были богаты, они бы уже давно купили машину.
14. Она очень талантлива. Если она начнет играть сейчас, она будет выдающимся музыкантом.

Ex. 18. Translate the sentences into English and define the type of the conditionals.

1. Что случится, если я не пойду сегодня в университет?
2. Если бы я выиграл миллион, я бы поехал путешествовать.
3. Если бы вы ушли раньше, то встретили бы Тома.
4. Если бы он сдал экзамен в прошлом семестре, он бы не имел проблем.
5. Если бы я был на твоём месте, я бы все рассказал родителям.
6. Я бы с удовольствием поехал в Англию, если бы у меня были деньги.
7. Если бы у меня была машина, я бы ездил на ней на работу.
8. Когда придет мой муж, мы будем ужинать.
9. Если бы он сказал мне правду, мы бы стали хорошими друзьями.
10. Они бы попали в комнату, если бы Джек не забыл ключи.
11. Если бы вчера не было такого сильного мороза, мы бы поиграли в хоккей.
12. Когда он позвонит, скажи ему, что меня нет дома.
13. Если бы я был моложе, я бы женился на ней.
14. Если бы мы взяли с собой карту, мы бы не заблудились.
15. Если бы я был на ее месте, я бы поступил в институт.

Ex. 19. Translate the given sentences and comment on the type of the conditionals.

1. Если бы она была увереннее в себе, она бы уже давно уволилась.
2. Вы бы сейчас не нервничали, если бы вчера рассказали ему всю правду.
3. Если бы наши дети не поссорились, они бы не скучали сегодня вечером.
4. Если бы вы мне прислали эти документы вовремя, сегодня наша фирма могла бы подписать контракт.
5. Если бы ты прибрала в доме еще вчера, сегодня у тебя было бы больше свободного времени.
6. Мы бы поехали в деревню, если бы ты починил автомобиль на прошлой неделе.
7. Если бы в прошлом году было больше дождей, в этом году было бы больше грибов.
8. Если бы в пробеге приняло участие больше студентов, то сейчас мы бы были на первом месте.
9. Если бы я ее не любил, я бы не женился на ней много лет назад.
10. Если бы я вчера не сидел за компьютером до полуночи, я бы сегодня не получил двойку за диктант.
11. Если бы я тогда не нажала нужную кнопку, США были бы сейчас в опасности.
12. Если бы я не был таким неорганизованным, я бы в понедельник не опоздал на первую ленту.
13. Если бы мои родители не уехали, я бы и не поняла, как они мне дороги.
14. Я бы была лучшей студенткой в группе, если бы тогда увидела все задания в контрольной.
15. Если бы я не перешел в другую группу, я бы все еще не имел друзей.
16. Если бы я тогда не затормозила вовремя, я бы до сих пор лежала в больнице.
17. Если бы я тогда не уехала из страны, я бы сейчас участвовала в телевизионном проекте.
18. Если бы я выпила таблетку утром, я бы сейчас была абсолютно спокойна.

Ex. 20. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Якби ви пішли з вечірки на півгодини пізніше, ви б зустріли Тома.
2. Якщо б вона не думала про свого чоловіка весь час, вона могла б досягти значного успіху у своїй роботі.

3. Якби ми взяли із собою карту, ми не заблукали б у цьому страшному і темному лісі.

4. Я б не примусила тебе чекати на мене два роки, якби усвідомила, що ти маєш серйозний намір одружитися зі мною.

5. Якщо б пожежники приїхали на 10 хвилин пізніше, вони б не врятували дитину.

6. Вона б не потрапила в біду, якби послухалася моєї поради.

7. Я впевнений, вона б не одружилася з ним, якщо б знала, що у нього немає грошей.

8. Що б змінилося, якщо б я прийшов вчасно?

9. Якби вчора не було такого сильного морозу, ми б змогли пограти у хокей.

10. Її ноги не були б такими втомленими, якби вона не вирішила піти пішки замість того, щоб зупинити машину.

11. Якби він сказав мені правду одразу, ми могли б стати хорошими друзями.

12. Він міг би одужати вже через три дні, якщо б дотримувався усіх вказівок свого лікаря.

13. Вечірка мені б сподобалася ще більше, якби там був Джон.

14. Якби він склав успішно екзамен минулого семестру, йому б не довелося проходити цей курс знову.

15. Вони б потрапили до кімнати, якби Мері не забула ключі від неї.

3.6. The Subjunctive Mood in Object Clauses after “Wish”, “Would Rather”, “Had Better”

3.6.1. The Subjunctive Mood is used in object clauses when the predicate of the principal clause is expressed by the verb **WISH**.

If the action expressed in the object clause is simultaneous with that of the principal clause **the Past Simple** or **the Past Continuous** is used.

• *She wished she were free and could follow them.* – *Она жалела, что не свободна и не сможет поехать с ними.*

• *I wish it weren't raining now.* – *Жаль, что сейчас идет дождь.*

If the action expressed in the object clause is prior to that of the principal clause **the Past Perfect** or **the Past Perfect Continuous** is used.

• *She wished she hadn't said it.* – *Она пожалела, что сказала это.*

• *I wish it hadn't been raining all day yesterday.* – *Жаль, что вчера весь день шел дождь.*

Sentences with *wish* can also express regret or annoyance that something will not happen, or a critical request. In this case, **would+infinitive** is used.

- *I wish it would stop drizzling.* – Мне бы хотелось, чтобы дождь перестал моросить.
- *Everybody wishes you would go home.* – Всем хочется, чтобы ты уже пошел домой.
- *I wish you would stop singing that stupid song!* – Перестань уже петь эту глупую песню!

With the first person **could** is usually used instead of **would**.

- *I wish I could understand what my cat is saying.*

3.6.2. The same forms of verbs are used in sentences with **IF ONLY**. This structure also expresses a wish that can not be fulfilled, but **if only** is more emphatic than **I wish**.

- *Oh, if only I knew what to do!* – Ах, если бы я только знала, что делать!
- *If only Peter were here!* – Если бы Питер был здесь!
- *If only you had given me a chance!* – Если бы ты дал мне тогда шанс!
- *If only Bob would stop arguing with everybody!* – Вот бы Боб перестал, наконец, со всеми спорить!

3.6.3. The expression **WOULD RATHER** means “would prefer to”.

	1 subject	2 subjects
Present / Future	I'd rather do it now. I'd rather not do it now	I'd rather you did it now. I'd rather you didn't do it now
Past	I'd rather have done it yesterday. I'd rather not have done it yesterday	I'd rather you had done it yesterday. I'd rather you hadn't done it yesterday
	Bare infinitive	Past Simple / Past Perfect

- *I'd rather die than ask him for his autograph.*
- *Wouldn't you rather be liked than feared?*
- *We'd rather you didn't help us, actually.*
- *I'd rather you came tomorrow than today.*
- *Shall I open a window? – I'd rather you didn't.*
- *I'd rather you hadn't invited your friend to the party.*

3.6.4. *Would rather* (=would prefer) is not the same as **HAD BETTER** (= should). Compare:

- *I suppose I'd better clean the windows, but I'd rather watch TV.*

Practice

Ex. 1. *Add to each of the following examples 2 sentences, both beginning with "I wish".*

MODEL: *I don't understand this question. – Answer: I wish I did. I wish I understood this question.*

It's still raining. – Answer: I wish it wasn't. I wish it wasn't raining.

1. My brother doesn't have a very long holiday.
2. I can't play the piano.
3. My tooth is aching.
4. I sometimes make careless mistakes.
5. He is not coming to see me today.
6. I can't swim well.
7. I don't know how to answer this question.
8. He always drives too fast.
9. I don't speak English fluently.
10. I can't go to the cinema this evening.
11. The teacher gives us a lot of homework.
12. My father doesn't come home from work early.
13. I live a long way from the institute.
14. Our television set is broken.
15. I can't sell my old bicycle.

Ex. 2. *Practise the following according to the models.*

a) MODEL: *A. I know five languages. – B. I wish I knew five languages. If only I knew five languages.*

1. I have a flat here.
2. I live near my work.
3. I have plenty of time for reading.
4. I understand it.
5. My son writes every week.
6. My house looks out on a flat.
7. I can take a day off any time.
8. We meet every week.

9. I have a new car.
10. We read a lot of books.

b) MODEL: *A. I asked Bill. – B. I wish you'd asked Bill too.
If only you'd asked Tom too.*

1. I invited Paul.
2. I stopped Mary.
3. I rang Ann.
4. I wrote to Alex.
5. I spoke to John.
6. I warned Philip.
7. I voted for Peter.

c) MODEL: *A. Take more care. – B. I wish you would take more care.*

1. Don't throw rubbish on the floor.
2. Listen to me.
3. Don't waste so much time.
4. Try to answer my question.
5. Get up earlier.
6. Don't be so impatient.
7. Look where you are going.
8. Speak more clearly.
9. Don't open the window.
10. Don't walk so fast.
11. Write more carefully.
12. Don't come into the room without knocking.
13. Help me to move this cupboard.
14. Keep quiet.

Ex. 3. Ann doesn't like her new house. Write what she wishes.

e.g. The house is so old and dirty. – I wish the house wasn't so old and dirty.

1. She has to paint the walls.
2. The house doesn't have central heating.
3. The kitchen is small.
4. The bathroom is narrow.
5. The windows are broken.
6. The stairs are dirty.

Ex. 4. Ted regrets what he did or didn't do. Write what he wishes.

e.g. He left his job. – I wish I hadn't left my job.

1. He didn't listen to his wife.

2. He robbed a bank.
3. He was sent to prison.
4. He didn't go to university.
5. He didn't find a new job.
6. He didn't have children.

Ex. 5. Kate wants things to be different in the future. Write what she wishes.

e.g. I want my father to give me more pocket money. – I wish my father would give me more pocket money.

1. I want my brothers to stop fighting.
2. I don't want my mother to make me eat vegetables.
3. I don't want my sister to wear my clothes.
4. I want my cousin to call me more often.
5. I want my grandfather to visit me in summer.
6. I don't want my aunt to give me advice.

Ex. 6. Add to each of the following a sentence beginning: "I wish ...". The words in brackets will help you to form your sentences.

1. We lost the game yesterday. (win)
2. I sat at the back of the hall, and couldn't hear his speech very well. (every word)
3. The sea is rough, we can't sail to the island. (calm)
4. There were no taxis, so I had to walk from the station. (find)
5. I went to bed very late last night, and I'm half asleep this morning. (so late)
6. I could only answer three of the questions at the last exam. (all of them)
7. The box was heavy, I couldn't carry it. (help me)
8. My father gave me some good advice, but I didn't take it. (his advice)
9. One of my friends went to London for a holiday last summer, but I couldn't go. (with him)
10. Why didn't you watch the cat? It ate all the fish. I'm so angry with you. (more attentive)
11. There was so much noise in the street last night that I couldn't sleep well. (better)
12. There was a very good film on last night, but I didn't see it. (read the program)
13. We went for a picnic yesterday, but it rained all the time. (so hard)
14. I was lazy and wasted my time when I was at school. (harder)
15. I didn't understand what he said yesterday. (louder)

16. This house is very nice and comfortable. I'd like to buy it, but it's very expensive. (less expensive)

Ex. 7. Fill in the correct form of the verb.

1. I wish I ... (meet) that actor when he was in town.
2. He wishes he ... (buy) that book last week – now he hasn't got enough money.
3. If only I ... (be) older, I could have a driving licence.
4. I wish I ... (can) remember where that book is.
5. Tony wishes he ... (go) to Paris with his brother, but he has to work.
6. If only the dog ... (not/eat) the tickets – now we can't go to the show.
7. If only I ... (not/make) that mistake yesterday.
8. I wish this box ... (not/be) so heavy – I can't lift it.
9. We wish we ... (not/leave) the gate open. Now the dog has escaped.
10. Paula wishes she ... (have) more time for gardening, but she hasn't.

Ex. 8. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1. I wish I (to have) a season ticket to the theatre next winter.
2. I wish I (to consult) the teacher when I first felt that mathematics was too difficult for me.
3. I love sunny weather. I wish it (to be) warm and fine all the year round.
4. I wish I (not to lend) Nick my watch; he has broken it.
5. I wish you (to send) a word as soon as you arrive.
6. I wish I (not to have) to do my homework every day.
7. I wish you (to go) skiing with me yesterday. I had such a good time!
8. I wish I (to know) Spanish.
9. I wish I (not to drink) so much coffee in the evening; I couldn't sleep half the night.
10. I wish you (to read) more in future.
11. I wish I never (to suggest) this idea.
12. I wish I (to be) at yesterday's party; it must have been very merry.
13. I wish we (to meet) again next summer.
14. Don't you wish you (to see) that performance before?
15. They wished they (not to see) this horrible scene again.
16. The unfortunate pupil wished he (not to forget) to learn the rule.

Ex. 9. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Я бы хотела снова быть ребенком.
2. Я бы хотел, чтобы он чувствовал то же, что и я.

3. Он хотел, чтобы у него был кто-нибудь, с кем можно поговорить.
4. Она жалела, что занята и не может пойти на праздник.
5. Мне очень жаль, что я приехал в этот город.
6. Жаль, что я ничего не знаю о медицине.
7. Жаль, что я не изучал музыку в детстве.
8. Мэри бы хотела, чтобы у нее был младший брат.
9. Жаль, что мы не решились уехать в Италию тогда.
10. Хотела бы я, чтобы он был сейчас с нами.
11. Я жалею, что он не пришел раньше.
12. Жаль, что мы не обговорили все условия кредита.
13. Я бы хотела быть молодой и свободной!
14. Жаль, что мы не познакомились до войны.
15. Я бы хотела, чтобы вы побыли немного со мной.
16. Родителям очень хотелось, чтобы я остался обедать.
17. Мы пожалели, что доверили тур агентству и выбрали этот курорт.
18. Жаль, что ты живешь так далеко от центра города.
19. Я бы хотела, чтобы ты приходил чаще. Я скучаю.
20. Жаль, что он так и не стал адвокатом.
21. Мы бы хотели, чтобы наши тесты проверили сразу после экзамена.
22. Гости хотели бы, чтобы хозяин уделял им больше внимания в тот вечер.
23. Дети жалели, что их не взяли на праздник.
24. Моника жалела, что рассказала им всю правду.
25. Молодые люди хотели бы не знать этого странного парня.
26. Жаль, что я не вышла замуж за того благородного человека.
27. Хотелось бы, чтобы ты не курил здесь.

Ex. 10. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Я жалкую, що в мене немає дітей.
2. Я б хотіла бути зараз зі своїми друзями.
3. Шкода, що ми не скористалися його порадою.
4. Я дуже жалкую, що купила цю машину. Вона для мене замала.
5. Батьки б хотіли, щоб їхні діти були щасливі.
6. Шкода, що ти куриш.
7. Я жалкую, що ми не запросили Лізі на день народження.
8. Мій батько жалкує, що я не живу з ним.
9. Шкода, що ми тоді не поїхали у подорож.
10. Шкода, що я не зробив цю справу до кінця.
11. Я б дуже хотіла вміти співати.
12. Шкода, що я тоді записала тільки його адресу.
13. Шкода, що я не помітила його вчора в ресторані.

Ex. 11. Write a wish for each of the following sentences.

e.g. You want to go out but you haven't got enough money.

I wish I had enough money to go out.

1. You forgot to walk your dog.
2. David discovered he left his briefcase on the bus.
3. Ted left it too late to book a flight for Christmas.
4. You dream of being a world class racing driver.
5. It was windy all day and the fishermen couldn't work.
6. You didn't take your parents' advice and now you regret it.
7. It didn't cross your mind to wear a coat and now you are cold.
8. Sandra's mother-in-law is coming to stay and Sandra can't stand her.
9. Your sister won't lend you the dress which you want to wear tomorrow night.
10. Steven's dog ruined his pullover.
11. You threw away all your ex-boyfriend's letters and now you regret it.
12. Paul has seen some shoes he likes but they're very expensive.
13. You and your best friend fell out and now you are not speaking to each other.
14. John gets irritated when his brother plays his records so loud.

Ex. 12. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Жаль, что сегодня идет дождь. Если бы погода была солнечной, мы бы смогли провести день в лесу.
2. Я не знаю, где он сейчас живет. Если бы я знал его адрес, я бы обязательно ему написал.
3. Жаль, что я уже вернул вчера учебник в библиотеку. Если бы я знал, что он тебе нужен, я бы принес тебе его.
4. Жаль, что я не живу поблизости от университета.
5. Почему вы не попросили тогда меня вам помочь? Я бы обязательно вам помог, если бы вы меня попросили об этом.
6. Жаль, что вы не посмотрели этот фильм. Он довольно долго демонстрировался в кинотеатрах.
7. Я люблю читать, но у меня мало свободного времени. Если бы у меня было больше времени, я бы смог больше читать.
8. Жаль, что я не смог пойти в театр с вами в прошлую субботу. Если бы я не был занят, я бы обязательно пошел.
9. Жаль, что вы пришли так поздно.
10. Обидно, что мы ушли до его прихода.
11. К сожалению, они еще ничего не знают.
12. К сожалению, они уже знают об этом.
13. Жаль, что он не очень серьезен.

14. Я теперь жалею, что не послушал его совета.
15. Я бы хотел, чтобы вы все-таки прочитали эту книгу.
16. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы вы еще раз обдумали мое предложение.
17. Обидно, что мы не дождались его прихода.
18. Я теперь жалею, что последовал его совету.

Ex. 13. Correct the mistakes.

1. I wish I know how to set the timer on this video.
2. "If only I listened to Hilary," said Jack sadly. "Now it's too late".
3. I wish you did shut up for five minutes!
4. If only Charlie can get tomorrow off work.
5. Do you wish you went with Tom to the concert tomorrow night?
6. Excuse me. I wish speaking with the manager of this establishment immediately.
7. Albert wishes like anything that he was driving more slowly that night.
8. I wish I would feel well enough to eat something.
9. I wish I'll get my exam results sooner rather than later.
10. If only you to listen to what your teachers tell you!

Ex. 14. Complete the following sentences using the words in bold.

1. She would have stayed longer, but the babysitter needed to leave at 9.00.
Not If the babysitter at 9.00, she would have stayed longer.
2. We stopped at the service station. Otherwise, we would have run out of petrol.
Not If at the service station, we would have run out of petrol.
3. Tim couldn't have found the treasure without the map.
For But Tim couldn't have found the treasure.
4. I would have bought you a present but I didn't know that it was your birthday.
Wish I it was your birthday, I would have bought you a present.
5. I grabbed his hand. Otherwise, he might have run into the road.
Case I grabbed his hand into the road.
6. It's a pity I didn't read that book.
Wish I that book.
7. Ann can organize the concert but somebody must help her.
Helps Only if somebody concert.
8. Helen would have lent you the money but you didn't ask her.
Asked If she would have lent you the money.
9. I didn't finish my assignment because I came down with a terrible cold.
Would If I hadn't come down with a terrible cold, my assignment.
10. Lee didn't drive me to the airport and as a result I missed my flight.
Wish I me to the airport, I wouldn't have missed my flight.

11. Kate will move to London but she must find a job first.

Finds Only if Kate move to London.

12. You can't lose weight without doing some exercise.

Not Unless you do some exercise,

Ex. 15. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Жаль, что я ничего не знаю о медицине.
2. Если бы только он мне помог тогда.
3. Нам очень жаль, что мы оставили все на последний момент.
4. Жаль, что я не изучал музыку в детстве.
5. Если бы только ты относился ко мне лучше.
6. Какая жалость, что я не умею читать!
7. Если бы мы тогда купили дом, я бы сейчас жил в Париже.
8. Если бы я не прогуливал ленты, у меня не было бы проблем во время сессии.
9. Пассажиров охватил ужас, как бы самолет не загорелся.
10. Если пойдет снег, мы слепим снеговика.
11. В случае, если он позвонит, я сообщу ему свой адрес.
12. Они дрожали, что их могут обнаружить.
13. Она была обеспокоена тем, чтобы концерт прошел успешно.
14. Мама приказала, чтобы мы шли завтракать.
15. Жаль, что мы не познакомились раньше.
16. Боюсь, как бы он не забыл об этом.
17. Если бы он только понял, что он для меня значит!
18. Жаль, что я не умею кататься на коньках.
19. Если бы я жил в Лондоне, я бы хорошо знал английский.
20. Если бы не его помощь, я бы не смог сдать тест.

Ex. 16. Translate the sentences into Russian or Ukrainian.

1. You had better not tell her about it.
2. I think I had better go to bed.
3. They had better try their luck another time.
4. We had better start at once.
5. You had better take a couple of pills and try to sleep.
6. She had better see a doctor about it.
7. You had better go by bus.

Ex. 17. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Вам лучше ехать до центра на метро.
2. Ему лучше пересесть на этой остановке.
3. Лучше не пытайтесь сделать это сегодня.
4. По-моему, мне лучше не вмешиваться.

5. Лучше запишите его адрес.
6. Лучше не стойте здесь.
7. Лучше объясните ей, что делать.
8. Лучше пишите карандашом.
9. Ей лучше не ехать на юг.
10. Лучше, чтобы кто-нибудь остался здесь.
11. Лучше, чтобы кто-нибудь сказал ей об этом.
12. Им лучше не купаться в день приезда.
13. Лучше, чтобы кто-нибудь предупредил ее.
14. Лучше говорите немножко погромче.

Ex. 18. Translate the sentences into Russian or Ukrainian.

1. I'm sure they'd much rather have some sandwiches to eat on the way.
2. She's not at all musical. She'd much rather see a good film.
3. She hates to be in people's way. Of course she'd much rather stay at a hotel.
4. Would you rather stay at home tonight?
5. The weather is so fine. I'd rather walk at least part of the way.
6. I'd rather not have any lunch today.
7. Which would you rather take?

Ex. 19. Translate the sentences into English, using "would rather".

1. Я лучше выпью чашку чаю, чем кофе.
2. Чем тебе больше хочется заняться?
3. Куда ты больше хочешь пойти?
4. Ты бы хотела сейчас пообедать?
5. Я бы предпочла, чтобы вы об этом не говорили.
6. Я бы предпочла, чтобы вы вчера не стали вмешиваться.
7. По-моему, она предпочтет сделать это сама.
8. Они предпочли бы комнату побольше.
9. Он предпочел бы не оставаться там ни на день, но другого выхода не было.
10. Не ходите туда, если вам не хочется.
11. Мы бы предпочли, чтобы вы вчера пришли на работу.
12. Мама бы предпочла, чтобы мальчик закончил школу год назад.

Ex. 20. A) Give advice according to the model.

MODEL: 1. *I think he is losing weight. – (to smoke).*

He'd better not smoke so much.

2. *Should I take her along? – (not).*

You'd better not.

1. The dress is too short for her. – (to let it out a little).
2. The wind is getting fresher. – (to steer to the shore).
3. The evenings are cool here. – (to wear a sweater).
4. It certainly looks like rain and plenty of it. – (to give up that walk).
5. He's been working at it since lunch. – (to take a rest).
6. I wonder if I should let him go. – (not).
7. Do you think I should ask him too? – (not).
8. What's wrong with this stew? It doesn't taste right. – (to add some butter and cook it a little longer).
9. Oh, how my feet hurt! – (not to wear high heels when shopping).

B) Express a preference according to the model.

MODEL: 1. *We're going to the cinema. Are you coming? – (not).*
I'd rather not.

2. *Shall we take a taxi? – (to walk).*
I'd rather walk.

1. Let's go and have lunch now! – (to stay here a little longer).
2. Do you want a glass of beer? – (to have coffee).
3. Do you want to take the children along? – (not).
4. What do you want to do tonight? – (to go to the theatre).
5. Do you want to stay or go? – (to stay).
6. Do you want to speak to her now? – (not).
7. Let's go and play! – (to sit in the shade and watch).
8. Will you dance? – (not).
9. Would you like a piece of cake with your coffee? – (to have some bread and butter).
10. Do you ask her too? – (not).

3.7. The Subjunctive Mood in Attributive Clauses after the Noun TIME

After the principal clause expressing time – *It is (about, high) time* – the form of the **Past Simple** is used.

- *It's time we went home.* – *Нам пора идти домой.*
- *It's high time you learned you're in the army.* – *Вам давно пора усвоить, что вы в армии.*

In Modern English the form of the Past Continuous is also possible.

- *It's time we were leaving.* – *Нам пора уходить.*

Practice

Ex. 1. Replace the infinitives in brackets by the subjunctive mood after the expression *It is (about, high) time.*

1. It is time you (to understand) it is no joking matter.
2. It is high time that you (to get down) to business.
3. It is about time you (to be cooking) dinner.
4. It is high time that you (to change) your opinion to him.
5. Isn't it time he (to express) his own point of view for once?
6. Isn't it time the rain (to stop)?
7. You are still sleeping, aren't you? It is high time you (to have) breakfast.
8. You are not a child. It is high time you (to feel) some responsibility.
9. Look, the flowers have dropped their heads. Isn't it time they (to water)?
10. Dinner is ready. It is time we (to sit down) to table.
11. Why are they not back yet? Isn't it high time they (to return)?
12. It's about time fine weather (to set in).

Ex. 2. Paraphrase the sentences, using the subjunctive mood after the expression *It is (about, high) time.*

1. It is necessary to put an end to this pointless talk.
2. You do not seem to realize the importance of the matter.
3. Why can't you express such simple things in English as yet?
4. If you do not want your illness to assume a serious character you should consult a doctor as soon as possible.
5. You must begin reading books in the original no matter how difficult it may seem to you.
6. Isn't it time to be moving up front? We are getting off next stop.
7. It is high time for everybody to come.
8. It is about time for the train to pull out.
9. It is high time for the second course to be served.
10. It is about time for you to start doing your research.
11. It's time for her to understand that she is no longer a child and seriously think of her future.
12. It is about time for the team to start practicing.

Ex. 3. Translate into English.

1. Вы водите машину не первый год. Пора знать правила дорожного движения.
2. Давно пора зажечь свет. Зачем портить зрение?
3. Ребенку давно пора спать, уже слишком поздно.

4. Не пора ли обратить серьезное внимание на этот вопрос?
5. Не кажется ли вам, что давно пора закончить ремонт?
6. Вам давно пора обратиться к стоматологу, иначе у вас будут серьезные проблемы.
7. Давно бы пора привыкнуть к его прихотям. Он всегда был избалованным ребенком.
8. Чего мы ждем? Нам бы пора уже отправляться в путь.
9. Пора вам знать формы глагола, иначе вы не сдадите этот экзамен.
10. Не пора ли им прекратить эти шутки? Они меня раздражают.

3.8. The Subjunctive Mood in Adverbial Clauses of Comparison (Manner)

The Subjunctive Mood is used in adverbial clauses of comparison introduced by the conjunctions **AS IF** and **AS THOUGH**.

If the action of the subordinate clause is simultaneous with that of the principal clause, **the Past Simple** or **the Past Continuous** is generally used.

- *She speaks about him as if she knew him well.* – Она говорит о нем так, как будто она его хорошо знает.

- *She greeted him as if he were her brother.* – Она поздоровалась с ним так, как будто он был ее братом.

- *They walked slowly up the stairs as though they were carrying something heavy.* – Они медленно шли по лестнице, как будто несли что-то тяжелое.

If the action of the subordinate clause is prior to that of the principal clause, **the Past Perfect** or **the Past Perfect Continuous** is used.

- *She shook hands with him as though they had known each other all their lives.* – Они пожали друг другу руки, как будто были знакомы всю жизнь.

- *The man was panting as though he had been running for a long time.* – Мужчина тяжело дышал, как если бы он долгое время бежал.

Note: Clauses introduced by *as if / as though* are treated as predicative clauses when they follow the link verbs *to be, to feel, to look, to seem*.

- *It was as if she were angry with him.* – Похоже было, что она сердится на него.

- *The house looked as though it had been deserted for weeks.* – У дома был такой вид, точно в нем уже много недель никто не жил.

Practice

Ex. 1. Translate from English.

1. She smiled at me as if we had known each other for many years.
2. We played together as if we were children.
3. Paul understands English well as if he had spent all his life in England.
4. Boys always fight while playing as though they were enemies.
5. Father was strict to me as if he didn't trust me.
6. She described the house in detail as though she had lived there for many years.
7. She speaks about him as if they had been married for years.
8. Young people often waste their life as if they didn't understand how short it could be.
9. She always complains as if she were the unhappiest person in the world.
10. We greeted our partners as though we were relatives.
11. She apologised as if it had been her fault.
12. She is so nervous as if she were responsible for every mistake.
13. She felt as though she knew the whole truth.
14. The house looked as though it had been broken into.
15. The man looked as if his life was ruined.
16. The driver felt as if something was wrong with his car.
17. It looks as though she didn't want to speak to us.
18. The teacher looked as if he were surprised.
19. It seems as if everybody knew it.
20. It looks as though he had known about it long ago.

Ex. 2. Complete the sentences.

1. We stopped for a rest as if ...
2. I heard the lights went out ...
3. The students were excited as though ...
4. Joe is happy as if ...
5. Hannah was angry as though ...
6. A new carpet was so dirty ...
7. I bought him a wonderful present as though ...
8. Designer clothes are very expensive as if ...
9. I'm looking forward to going to the museum as if ...
10. I'm working in the garden as though ...
11. I've been looking for a new job as if ...
12. We are thinking about our holidays as though ...
13. We cleaned the house as if ...

14. He gave me a massage as if ...
15. The table looked ...
16. I felt ...

Ex. 3. Translate into English.

1. Она смеялась так, как будто услышала этот анекдот впервые.
2. Они улыбнулись друг другу так, как будто они познакомились много лет назад.
3. Оливер повел себя так, как будто был самым главным в компании.
4. Команда играла в футбол так, как будто **игроки были профессионалами**.
5. Женщина кричала так, как будто была мамой для девочки.
6. Она все время говорит со мной так, как будто я в чем-то виновата.
7. Они так уверенно зашли в дом, как будто бывали здесь не один раз.
8. Они так хорошо провели время, как будто и не было этого расставания в пять лет.
9. Он так уверенно заключает контракты, как будто занимался этим всю жизнь.
10. Ник звонит Анне так часто, как будто она его сестра.
11. Девушка взглянула на меня так, как будто я ее оскорбил.
12. Эта молодая женщина так вкусно готовит, как будто работала в ресторане.
13. Она была такая радостная, как будто все ее мечты сбылись.
14. Она так много тратит денег, как будто получила огромное наследство.
15. Она делает такие глупые ошибки, как будто видит эти задания впервые.
16. Она пишет так много писем, как будто у нее есть родственники по всему миру.
17. Отец так со мной разговаривал, как будто мы с ним чужие люди.
18. Питер взглянул на меня так, как будто знал все мои секреты.
19. Мой брат поздоровался со мной так, как будто я его чем-то обидела.
20. Мальчик дрожал, как будто он был напуган.
21. У меня такое ощущение, как будто он меня не понял.
22. Похоже, что мы не объяснили им все до конца.
23. У книги был такой вид, как будто ее никто даже не открывал.
24. У Лоры был такой вид, как будто она была не рада меня видеть.
25. У Пола был такой вид, как будто он ничего не понял.
26. У меня такое ощущение, что сегодня будет праздник.
27. У мужчины был такой вид, как будто он не выспался.
28. У торта был такой вид, как будто пекарь только что испек его.

Ex. 4. Make your sentences from the given parts.

e.g. *We smiled. We heard a funny story.*

We smiled as if we had heard a funny story.

1. They phone each other. They are close relatives.
2. We nodded him. We have known each other for many years.
3. She told the story in detail. She saw everything with her own eyes.
4. We objected to the plan. We can predict the future.
5. She thanked for giving her some advice. Her life depended on it.
6. We whispered. The baby was sleeping in the room.
7. Ann suffered from his indifference. He is the only man in the world.
8. The boy was rude to me. I am the person to blame.
9. The members of the party shook hands. They had made an agreement.
10. He felt guilty about the crime. It could change everything he had.
11. Mother was angry. The children always misbehave.
12. The woman was annoyed. She had been disturbed all day long.

Ex. 5. Translate from Ukrainian.

1. Дівчина говорила так, ніби вивчила свої слова напам'ять.
2. Чоловіки завжди поводяться так, ніби вони володарі світу.
3. Він був такий задоволений, ніби знайшов усі скарби світу.
4. Тереза переклала статтю так, ніби була професійним перекладачем.
5. Ми були такі щасливі бачити один одного, ніби не зустрічалися багато років.
6. Дівчинка так гарно співала, ніби тренувалася усе життя.
7. Хлопчик плакав, ніби його хтось образив.
8. Вони запросили на день народження стільки людей, ніби збиралися когось здивувати.
9. Він був втомлений, ніби працював усю ніч.
10. Вона поїхала додому так швидко, ніби її хтось там чекав.
11. Альберт завжди поводить з людьми так, ніби він найрозумніший.
12. Вона була вся мокра, ніби потрапила під дощ.
13. В місті була така тиша, ніби всі кудись поїхали.
14. Вода в річці була така тепла, ніби вже середина літа.
15. Вона замислилася, ніби згадувала щось приємне.
16. Ми обійнялися, ніби були знайомі з дитинства.
17. Вона завжди вчиняє так розумно, ніби хтось дає їй слушні поради.

18. Тетяна так гірко плакала, ніби втратила рідну людину.
19. Я хвилювалась, ніби вперше йшла на співбесіду.
20. Водій їхав швидко, ніби запізнювався.

Ex. 6. Translate the sentences from Ukrainian.

1. У мене таке відчуття, ніби він мені завжди бреше.
2. Вулиця виглядала так, ніби всю ніч тут було свято.
3. Хлопець мав таке відчуття, ніби його неуважно слухають.
4. Схоже на те, що він вже поїхав.
5. Діти виглядали так, ніби потрапили під дощ.
6. Будинок виглядав так, ніби його щойно збудували.
7. Жінка виглядала так, ніби в неї щось болить.
8. Кабінет виглядає так, ніби тут щось ретельно шукали.
9. В нього таке відчуття, ніби щось трапилося з його родиною.
10. Чоловік мав таке відчуття, ніби на нього хтось дивиться.
11. Він виглядав так, ніби не спав усю ніч.
12. Вона почувалася так, ніби була винна у цьому нещасному випадку.
13. Помешкання виглядало так, ніби тут жила родина.
14. У нас було таке відчуття, ніби ми раніше зустрічалися.
15. Схоже на те, що ми повинні зробити це до кінця дня.

3.9. The Subjunctive Mood in Adverbial Clauses of Concession

3.9.1. The subjunctive mood is found in adverbial clauses of concession introduced by the conjunctions and connectives *though, although, however, no matter, whatever, whoever*, etc. **MAY/MIGHT + bare infinitive** is generally used.

<p>Though he may (might) be tired Tired though he may (might) be No matter how tired he may (might) be However tired he may (might) be</p>	}	he will go to the concert.
---	---	----------------------------

• *Whatever obstacles may arise, we shall not give in. – Какіе бы препятствия ни встали на нашем пути, они нас не останоят.*

• *I must return to the city, no matter what dangers may lurk there. – Я должен вернуться в город, какіе бы опасности ни поджидали меня там.*

If the action of the subordinate clause is prior to that of the principal clause, the **Perfect Infinitive** is generally used.

• *However badly he may have behaved to you in the past he is still your brother. – Как бы плохо он ни вел себя по отношению к вам в прошлом, он все же ваш брат.*

3.9.2. The subjunctive mood is also used in adverbial clauses of time and place after the conjunctions *whenever* and *wherever*; in these cases the clauses have an additional concessive meaning.

• *Whenever you may come, you are welcome. – Когда бы вы ни пришли, мы вам всегда рады.*

Practice

Ex. 1. Translate into Russian or into Ukrainian.

1. However broad-minded the boss may be, he won't understand your opinion.

2. No matter how badly he may have studied at school, now he is a brilliant student.

3. Absent-minded though Mr. Brown may be, he always knows where his things are.

4. Though we may be honest, we won't be able to tell all the truth to our parents.

5. No matter how long we may have travelled, we are always glad to see new places.

6. However shy he may have been in the past, now he is a successful businessman.

7. Though we may speak to each other only from time to time, we are still the best friends.

8. However rich he may be, he never helps children from orphanages.

9. No matter how dangerous the trip might be, he will take part in it.

10. Timid though he may have been in his youth, now he is quite self-confident.

11. However much money he may need, his friends will always help him.

12. No matter how boring his job might be, he likes it very much.

13. Though children may be cruel to each other, they can always find common language while playing.

14. No matter how busy he may have been in the morning, now he is ready to enjoy himself in the cinema.

15. However lonely she may feel, she is always glad to meet new people.

Ex. 2. Make your own sentences using the given parts.

MODEL: *He is tired. He will go to the party.*

– *No matter how tired he may be, he will go to the party.*

1. She is always bossy. Nobody will listen to her opinion.
2. The house is very expensive. We have enough money to buy it.
3. The girl was rude to the teacher. The teacher is always kind to her.
4. There are difficult circumstances. John can find the way out.
5. We saved a lot of money. We can't afford a new car.
6. They are hungry. They continue their way.
7. He is nervous about answering. He can always concentrate.
8. We have been friends for many years. Now we hate each other.
9. The weather is changeable. We will not stay at home in summer.
10. He is very attentive. He has missed the mistake.
11. He is very self-confident. Nobody takes him seriously.
12. He can easily find solutions for simple problems. It's difficult for him to communicate with his colleagues.

Ex. 3. Translate into English.

1. Хотя ты и не согласен со мной, я все равно права.
2. Как бы ты ни стыдился его, он – твой брат.
3. Я должен вернуться в город, какие бы опасности ни поджидали меня там.
4. Как бы плохо он ни поступил с вами тогда, сейчас вам придется с ним работать.
5. Как бы ты ни противился, мы поедем на этот концерт.
6. Какая бы погода ни была, мы пойдем на прогулку с детьми.
7. Как бы ты ни любил сладости, тебе придется от них отказаться.
8. Как бы ни было нудно, вам стоит прочитать эту книгу.
9. Как бы ни было жарко, мы не открываем окна из-за пыли.
10. Как бы плохо он ни вел себя на дне рождения, он все равно наш друг.
11. Как бы ни сложились обстоятельства, мы должны держаться вместе.
12. Правда, какая бы горькая она ни была, лучше, чем ложь.
13. Как бы ты ни ненавидела его, ты должна ему позвонить.
14. Как бы мне ни понравилась книга, фильм я посмотрела с большим интересом.
15. Как бы у меня ни болела голова, я дослушаю лекцию до конца.
16. Как бы ни сложились наши отношения, он всегда будет моим другом.
17. Какие бы высокие цены ни были, я куплю эту квартиру.
18. Как бы это ни было вредно для здоровья, Том никогда не бросит курить.

Ex. 4. Make up your sentences using the beginning.

1. However aggressive he may be ...
2. No matter how hard it may be ...
3. Though he may be ill ...
4. Kind though she may be...
5. No matter how interesting the film may be ...
6. However old the house may be ...
7. Though we may be different ...
8. However rude he may have spoken to you ...
9. No matter how long the story may have been ...
10. Though she may have lived there for many years...
11. Tired though you may be ...
12. However beautiful the dress may be ...
13. No matter how comfortable the chair may be ...
14. Though we might be unfriendly to each other ...
15. Scared though the girl may be ...

Ex. 5. Translate from Ukrainian into English.

1. Якби чудові слова він їй не казав, вона ніколи не повірить йому.
2. Ми змушені працювати весь день, якби спека не була на вулиці.
3. Яким би талановитим він не був у дитинстві, зараз він звичайний водій.
4. Я обов'язково запишусь на комп'ютерні курси, якби дорого це не коштувало.
5. Якби він не намагався, я ніколи не пробачу його.
6. Якби смішно він не поведився, його друзі добре до нього ставляться.
7. Якби не було прохолодно, ми поїдемо в гори.
8. Якби він не ображав її в минулому, вона назавжди залишиться йому вірною.
9. Якби погано вона не почувалася, вона ніколи не забуває про свої обов'язки.
10. Якби довго я не спілкувалася з цією людиною, я ніколи не вважатиму її своїм другом.
11. Вона не знайде нову роботу зараз, якби добре вона не володіла двома мовами.
12. Якою б гарною дочкою вона не була, в неї завжди були погані стосунки з батьками.
13. Якби впевнено він не почувався за кермом, його важко назвати професійним водієм.
14. Якби проблеми не з'являлися в його житті, він ніколи не падає духом.

15. Якою б розумною вона не була, це не допоможе їй зробити кар'єру.

16. Не важливо, які б якісні будинки тоді не будували, зараз технології набагато розвинутіші.

17. Які б цікаві книжки він не писав, жодне видавництво їх не купує.

18. Який би складний тест не дав нам вчитель, ми вирішуємо його блискуче.

19. Як би швидко ми не їхали, ми все одно не встигнемо до початку.

20. Який би сильний вітер не дув, ми залишимося на пляжі.

Ex. 6. Translate the sentences into English using the words whenever/wherever.

1. Когда бы она ни позвонила своей матери, она всегда получала дельный совет.

2. Где бы вы ни остановились, вы будете поражены вежливым и услужливым персоналом.

3. Она не могла найти ответ, где бы она ни искала, потому что иногда сама не понимала, что ищет.

4. Когда бы ни приехали его родители, они всегда привозили сладости и домашнее варенье.

5. Когда бы Анна ни включала телевизор, она ожидала плохих новостей с юга.

6. Куда бы вы ни взглянули, везде царили чистота и идеальный порядок.

7. Девочки были такими любопытными, что, куда бы они ни шли, они всегда задавали множество вопросов обо всем на свете.

8. Вы можете больше не стараться, где бы вы ее ни искали, вы больше никогда ее не увидите.

9. Когда бы ни звонил телефон, Татьяна вздрагивала, будто так и не привыкла к нему.

10. Почему вы снова не готовы? Когда бы я ни заходил в вашу комнату, вы всегда выбираете, что надеть.

Revision Exercises on the Subjunctive Mood

Ex. 1. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Что бы вы сделали на моем месте?

2. Было бы интересно выяснить, кто из нас прав: ты или я.

3. Было бы приятно искупаться в такую жаркую погоду.

4. Как бы вы ответили на этот вопрос?

5. Было бы важно узнать его мнение по этому вопросу.

6. Вам было бы очень полезно заняться спортом.

7. Она бы хорошо училась, да часто болеет и пропускает занятия.
8. Я бы этого никогда не сделал без вашей помощи.
9. Я думаю, она не рассердилась бы, да уж очень вы шумели.
10. Было поздно, и было бы естественно, если бы большой ребенок уснул, но он не спал и пристально смотрел на спинку кровати.
11. Я бы пошел с вами в столовую, но врач прописал мне диету.
12. Хорошо, что вы послушались совета врача, иначе вам было бы не избежать воспаления легких.
13. В прошлое воскресенье дождь лил целый день, иначе мы поехали бы за город.
14. Даже если бы ему сделали операцию, это не помогло бы. Ему уже ничем нельзя было помочь.
15. Он поехал бы с нами, если бы не его внезапная болезнь.
16. Он бы не поправился так быстро после болезни, если бы не хороший уход в больнице.
17. Если бы не его хорошее здоровье, он не смог бы выдержать всех трудностей этой экспедиции.
18. Если бы ты вчера оделась потеплее, ты бы сегодня не кашляла и не чихала.
19. Если бы вы знали симптомы кори, вы бы сразу же поняли, что это была не скарлатина.
20. На вашем месте я бы не пошел туда без приглашения.

Ex. 2. Supply the correct mood of the verbs in brackets.

1. I knew he (to be) silly, but I (not to believe) that he (to be) as silly as that.
2. I wish he (to be) a bit stronger against Crawford.
3. After a moment's silence he (to break out): "It (to be) a nuisance if I (to beg) a cup of tea in your rooms?"
4. You must thank him, not we. Without him we (not to achieve) any success.
5. I wish she (not to look) so pale.
6. "If I (to be) Crawford, I (to thank) Winslow much," said Chrystal.
7. I (to give) a good deal for that assurance!
8. Are you glad to see me? – You're funny, Bob! As if you (not to know).
9. If I (to think) as you do I (to feel) miserable.
10. Mr. Dermant's glance rested on Shelton and quickly fell down to the ground as though he (to see) something that alarmed him.
11. I wish you (to show) more sign of not liking it in practice.
12. I can't for the life of me understand why you didn't wait before they decided. I (to expect) you to discuss it with me.

13. When Hilary opened the door the stranger made a quick movement forward, almost as if he (to be) going to stick his foot hurriedly to the opening.
14. Her voice sounded as though something (to offend) her.
15. I wish I (can) play tennis as well as you do.
16. He looked up sharply as if he (to make) a dangerous remark
17. I may travel out with Uncle, but it (to be) such fun if you (to come).
18. He saw it as clearly as though it (to be) before his eyes.
19. But for your friendship I (to feel) lonely here.

Ex. 3. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Если бы вы мне позвонили, я бы зашел вчера.
2. Я бы давно ответила на твой вопрос, если бы могла.
3. Если бы я умела хорошо играть на рояле, я бы сыграла для вас.
4. Мальчик не дрожал бы, если бы ему не было холодно. Дайте ему чашку горячего чая.
5. Мы бы с удовольствием посидели еще часок, если бы не было так поздно.
6. Если бы я знала, что ты позвала меня, чтобы упрекать, я бы не пришла.
7. Если бы вы регулярно принимали лекарства, которые прописал врач, вы бы чувствовали себя теперь гораздо лучше.
8. Если бы мы начали работать рано утром, мы бы уже все закончили.
9. Я бы давно это сделала, если бы знала, что это так важно.
10. Знай мы это тогда, мы бы приняли меры.
11. Если бы ты последовал моему совету, все было бы теперь в порядке.
12. Если бы вы не отказались от его предложения, мы бы уехали все вместе, а не сидели бы здесь одни.
13. Я уверен, что вы могли бы сделать это без моей помощи, если бы постарались. Это было вовсе не трудно.
14. Я бы, пожалуй, осталась, если бы мне разрешили.
15. Если бы вы знали его так же хорошо, как я, вы бы ему тоже доверяли.

Ex. 4. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Если бы только он не был таким ленивым!
2. Она желала, чтобы была ночь вместо утра, чтобы никто не видел, как она несчастна.
3. Как жаль, что она не сестра мне, я бы ее очень любила.
4. Как жаль, что сегодня не воскресенье, я бы сводила детей в зоопарк.

5. Мы пожалели, что оставили его там одного.
6. Обидно, что вы мне не верите. Я никогда не обманывал вас.
7. Если бы не велосипед, он бы нас не догнал.
8. Рэндал рассердился так, как будто были истрачены его собственные деньги.
9. Не смотри на меня так, как будто никогда не видел меня раньше.
10. У нее такой вид, как будто она не знает, что сказать.
11. Даже если бы мы получили телеграмму вчера, все равно было бы слишком поздно.
12. Даже если бы я была очень занята, я бы все равно нашла время навесить ее в больнице.
13. Если бы не его сообразительность, мы не сделали бы перевод так быстро и не были бы сейчас свободны.
14. Если бы я знал, что ты придешь, я бы остался дома.
15. Это было бы важно тогда, но не теперь.

Ex. 5. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Для меня обязательно, чтобы все было сделано вовремя.
2. Если Джек откажется помочь нам, мы справимся и без него.
3. Я настаиваю, чтобы дети шли обедать.
4. Если бы мой папа не уехал, я бы сейчас не опаздывала на занятия.
5. Если бы я не женился летом, мне бы не пришлось так много работать каждый день.
6. Мы предложили, чтобы Ник присоединился к нам.
7. Полицейский приказал, чтоб никто не покидал комнату.
8. Инспектор приказал, чтобы секретарь приготовила необходимые документы.
9. Если бы не было дождя, мы бы прогулялись.
10. Он ведет себя так, как будто что-то подозревает.
11. Я должна выступить на собрании, как бы сильно я ни волновалась.
12. Как бы трудно им ни было, они не вернутся в свой маленький городок.
13. Вам давно пора запомнить, что не годится разговаривать с полным ртом.
14. Дети опасались, как бы учитель не заметил, что они не выполнили домашнее задание.
15. Мистер Хадсон предпочел бы, чтобы его дочь осталась вчера дома.



PART II

The Infinitive

4. THE NON-FINITE FORMS OF THE VERB

The verb has finite and non-finite forms (verbals). The verbals do not express person, number, tense and mood. They possess the categories of voice, perfect and aspect.

There are four verbals in English: **the infinitive** (to take), **the gerund** (taking), **participle I** (taking) and **participle II** (taken).

The features of the verbals:

1. They have a double nature, verbal and either nominal (the infinitive and the gerund) or adjectival/adverbial (the participle).

2. The verbals have only relative tense distinctions; the form of a verbal doesn't show whether the action it denotes refers to the present, past or future; it shows only whether the action expressed by the verbal is simultaneous with the action expressed by the finite form of the verb or prior to it.

3. All the verbals can form predicative constructions.

In the sentence a verbal may occur:

1. Singly (without accompanying words).

2. In phrases (the phrases form syntactic units serving as one part of the sentence).

3. In predicative constructions.

5. TYPES OF THE INFINITIVE STEM

5.1. The Full Infinitive

The infinitive is a non-finite form of the verb which names a process in a most general way. It is treated as the initial form of the verb, which represents the verb in dictionaries. In all its forms and functions the infinitive

has a special marker, the particle *to*: *to be*, *to have*, *to do*. The infinitive with the particle *to* is called a full infinitive:

- *We agreed to meet on Friday.*

5.2. The Bare Infinitive

The infinitive without the particle *to* is called a bare infinitive. We use bare infinitives:

a) after auxiliary verbs:

- *Jason doesn't go to school.*
- *When did you come?*
- *He will probably be home late tonight.*

b) after modal verbs (except *ought to*, *have to*, *be to*):

- *I can't stay long.*
- *What will you do if they tell us we must pay more?*
- *You needn't worry.*

But: *You ought to help your friend.*

I have to go there every day.

We are to be there at 7 p.m.

c) after modal expressions (*had better*, *would rather*, *would sooner*):

- *You had better book your flight early.*
- *I'd rather do my shopping tomorrow.*
- *She'd sooner die than come back.*

d) after verbs of sense perception (*to see*, *to hear*, *to feel*, *to watch*, *to observe*, *to notice*, *to listen to*):

- *I didn't hear Tom come in.*
- *I've never seen anyone eat as much as your friend can.*
- *I felt somebody touch me on the shoulder.*

e) after verbs of inducement (*let*, *make*, *have*):

- *Please make her stop!*
- *They won't let us leave.*
- *Have somebody call him.*

But: After the verbs of sense perception and the verb *to make* in the form of the Passive Voice the full infinitive is used.

• *I was made to do the exercise again.* – *Меня заставили сделать это упражнение снова.*

f) after phrases with *but* (*cannot but, do anything but, do nothing but*):

- *I cannot but agree with you about that issue.*
- *Did you do anything but ask questions?*
- *She does nothing but grumble.*

g) in *why/why-not* sentences:

- *Why not let her do as she likes?*
- *Why waste your time on this kind of work?*

h) after the phrase *rather than*:

- *Let's finish the job now rather than leave it till tomorrow.*
- *He resigned rather than take part in such a dishonest transaction.*
- *Rather than buy a car of his own, he prefers to rent one.*

Note 1: The infinitive can be used **with or without the particle *to*** in the following cases:

a) after the verb *to help*:

- *Can you help me (to) unload the car?*

b) after the expressions like *All I did was, What I do is, etc*:

- *All I did was (to) give him a little push.*
- *All I wanted to do was (to) run away.*
- *What a fire-door does is (to) delay the spread of a fire.*

Note 2: When there are several infinitives with the same or similar function, *to* is put only before the first infinitive.

- *I'd like to lie down and go to sleep.*
- *Do you want to have lunch now or wait till later?*
- *It's easier to do it yourself than explain to somebody else how to do it.*
- *It's as easy to smile as frown.*

But if emphasis or contrast is intended, *to* is repeated before each infinitive:

- *To be or not to be – that is the question.*

5.3. The Split Infinitive

We can use infinitives with objects, prepositional phrases and adverbs. If we put an adverb between the particle *to* and the verb, the infinitive is called a split infinitive.

- *She began to slowly get up off the floor.*
- *I want to really understand Islam.*

Split infinitive structures are quite common in English, especially in an informal style. Some people consider them incorrect or careless, and avoid them if possible by putting the adverb in another position.

- *She began slowly to get up off the floor.*
- *I want really to understand Islam.*

Sometimes this separation of *to* from the infinitive is necessary to avoid ambiguity:

• *Your job is to really make the club a success.* – The adverb *really* emphasizes the meaning of the verb *to make*.

• *Ваша работа состоит в том, чтобы клуб (действительно) имел успех.*

• *Your job is really to make the club a success.* – The adverb *really* is used to express the real purpose of work.

• *Действительная цель вашей работы состоит в том, чтобы у клуба был успех.*

Note 3: The particle *to* is often used without the infinitive if it is easily understood from the context:

- *They don't seem to want to pay, but I expect them to.*
- *Let's go for a walk. – I don't want to.*
- *I don't dance much now, but I used to a lot.*
- *Sorry I shouted at you. I didn't mean to.*
- *If you don't do it, then who is going to?*

The verbs *to be* and *to have* (in the meaning *to possess*) are not usually dropped.

- *There are more flowers than there used to be.*
- *She hasn't been promoted yet, but she ought to be.*
- *You've got more freckles than you used to have.*

Note 4: Negative infinitives are normally made by putting the negative particle *not* or the adverb *never* before the infinitive.

- *Try not to be late.*
- *You were silly not to have locked your car.*
- *I promise never to see her again.*

Practice

Ex. 1. Put TO where necessary before the infinitives, comment on the type of the infinitive stem.

1. The teacher made me _____ repeat it all over again.

2. You needn't _____ ask for permission. I let you _____ take my books whenever you like.
3. Will you help me _____ move the table?
4. He is expected _____ arrive in a few days.
5. You seem _____ know these places very well.
6. You had better _____ make a note of it.
7. I heard the door _____ open and saw a shadow _____ move across the floor.
8. He told me _____ try _____ do it once again.
9. I'd rather _____ walk a little before going to bed.
10. There is nothing _____ do but _____ wait till somebody comes _____ let us out.
11. Why not _____ wait a little longer?
12. I felt her _____ shiver with cold.
13. Why _____ stand up if you can _____ sit down? Why _____ sit down if you can _____ lie down?
14. You are not _____ mention this to anyone.
15. Rose wanted them _____ stop laughing, wanted the curtain _____ come down.
16. What made you _____ deceive me?
17. Why not _____ try _____ persuade Gerald _____ join me?
18. You'd better _____ stay at home today if you feel unwell.
19. All we can _____ do is _____ hope for the best and _____ wait.
20. He heard the door _____ close.

Ex. 2. Use the appropriate type of the infinitive stem.

1. She began _____ talk of her city.
2. I don't want them _____ think you are wrong.
3. It was a command from her mother, and there was nothing for her _____ do but _____ obey it.
4. You must _____ take care not _____ offend her.
5. I'd rather not _____ go home that way.
6. I think we'd better _____ go and _____ get dry.
7. I stood by the door and watched him _____ take the drinks over to Wells.
8. "Do you want _____ write?" – "Of course." – "Then why not _____ write it?"
9. It heartened Mary _____ hear him _____ speak so lightly.
10. How dare you _____ interfere with my private concerns? No, don't speak. Don't try _____ excuse yourself.
11. Lisa felt herself _____ grow red to the tips of her toes.
12. I had not seen Jimmy _____ lose his temper before.
13. Mrs. Carey rose _____ help her _____ lay the cloth.
14. Why not _____ make him a doctor like his father?
15. He would never cease _____ regret his lost opportunities.
16. He never let himself _____ be angry.

Ex. 3. Respond to the questions or statements in the first column, using the phrases from the second column.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Shall I bring a calculator to the exam? | a) Yes, he looks much thinner than he used to. |
| 2. Why didn't you invite them? | b) Not so much as I used to. |
| 3. You don't have to walk to work. | c) Well, yes, I'd certainly prefer to. |
| 4. Would you like to travel first class? | d) I do it because I choose to. |
| 5. They say you read a lot. | e) No, you don't need to. |
| 6. Will you write a letter to her? | f) I meant to, but I forgot. |
| 7. Are you enjoying your new job? | g) Yes, I ought to. |
| 8. You must take more care of it. | h) I simply didn't want to. |
| 9. Why didn't you dance with him? | i) Yes, if you wish me to. |
| 10. I see you haven't bought any oranges. | j) Well, I'm starting to. |
| 11. Would you present the prizes for the competition? | k) He didn't ask me to. |
| 12. You ought to see the police about the people next door. | l) I suppose I'll have to. |
| 13. Derek has lost a lot of weight. | m) That's okay. You don't have to if you don't want to. |
| 14. She says you are going to help her. | n) I'd be delighted to. |
| 15. I don't think I'll go after all. | o) I intend to. They can't go on keeping the whole street awake every night. |

Ex. 4. Translate the phrases in brackets using the particle TO.

1. You needn't say anything (если ты не хочешь).
2. Michael knew a lot, (или казалось, что знал).
3. Well, let's forget it, shall we? – (Я рад сделать это).
4. Why don't you come and stay with us? – (Я бы очень хотел).
5. She always kept her mouth shut (когда ее об этом просили).
6. It was my fault. I'm sorry. (Я не хотел).
7. I know I should have come to you and told you about it, (но я боялся).
8. I couldn't do (того, что собирался).
9. You didn't sign your test paper. – (Извините, я забыл).

10. Why can't you go with us? – (Мне не разрешают).
11. Do you collect stamps? – (Нет, но раньше собирал).
12. I'd be glad to see you. Come any time you like. – (Я постараюсь).
13. Are you and Gillian getting married? – (Мы надеемся).
14. Somebody ought to clean up the bathroom. – (Я попрошу Джона).
15. I was hoping to go to France this year, (но я не могу себе это позволить).

6. FEATURES AND FORMS OF THE INFINITIVE

6.1. The Forms of the Infinitive

	Voice	
	Active	Passive
Simple	to send	to be sent
Continuous	to be sending	–
Perfect	to have sent	to have been sent
Perfect Continuous	to have been sending	–

Intransitive verbs (for example, *to go*) cannot form the passive voice.

The forms of the Infinitive have the following names:

The Simple Infinitive Active – to send.

The Simple Infinitive Passive – to be sent.

The Continuous Infinitive – to be sending.

The Perfect Infinitive Active – to have sent.

The Perfect Infinitive Passive – to have been sent.

The Perfect Continuous Infinitive – to have been sending.

6.2. Features of the Infinitive

Like other non-finite forms of the verb the infinitive has a double nature: it combines verbal features with nominal ones. **The verbal features** of the infinitive can be observed in:

1. its combinability:

a) the infinitive of transitive verbs can take a direct object:

- *I want to learn French.*

b) the infinitive takes a predicative if it is a link verb:

- *She wants to be an interpreter.*

c) the infinitive can be modified by adverbs:

- *To drive slowly here is dangerous.*

2. Besides, the infinitive has the verbal categories of voice, perfect and aspect:

The Active Voice Forms

- *He doesn't like to ask questions.*
Он не любит задавать вопросы.

- *I'm glad to have invited them.*
Я рад, что пригласил их.

The Passive Voice Forms

- *He doesn't like to be asked questions.*
Он не любит, когда ему задают вопросы.

- *I'm glad to have been invited.*
Я рад, что меня пригласили.

The Non-Perfect (Simple) Forms

- *I'm sorry to trouble you.*
Мне неприятно, что я вас беспокою.

- *Children are always happy to be given chocolates.*
Дети всегда счастливы, когда им дают конфеты.

- *I'm glad to be working with you.*
Я рад, что работаю с вами.

The Perfect Forms

- *I'm sorry to have troubled you.*
Мне неприятно, что я вас побеспокоил.

- *The children are happy to have been given some chocolates.*
Дети счастливы, что им дали конфет.

- *I'm glad to have been working with you all these years.*
Я рад, что все эти годы работаю с вами.

The Common Aspect Forms

- *It is pleasant to drive a car.*
Водить машину приятно.

- *He must have written a lot of letters.*
Должно быть, он написал много писем.

The Continuous Aspect Forms

- *It was pleasant to be driving a car again.*
Было приятно снова вести машину.

- *He must have been writing letters all day long.*
Должно быть, он писал письма весь день.

The nominal features of the infinitive are revealed only in its functions.

The infinitive can be used :

- a) As the subject of the sentence.
 - *To understand is to forgive.*
- b) As a predicative.
 - *Her plan was now to drive to London.*
- c) As an object.
 - *He never learnt to read or write.*

6.3. The Usage of Forms

The Simple Infinitive expresses the action which is *simultaneous* with the action expressed by the finite form of the verb.

- *I'm glad to meet you.* – Я рад встретить вас.
- *I was glad to see your elder sister at the party yesterday.* – Я был рад видеть вашу старшую сестру вчера на вечеринке.
- *She will be very glad to see you soon.* – Она будет очень рада вскоре вас увидеть.

The Continuous Infinitive expresses the action *in progress* which is *simultaneous* with the action expressed by the finite form of the verb.

- *She pretends to be sleeping.* – Она притворяется, что спит.
- *It's nice to be sitting now with you.* – Хорошо сидеть здесь с тобой.
- *They must be joking.* – Они, должно быть, шутят.
- *He can't be working in the garden in such bad weather.* – Не может быть, чтобы он работал в саду в такую плохую погоду.

The Perfect Infinitive expresses the action which is *prior* to the action expressed by the finite form of the verb.

- *I am glad to have seen you.* – Я рада, что увидела вас.
- *I'm sure to have met him before.* – Я уверен, что встречал его раньше.
- *I'm sorry not to have come on Sunday.* – Жаль, что я не пришел в воскресенье.
- *It's good to have finished work for the day.* – Хорошо, что на сегодня работа закончена.
- *They may have left.* – Они, возможно, уехали.
- *They can't have made such a mistake.* – Не может быть, чтобы они совершили такую ошибку.

The Perfect Continuous Infinitive expresses the action *in progress* which is *prior* to the action expressed by the finite form of the verb.

• *I am proud to have been teaching English for 30 years.* – Я горжусь тем, что в течение 30 лет преподавал английский язык.

• *They seem to have been living here since they were born.* – Кажется, они живут здесь с рождения.

• *He is glad to have been working for this company so long.* – Он рад, что работает в этой компании так долго.

• *They should have been doing their homework at the time that I called.* – Им следовало выполнять домашнее задание, когда я позвонил.

Note 1: After such verbs as *to mean, to expect, to intend, to hope* used in the Past Simple, the Perfect Infinitive shows that the hope or intention was not carried out.

• *I meant to have gone there.* – Я собирался пойти туда (но не пошел).

• *I meant to have telephoned you, but I forgot.* – Я хотел позвонить тебе, но забыл.

Note 2: With *was/were, would like*, perfect infinitives often refer to unreal situations that are the opposite of what really happened.

• *He was to have gone to the art college but he fell ill.* – Он собирался пойти в художественный колледж, но заболел.

• *I'd like to have been sitting there when she walked in.* – Мне бы хотелось находиться там, когда она вошла (Меня там не было).

Practice

Ex. 1. State the form of the given infinitives:

To be mentioned, to have known, to have been dealt, to be shouting, to have been waiting, to smile, to be dancing, to have been told, to have been travelling, to be asked, to shut, to have said, to have been left, to be riding, to have been walking.

Ex. 2. Give all the possible forms of the following infinitives:

to work, to lie, to carry, to choose, to stand, to show, to lay, to laugh, to smoke, to like, to break, to strike, to ski, to put, to eat.

Ex. 3. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian or Russian, comment on the forms of the infinitives.

1. Howard wants to teach you Japanese.

2. Howards wants to be taught Japanese.

3. The child liked to read.
4. The child liked to be read to.
5. Hello, how nice to see you!
6. I'm glad to have seen you. Good-bye!
7. I'm sorry to disturb you.
8. I'm sorry not to have helped you.
9. She was sorry to have said it.
10. I'm sure very soon I'll be sorry not to have spoken with you about that.
11. When she felt worse, she was sorry not to have consulted the doctor.
12. My sister is glad to be taught French.
13. He was glad to have been given permission to leave.
14. They are glad to have been taught by such outstanding teachers.
15. Our teacher is glad to be teaching such clever students.
16. We're happy to be working with a man like Mr. Jones.
17. We're happy to have been working with you all these years.
18. Grace is happy to have been invited to the party.
19. I hate to bother you, but the man is still waiting to be given a definite answer.
20. He hated to be bothered with trifling matters.

Ex. 4. Rewrite the following sentences using verb tenses instead of forms of the infinitive.

MODEL: *She is glad to have been offered this job.*
She is glad that she has been offered this job.
She was glad to have been offered this job.
She was glad that she had been offered this job.

1. Jack didn't expect to meet you.
2. I expected to be offered a good job.
3. Robert is proud to work with Mr. Eden.
4. Robert is proud to have been introduced to Mr. Smith.
5. I'm pleased to see you.
6. Howard is glad to have been cured.
7. We're happy to be here.
8. She is happy to be invited to the parties.
9. Walter was sorry to have accepted the invitation.
10. Walter was glad not to have been noticed.
11. Are you sorry to have left so early?
12. We hope to have finished the job by next Saturday.
13. I'm sorry not to have come on Tuesday.
14. I'm glad to have left school.
15. She was sorry to have missed Bill.

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. Я рад, что дал вам эту книгу.
2. Я рад, что мне дали эту книгу.
3. Мы хотим проинформировать вас об этом.
4. Мы хотим, чтобы нас проинформировали об этом.
5. Мы рады, что встретили его на станции.
6. Мы рады, что нас встретили на станции.
7. Они очень довольны, что пригласили вас на конференцию.
8. Они очень довольны, что их пригласили на конференцию.
9. Я не думал прерывать ее.
10. Я не предполагал, что меня прервут.
11. Он будет счастлив повидаться с вами.
12. Он был счастлив, что повидался с вами.
13. Ему было стыдно говорить нам об этом.
14. Ему было стыдно, что он нам об этом сказал.
15. Мне жаль, что я не купил это пальто.

Ex. 6. Point out the forms of the infinitives and comment on them.

1. Lady Franklin was horrified at herself. To have asked his name, to have been told his name, and to have forgotten it!
2. She seemed to be paying no attention to what was going round her.
3. He suddenly awoke from his queer trance, there was a decision to be made.
4. Good-bye, Mr. Jackson. Glad to have been of service to you.
5. I say, don't you think you ought to be going?
6. He was very tired, and to have been caught napping had irritated him and hurt his pride.
7. There are a great many things to be taken into consideration.
8. Judging from the books and papers on the writing-table he must have been working since they left him in the morning.
9. She told them to take off their shoes so that their footsteps could not be heard in the flat below.
10. "We are very sorry to have disturbed you", began Peter.
11. I want you to promise me you won't talk to Antonia about that sort of things.
12. That woman is still sitting. She seems to have been waiting over an hour.
13. Well, funny things seem to be happening.
14. To have been so happy and not to have known it!
15. There was nothing to be done, but wait for the next express, which was due at four.

Ex. 7. Use the correct form of the infinitive.

1. I hope (to see) you soon.
2. We expect (to be) back in two days.
3. He expected (to help) by his friends.
4. I'm glad (to do) all the homework yesterday.
5. I'm sorry (to break) my promise.
6. I hate (to bother) you, but the students are still waiting (to give) books for their work.
7. She seized every opportunity (to appear) in public: she was so anxious (to talk) about.
8. Is there anything else (to tell) her? I believe she deserves (to know) the state of her sick mother.
9. He began writing books not because he wanted (to earn) a living.
10. The woman pretended (to read) and (not to hear) the bell.
11. Perhaps it would upset her (to tell) the truth of the matter.
12. The only sound (to hear) was the snoring of grandfather in the bedroom.

Ex. 8. Use the appropriate form of the infinitives in brackets:

- A)**
1. I'm dreadfully sorry (to bother) you in this stupid way.
 2. He kept late hours last night; he may still (to sleep).
 3. "She must (to be) very beautiful years ago," Maren thought.
 4. It's a secret and no one else must (to tell).
 5. Good-bye. So pleased (to meet) you.
 6. He's a talented engineer. He's supposed (to work) at a new invention.
 7. Oh, my Margaret, my daughter. You should never (to go). It was all your father's fault.
 8. She seems (to work) at her course paper since spring and says she has still a lot (to do).
 9. I've just seen him passing the entrance door, so he can't (to work) at the laboratory as you say.
 10. The next morning he seemed (to forget) it all.
 11. It ought (to do) long ago; at least before their leaving Kyiv.
 12. She seemed at times (to seize) with an uncontrolled irritation and would say sharp and wounding things.
 13. You probably think that I must (to live) a very nice life in France, but it wasn't so.
 14. No words can describe it: it must (to see).
- B)** Why didn't you come yesterday? I am sorry (to wait) for you for the whole evening. I intended (to show) you my collection of photos. They are said (to be) rather good. Tomorrow I'll be busy. I expect (to read) for the exam all day long. The exam is very difficult. Our students are very glad (to give) consultations. I'm so glad (to give) the necessary explanations at the last consultation.

Ex. 9. Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets.

MODEL: *I didn't go there. (meant)*

*I meant to **have gone** there.*

1. I didn't find him at home. (hoped)
2. I didn't telephone her. (meant)
3. He didn't appear with Marilyn Monroe in her last film. (was)
4. Sam didn't send the package sooner. (intended)
4. Bill didn't finish all his work by three o'clock. (hoped)
5. The boat didn't take them to the island. (was)
6. He didn't write a line to me. (thought)
7. I didn't go to the club and sing a song with my sister. (intended)
8. The meeting didn't take place at the hall. (was)
9. I didn't live in the seventeenth century. (would like)
10. This is the speech which I didn't deliver at the annual meeting of our society. (meant)
11. It wasn't the happiest week of my life. (was)
12. The bridge wasn't completed last year. (was expected)
13. I wasn't invited to her birthday party. (hoped)
14. John wasn't appointed marketing manager. (was)
15. I didn't see Harry's face when Nan asked him that question. (would like)

Ex. 10. Translate these sentences into English using the perfect infinitive.

1. Они надеялись найти Тома в бассейне, а его там не оказалось.
2. Кейт думала приехать домой в субботу, но не смогла купить билет.
3. Она собиралась попрощаться со всеми перед уходом, но не успела.
4. Мы намеревались вернуться к концу месяца, но задержались.
5. Я надеялся достать билет на футбольный матч в прошлое воскресенье, но не сумел.
6. Куда вы пропали? Ведь вы собирались прийти еще на прошлой неделе.
7. Она намеревалась выйти замуж за своего друга, но передумала в последнюю минуту.
8. Я не хотел его обидеть, я думал помочь ему.
9. Я намеревался написать свой доклад на прошлой неделе, но заболел.
10. На концерте должен был выступать знаменитый певец, но выступление не состоялось по техническим причинам.

11. Строительство собора должно было начаться в 1650 году, но из-за недостатка в рабочей силе это произошло только в 1670 году.

12. Рейс должен был быть беспосадочным, но из-за неблагоприятной погоды самолет вынужден был сделать посадку.

7. THE SYNTACTICAL FUNCTIONS OF THE INFINITIVE

7.1. The Infinitive as Subject

The infinitive functioning as subject may either precede the predicate or follow it. In the latter case it is introduced by the so-called introductory *it*, which is placed at the beginning of the sentence.

- *To read a lot is to know much.* – Много читать – много знать.
- *To learn everything by heart is impossible. (It is impossible to learn everything by heart.)* – Выучить все наизусть невозможно.

- *What to answer him must be thought over.* – Нужно обдумать, что ему ответить.

- *Whether to invite them or not hasn't been decided yet.* – Еще не решено, пригласить их или нет.

- *How to tell him about it is a problem.* – Как сказать ему об этом – вот в чем проблема.

- *When to leave will be announced later.* – О том, когда уезжать, будет объявлено позднее.

- *To make the same mistake twice is unforgivable.* – Делать одну и ту же ошибку дважды непростительно.

- *It's better to have loved and lost than never to have loved at all.* – Лучше любить и потерять любовь, чем вовсе никогда не любить.

Practice

Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences, define the function of the infinitive.

1. To see is to believe.
2. To live means to struggle.
3. How to prove it to him is a problem.
4. Where to hang the notice will be decided later.
5. Which way to choose is your own business.
6. When to let him know is not important.
7. Whether to leave or not has not been decided yet.
8. It's unpleasant to deal with people like Mr. Robertson.

9. To understand is to forgive.
10. It's nice to be sitting here with you.
11. To win the world's greatest cycling event was the ambition of his life.
12. To be humming a tune is a usual thing for her.
13. It will never do to underline words in a library book.
14. It must be very nice to know that every little thing you do is perfect.
15. It would do you no harm to get some experience first.
16. It will take you half an hour to get to the city centre.

Ex. 2. Translate into English. Use the infinitive in the function of subject.

1. Жить – значит бороться.
2. Неприятно работать с людьми, которых не уважаешь.
3. Такой длинный текст трудно выучить наизусть.
4. Такие советы трудно принять.
5. Будет очень трудно доказать это кому-нибудь.
6. Будет очень сложно объяснить ему, почему вы изменили свое решение.
7. Идти в кино было слишком поздно.
8. Будет сложно сделать это за один день.
9. Любить – значит заботиться о человеке.
10. Очень приятно пить холодную воду в жаркую погоду.
11. Трудно сдерживать обещание, если никогда этого не делал раньше.
12. О том, когда уезжать, будет объявлено позднее.
13. Моей обязанностью было готовить чай по утрам и вечерам.
14. Из моей комнаты было невозможно не слышать все то, что происходило на улице.
15. Нам понадобилось немало времени на то, чтобы убедить его, что он не прав.
16. Разве не естественно отвечать добром на добро?
17. Меня очень удивило, когда я увидел его на Черном море: доктора не разрешают ему жить на юге.
18. Должно быть, очень приятно пить из этого источника в жаркий день.
19. Вздремнуть в своем кресле после обеда было его давнишней привычкой.

Ex. 3. Change the sentences according to the example.

E.G. To deal with such people is unpleasant.

– It's unpleasant to deal with such people.

1. To give advice is easier than to follow it.
2. To criticize is easier than to act.

3. To prove it to him will be very difficult.
4. To prove to him why you have changed your decision will be very difficult.
5. To follow such advice isn't easy.
6. To render such a long text in English will take a lot of time.

Ex. 4. Paraphrase the following sentences so as to use the infinitive as subject with or without the introductory IT.

1. The question is not so easy to answer.
2. There was no necessity to redo it.
3. The thought of it cheered him up.
4. I was amazed to see it.
5. He felt ashamed when he read the letter.
6. Worrying and fussing was useless.
7. All they wanted was to make themselves understood.
8. He wanted to see the play staged as soon as possible.
9. My companion was discreet enough not to mention it.
10. I must ask you a few questions on the matter. It's my duty.
11. You say he kept his opinion to himself. Is it usual of him?
12. How greatly disappointed we were when we found that it was only a joke!
13. The sight of him made me laugh.
14. The sculpture was completely ruined. The restoration was impossible.
15. The car's engine is out of order. The repair will take no less than two days.

7.2. The Infinitive as Part of the Predicate

The infinitive is used in predicates of several types, both nominal and verbal.

The Infinitive as Predicative

In the function of a predicative the infinitive is used in the compound nominal predicate after the link verb *to be*:

- *His dearest wish was to have a son.* – *Его самым большим желанием было иметь сына.*
- *To understand is to forgive.* – *Понять – значит простить.*
- *To hesitate is to lose.* – *Колебаться значит проиграть.*
- *The easiest thing to do is to say "No".* – *Самое легкое – сказать «Нет».*
- *The problem is how to prevent a conflict.* – *Проблема заключается в том, как предотвратить конфликт.*
- *The question is how to let them know.* – *Вопрос в том, как их известить.*

The Infinitive as Part of the Compound Verbal Predicate

The infinitive is used in compound verbal predicates of two types:

1) In a compound verbal modal predicate after modal verbs.

- *He can play the piano very well.*
- *They must be working in the garden now.*

2) In a compound verbal phasal predicate after verbs denoting various stages of the action, such as its beginning, continuation, or end (*to begin, to start, to continue, to cease*).

- *Now I begin to understand you.*
- *She continued to read.*

Practice

Ex. 1. Make up sentences so as to use the infinitive in bold type as predicative.

1. Your next task, the results, **to check up**, of the observations, is.
2. I meant, was, the last thing, **to offend** you.
3. Every success, and, I have come for, is, **to wish** you, what, **to congratulate** you.
4. On the subject of research, **to write**, his job, abstracts of articles, was, in the laboratory.
5. Could do you good, is, the only thing, **to take** a long rest, that.
6. **To see** himself, the most exciting experience, for the first time, was, he had ever had, in a film.
7. An experienced lawyer, was, the next move, **to consult**, he had made.
8. What turn, is, the best thing, things will take, to do, **to see**, now.

Ex. 2. Translate into English. Use the infinitive in the function of predicative.

1. Первое, что необходимо было сделать, – это посоветоваться с врачом.
2. Все, что ей удалось сделать, – это узнать номер их телефона.
3. Проблема заключалась в том, как их разоблачить.
4. Теперь нам остается только послать объявление в газету.
5. Единственное, что ему хотелось, – это найти место, где можно было бы остановиться на ночь.
6. Задача была в том, чтобы добраться до лагеря до рассвета.

7. Ее самой большой радостью было получать каждую неделю письма и писать длинные ответы.

8. Моей первой мыслью было пригласить Питера к нам и обо всем его расспросить.

9. Самое меньшее, что вы можете сделать, – это признать свою ошибку.

10. Самым лучшим решением было бы помириться с друзьями.

Ex. 3. Answer the questions using the infinitives.

1. What's your favourite occupation?

2. What are your plans for the summer?

3. What's the young people favourite entertainment?

4. What's the best way to preserve one's health up to old age?

5. What's your purpose of learning English?

6. What's the best way to become a good football player?

7.3. The Infinitive as Attribute

The infinitive as attribute can modify:

1) nouns, both abstract and concrete.

• *I've got a call to make.* – Мне нужно позвонить.

• *The first thing to do is to let them know.* – Первое, что нужно сделать, – это предупредить их.

• *I have no idea how to get there.* – Я не имею представления, как туда добраться.

• *The letters to be posted are on the table.* – Письма, которые нужно отправить, – на столе.

• *The people to be interviewed are in the next room.* – Люди, с которыми нужно провести собеседование, – в соседней комнате.

• *I need another form to fill in.* – Мне нужен другой бланк (который нужно заполнить).

2) indefinite, negative and universal pronouns.

• *Give me something to read.* – Дайте мне что-нибудь почитать.

• *There is nothing to argue about here.* – Спорить здесь не о чем.

• *There is nobody to speak to.* – Поговорить не с кем.

• *Do you have anything to offer me?* – Вы можете мне что-нибудь предложить?

• *He had everything to make his life a happy one.* – У него было все, что могло сделать его счастливым.

- *I'm bored – there's nothing to do.* – Мне скучно, ведь нечего делать.
- *There's nothing to be done – we'll have to buy a new iron.* – Ничего не поделаешь, придется купить новый утюг.

3) substantivized ordinal numerals (*first, second, etc.*), substantivized adjectives (*next and last*).

- *John was the third to come.* – Джон пришел третьим.
- *He is the first to be sent on that important mission.* – Его первым посылают с этим важным поручением.
- *Ann was the last to get there.* – Энн добралась туда последней.

4) substantivized quantitative adjectives (*much, little*).

- *Jack's work leaves much to be desired.* – Работа Джека оставляет желать лучшего.
- *You have much to live for.* – У вас есть многое, ради чего стоит жить.
- *There's little to be gained from an official complaint.* – Официальной жалобой мало чего добьешься.

Practice

Ex. 1. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian or Russian, point out all the infinitives used as attributes.

1. The first thing to do is to work out a plan.
2. There is nothing to speak about.
3. Give me something to write with.
4. I've no idea where to look for the prescription.
5. It is a good house to live in.
6. There is no time to lose.
7. Jean has nothing to be displeased with.
8. Harold has got nothing to complain of.
9. I had no one to complain to.
10. The only way to cope with her was not to give in an inch.
11. It's a good example to follow.
12. Here are the papers to be signed.
13. There is the time element to be considered.
14. The man to answer the question was the manager.
15. There were several patients to be operated on.
16. He's been alone in the house all day without anybody to talk to.
17. There were instructions to be carried out.
18. I like music and books and beautiful things to wear and nice people to be with.

19. The boy had no friends to care for, or to care for him.
20. He is a wonderful person to know.
21. You've got only yourself to blame.
22. He was delighted with his portrait and gave me every encouragement to take up painting again.
23. The relief from that long waiting, the feeling of nothing to worry about, was so delicious.
24. His failure to return her phone call made her realize that something was wrong.
25. What he does is at best a waste of time and at worst a very dangerous game to play.

Ex. 2. Replace the attributive subordinate clauses by the infinitives used in the function of an attribute.

1. There weren't many children in the neighborhood who we could play with.
2. He fell asleep with full determination that he would go and see for himself.
3. He is a man one can trust.
4. The manager was the last who left the shop.
5. There was no place where he could sit.
6. I can't go to the party; I have nothing that I can wear.
7. He was the first man who swam the Channel across.
8. He was the only one who realized the danger.
9. We didn't know the way to the station and there wasn't anyone who we could ask.
10. He was the first person who came to the bar and the last who left it.
11. It isn't a thing you can joke about. It's a serious matter.
12. He will always find something that makes him laugh at.
13. There is nothing that we might discuss now. Everything is settled.
14. He was the first man who guessed what she was driving at.
15. He's not a man who you can easily frighten.
16. They carried out their threat that they would dismiss workers on strike.
17. The old general wanted nothing but a grandson who he could dandle on his knee.
18. I'll buy you some magazines which you may read on the journey.
19. The government has broken its promise that it would reduce the rate of income tax.

20. The letter from the company gave the final warning that I should pay the bill by the end of the week.

Ex. 3. Make your sentences using the given phrases.

I've no idea ...

How to get there, where to look for it, what reference book to consult, how to let them know, what to begin with, where to go, who to apply to.

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Понятия не имею, как туда доехать.
2. Понятия не имею, что делать дальше.
3. Не представляю, с кем мне посоветоваться.
4. Не представляю, с чего начать.
5. Понятия не имею, что ему сказать.
6. Не представляю, как это готовить.
7. Понятия не имею, где искать ключи.
8. Не представляю, что делать в этом доме.

Ex. 5. Paraphrase the following using a noun instead of the verb in bold type with the infinitive as attribute, make all other necessary changes.

MODEL: He **offered** to help us but we refused. – We refused his **offer** to help us.

I don't **want** to change my mind. – I have no **desire** to change my mind.

1. I was surprised that he **refused** to go there.
2. We did not know that they **planned** to leave soon.
3. They **demand** to be regularly informed, and you will have to comply with it.
4. I remember you **promised** not to talk of it.
5. I told him that I firmly **determined** to find out the truth.
6. It was quite obvious that he **longed** to confide his secret to somebody.
7. He was **permitted** to leave.
8. I don't **intend** to do anything about it.
9. They repeatedly **attempted** to stage the experiment.
10. He didn't **wish** to let you down.
11. The trainer **instructed** the cyclists to examine their bicycles before the competition.
12. He **consented** to fill up the vacancy.

Ex. 6. Paraphrase the following using a noun instead of the adjective in bold type with the infinitive as attribute, make all other necessary changes.

MODEL: They didn't conceal that they were **impatient** to see the whole thing through. – They didn't conceal their **impatience** to see the whole thing through.

He was too busy, it was **impossible** to speak to him. – He was too busy, we had **no chance** (opportunity) to speak to him.

1. One could easily notice that she was **anxious** to change the conversation.
2. I doubt if he is **willing** to help.
3. I couldn't understand why he was **reluctant** to speak.
4. It was funny and pleasant to watch how **eager** the children were to see the presents.
5. It was clear to everybody that they were not **inclined** to answer any questions.
6. It is **unnecessary** to copy the whole text.
7. I never thought of how **important** it was to do it.
8. Is it **possible** to get a ticket for tomorrow?
9. I'm not sure it is **necessary** to remind them of it.
10. It is **needless** to talk of it now.

Ex. 7. Combine the sentences into one using the infinitive as an attribute to the noun in bold type.

MODEL: He always finds something to justify himself. It has become a tendency with him. – He has **a tendency** to justify himself.

1. The **motion** was to pass on to the next item on the agenda. It was adopted unanimously.
2. It was necessary to regularly supply the expedition with water. The only **way** was to transport it by air in helicopters.
3. His **ambition** in life was to become a good surgeon, and we were sure it would be realized.
4. They were anxious to complete the experiment in three months. To get more people to work on it was the only **means**.
5. Her long-cherished desire had been to play in a film, and quite recently she got an **invitation** from the studio.

Ex. 8. Translate the following sentences using the infinitive as an attribute.

1. Мне нужно позвонить.
2. У меня много дел.

3. Мне нужно кое о чем поговорить с вами.
4. Я тебе должен что-то показать.
5. У нас есть что вспомнить.
6. Ему есть чем гордиться.
7. Нам нечего терять.
8. Ему нечего бояться. Он не виноват.
9. Нам нужно обсудить много вопросов.
10. Им нужно ответить на много писем.
11. У вас много работы?
12. Самое главное, что нужно обсудить, – это каким образом наладить связь со всеми.
13. Первое, что нужно сделать, – это обсудить план.
14. Следующее, что нужно сделать, – это утвердить план.
15. Поговорить было не с кем.
16. Извиняться не за что.
17. Есть много людей, с которыми можно посоветоваться.
18. Беспокоиться не о чем. Все вопросы уже решены.
19. Бояться нечего. Вы в безопасности.
20. Говорить не о чем. Все условия уже обсудили.
21. Спорить здесь не о чем. Все ясно.
22. Смеяться здесь не над чем.

Ex. 9. Translate the following sentences using the infinitive as an attribute.

1. Удивляться нечему. Я этого ожидал.
2. Он работал хорошо и легко. У него было много дел.
3. Ничего не оставалось делать, как только ждать прихода его родителей.
4. У него были дети, о которых он должен был заботиться.
5. Кто-то должен первым начать говорить.
6. Они первыми приехали, следовательно, первыми и уедут.
7. У него было много новостей, которые он должен был немедленно сообщать Нику.
8. Это как раз хороший случай помириться с ним.
9. Мне не у кого попросить совет.
10. Сомневаюсь, есть ли здесь кто-либо, с кем можно было бы поговорить об этом деле.
11. Не о чем спорить, мы практически говорили об одном и том же.
12. Вопрос, который будет обсуждаться на нашем собрании, очень важен, на мой взгляд.
13. Ей нечего было сказать.
14. У него был небольшой багаж, который следовало упаковать.

15. Он как раз подходящий человек, чтобы заполнить вакансию.
16. Есть ли в доме кто-нибудь, кто бы мог за вами ухаживать? Вы выглядите очень больным.
17. Нам предстоит еще долгий путь.
18. Все расстояние, которое надо пройти, не превышает трех километров.
19. Я не вижу тряпки, которой стирают с доски.

Ex. 10. Translate the following sentences using the infinitive as an attribute.

1. На этот факт нужно обратить особое внимание.
2. Вот человек, с которым можно поговорить на эту тему.
3. Она всегда найдет, над чем посмеяться.
4. Не о чем было беспокоиться. Больной чувствовал себя лучше.
5. Пьеса оставляла желать лучшего: я большего ожидал от нее.
6. Десятиэтажный дом, который должен быть построен на углу улицы, предназначен для рабочих нашего завода.
7. План нашей работы будет обсуждаться на заседании, которое состоится завтра.
8. Ему нечего было сказать в свое оправдание.
9. Вы как раз тот человек, который может помочь нам в этом трудном вопросе.
10. Главный архитектор показал нам проект памятника, который будет воздвигнут на центральной площади города.
11. Он первый протянул мне руку и поздравил меня.
12. Он был не из тех, кого можно легко запугать.
13. Она знала, что ни в чем не виновата; ей нечего было бояться.
14. Я позже всех разгадал ее намерение.
15. Я вижу, вы ищите предлог отказаться от своего обещания.
16. Вот письмо, которое надо доставить немедленно.
17. Вот еще несколько фактов, которые должны доказать правильность нашей теории.
18. Ему надо проделать большую работу, так как он собирается сдать летом три экзамена.
19. Это книга, которую можно достать в любой библиотеке.
20. Многое должно быть принято во внимание.
21. Он не сказал ничего, что указывало бы на то, что он не согласен с нашим планом.
22. Он с сожалением понял, что ничего нельзя было сделать.

Ex. 11. Translate the following sentences using the infinitive as an attribute.

1. Ніл Армстронг був першою людиною, яка ступила на поверхню Місяця.
2. Під час гри у схованки найстаршого брата знайшли останнім.

3. Килим, який треба почистити, на подвір'ї.
4. Неможливо працювати в команді без здатності співпрацювати з іншими людьми.
5. Давай купимо чогось поїсти, бо в нас ще багато справ.
6. Мені закортіло (have an urge) підсипати йому солі до чаю, коли він не дивився.
7. Його відмова дослухатися до розумних порад призвела до поганих наслідків.
8. Знаю, що мій виступ був далеко не найкращим, отже, потрібно ще трохи часу, щоб попрактикуватися.
9. Мені майже нічого вам розповісти, і, більш того, я не маю бажання з вами розмовляти.
10. Слідчий зрозумів, що свідків, яких можна було б опитати, не було, і він вирішив шукати нові докази, на які зміг би спертися.
11. Пропозиція менеджера взяти участь в обговоренні подальшої діяльності фірми змусила Едварда замислитися.
12. Небажання (reluctance) втомленого актора говорити з пресою було цілком зрозумілим.
13. Спочатку спортивний комітет не мав наміру виключати Енджелу зі списку учасників змагань, але її неспроможність (failure) вчасно з'явитися на стадіоні справила погане враження.

7.4. The Infinitive As Object

I. The infinitive is used as object after the following verbs:

<i>can't afford</i>	<i>deserve</i>	<i>like</i>	<i>promise</i>
<i>can't bear</i>	<i>determine</i>	<i>learn</i>	<i>propose</i>
<i>agree</i>	<i>expect</i>	<i>manage</i>	<i>refuse</i>
<i>arrange</i>	<i>fail</i>	<i>mean</i>	<i>regret</i>
<i>attempt</i>	<i>forget</i>	<i>neglect</i>	<i>remember</i>
<i>bother</i>	<i>hate</i>	<i>offer</i>	<i>swear</i>
<i>care</i>	<i>hesitate</i>	<i>plan</i>	<i>tend</i>
<i>choose</i>	<i>hope</i>	<i>prefer</i>	<i>try</i>
<i>claim</i>	<i>intend</i>	<i>prepare</i>	<i>want</i>
<i>decide</i>	<i>love</i>	<i>pretend</i>	<i>wish</i>

- *She decided not to take any steps for some days yet.* – Она решила еще несколько дней не предпринимать никаких шагов.
- *He failed to turn up in time.* – Он не смог прийти вовремя.
- *Would you care to join us for dinner?* – Хотите ли присоединиться к нам за обедом?
- *I was busy preparing to go on a trip.* – Я был занят подготовкой к поездке.
- *They planned to spend their holidays abroad.* – Они запланировали провести каникулы за границей.
- *He claimed to have travelled around the world.* – Он утверждал, что путешествовал по всему миру.
- *I agreed to come to see them on Friday.* – Я согласился навестить их в пятницу.
- *I was so nervous, and he didn't even bother to call me.* – Я так волновалась, а он даже не потрудился позвонить.
- *Michael neglected to mention the fact that we could lose money on the deal.* – Майкл не упомянул тот факт (не стал упоминать, пренебрег упоминанием), что мы можем потерять на этой сделке деньги.

Note 1: With some verbs the function of object may be performed by a conjunctive infinitive phrase.

- *He couldn't decide whether to come at all.*
- *She didn't know what to say.*
- *Ask your teacher how to pronounce the word.*

II. The infinitive can have the function of object after certain adjectives and participles, mostly used as predicatives.

1) The most frequent adjectives are:

<i>anxious</i>	<i>difficult</i>	<i>good</i>	<i>proud</i>
<i>bound</i>	<i>eager</i>	<i>happy</i>	<i>quick</i>
<i>boring</i>	<i>easy</i>	<i>hard</i>	<i>ready</i>
<i>careful</i>	<i>fit</i>	<i>impatient</i>	<i>reluctant</i>
<i>curious</i>	<i>furios</i>	<i>impossible</i>	<i>sorry</i>
<i>dangerous</i>	<i>glad</i>	<i>keen</i>	<i>thankful</i>

- *The language is difficult to learn.* – Этот язык трудно выучить.
- *Miss Parker was hard to please.* – Мисс Паркер было трудно угодить.

- *Is Mr. Frankland easy to deal with?* – С мистером Фрэнклэндом легко иметь дело?
- *She is proud to have grown such a son.* – Она гордится тем, что вырастила такого сына.
- *Walter was sorry to have broken the appointment.* – Уолтер сожалел о том, что сорвал встречу.

2) The most frequent participles are:

<i>amused</i>	<i>determined</i>	<i>pleased</i>	<i>shocked</i>
<i>astonished</i>	<i>inclined</i>	<i>prepared</i>	<i>surprised</i>
<i>delighted</i>	<i>interested</i>	<i>puzzled</i>	<i>touched</i>

- *They are pleased to have been to many countries.* – Они довольны тем, что побывали во многих странах.
- *He says he is delighted to see me again.* – Он говорит, что он очень рад видеть меня вновь.
- *He was amused to hear it.* – Ему было забавно слышать это.

Note 2: The infinitive as object to an adjective is sometimes found after **it** as a formal object to some verbs (*to feel, to find, to make, to consider, to think*).

- *I find it difficult to believe that anyone can be that lazy.*
- *Don't you think it prudent to wait until you can get a guide?*
- *He felt it natural to accept hospitality.*
- *The heavy rains made it impossible to set out earlier.* – Из-за сильных дождей было невозможно отправиться раньше.

Practice

Ex. 1. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian or Russian. Pay special attention to the use of the infinitive.

1. The reason of his success is easy to understand.
2. Her neighbour was difficult to talk to.
3. The date of the letter was impossible to make out.
4. The house was charming to look at, but rather inconvenient to live in.
5. The man was difficult to convince.
6. Gemma was pleasant to look at and interesting to talk to.
7. His father's handwriting was easy to read – he knew it so well.
8. All she cooks is nice to look at and delicious to eat.

Ex. 2. Paraphrase the following sentences according to the model.

MODEL: 1) *It is hard to please him. – He is hard to please.*

2) *It is pleasant to look at her. – She is pleasant to look at.*

1. It is not difficult to remember the rule. It is simple.
2. It's hard to live with such thoughts. You should stop thinking about your failure.
3. She's a kind person. It's easy to deal with her.
4. He's very stubborn. It's difficult to persuade him.
5. It's not very easy to translate this passage. It contains some idiomatic expressions.
6. It is pleasant to look at the girl, but not at all pleasant to talk to her. She's pretty, but not very clever.
7. It was unpleasant to watch their quarrel.
8. It's always funny to listen to his stories.
9. It would be useful to follow his advice.
10. It was difficult to get along with him.
11. It was painful to listen to the story of their sufferings.
12. It is hard to polish a diamond.
13. It was simple to put up the shelves.
14. Is it easier to learn Dutch than Danish?
15. It's very comfortable to sit in my Grandfather's armchair.
16. It was amazing to watch the fireworks.
17. It was hard to bear the heat.
18. It was hard to put up with her temper.
19. The boy used to live in a small village in the mountains. But it is hard now even to imagine that time.
20. It was impossible to approach her on the subject. She wouldn't talk about it.

Ex. 3. Translate the sentences into English according to the model in exercise 2.

1. На него было не очень приятно смотреть.
2. За этим столом удобно работать.
3. С его доводами трудно не согласиться.
4. Такую роль, должно быть, очень интересно играть.
5. Как приятно было танцевать под эту мелодию.
6. Это заболевание трудно поддается лечению.
7. В пьесе слишком много сцен: ее нелегко поставить.
8. Вряд ли это было удобное место для ночлега.
9. Когда смотришь на море, это действует успокаивающе.
10. Это стихотворение легко выучить и полезно помнить.
11. В туристских автобусах установлены откидные кресла, в которых удобно спать.

Ex. 4. Change these sentences with it as a subject into those with it as a formal object.

MODEL A: *I think that it's difficult to cover 20 km in 2 hours.*

I think it difficult to cover 20 km in 2 hours.

1. We feel that it will be impossible to win the battle tomorrow.
2. The doctor considers that it's possible to cure the child of pneumonia.
3. I think it's nice to have a holiday from the office for a couple of days.
4. I think that it will be nice to dress in our best for such an occasion.
5. Father thinks it's necessary to make up our quarrel the sooner the better.
6. I felt that it was useless to wait any longer.
7. I felt that it was necessary to unburden my thoughts in a friendly talk.
8. He was aware of the danger and he considered that it was unreasonable to take the risk.

MODEL B: *Is it odd for me to live by myself? (Do you think)*

Do you think it odd for me to live by myself?

1. It is quite safe to return (He considers).
2. It was strange to see such a host of workers away from the factory floors (She felt).
3. It was an admirable suggestion for him to undertake her daughter's case (She thought).
4. Is it embarrassing to work with a man you distrust? (Don't you find)
5. It is right for you to know that the most dreadful things are being said against you in London (I think).
6. Would it be awfully rude of me to ask him to go away? (Would you think)
7. It is necessary for all members of the family to work (These low wages make).
8. It was impossible to continue the conversation (His anger made).

Ex. 5. Translate the sentences into English using it as a formal object.

1. Я думаю, что пойти туда сегодня невозможно.
2. Он считал невежливым курить в нашем присутствии.
3. Не думаете ли вы, что неблагоразумно подниматься на эту гору без проводника?
4. Они все считают, что обманывать на экзаменах нехорошо.
5. Он считал неудобным напомнить ей об этом.
6. Я счел необходимым сказать ему, какое решение принял.
7. Выйдя из театра, мы обнаружили, что поймать такси совершенно невозможно.
8. Мне было сложно сосредоточиться в такой ситуации.

9. Он находит естественным вести себя приветливо со всеми.
10. Мы считаем нужным встретить ее на вокзале.
11. Из-за шума моторов невозможно было разговаривать.
12. Считаете ли вы возможным включить этот вопрос в повестку дня?

Ex. 6. Complete the sentences choosing a suitable infinitive phrase from the list.

When to come, how to phrase, how to keep, how to handle, what to do, which to choose, where to put, where to turn off, whether to stay here or go back, where to go, what to say, which to buy, whether to answer .

1. He asked his mother ... back.
2. We know ... snow and ice; we live with it.
3. There were a lot of books on the shelves. We didn't know
4. I didn't know ... the baby warm.
5. Show me please
6. We were not sure
7. She did not know ... her head swam and she was afraid she was going to faint.
8. I was helping her to put away the clean linen. She was telling me ... it.
9. He didn't know ... his faith in her.
10. I'm so bewildered, I don't know
11. There are so many hats in this shop. Will you advise me ... ?
12. I've lost the map and I don't remember ... the main road.
13. I can't decide ... her letter.

Ex. 7. Translate the sentences into English, using conjunctive infinitive phrases.

1. В машине они обсудили, что делать дальше.
2. Мы сомневались, послать ли ему письмо или позвонить.
3. Она сказала шоферу, куда ехать.
4. Я не знаю, когда мне следует возвращаться.
5. Мы не знали, идти ли нам дальше или повернуть назад.
6. Он совсем не знал, как начать письмо.
7. Знаете ли вы, что вам надо искать?
8. Вы решили, куда вам идти?
9. Пожалуйста, сообщите мне, где достать билеты.
10. Он посоветовал мне, как уладить дело.

Ex. 8. Translate the following sentences into English. Use the infinitive in the function of object.

1. Не забудьте принять таблетку от головной боли.
2. Они надеялись найти Джесси дома, а ее там не оказалось.

3. Он пригласил своих друзей прийти посмотреть его новую квартиру.
4. Он дал Филиппу свой адрес, и Филипп обещал пообедать с ним в следующее воскресенье.
5. Я решил поехать в Москву вместе с родителями.
6. Они отказались принять ее приглашение.
7. Она надеялась найти документы в столе, но не нашла.
8. Где Марк? – Он учится водить машину.
9. Они притворились, что спят сейчас.
10. Ей удалось свести концы с концами.
11. Мне было досадно, что я забыл поблагодарить его.
12. Клайд очень не любил, когда ему напоминали о бедности его родителей.
13. Они решили больше никогда об этом не упоминать.
14. Она пожалела, что не пригласила Роберта в свой дом раньше.
15. Молодой человек был счастлив, что ему дали новую работу.

7.6. The Infinitive as Adverbial Modifier

The infinitive can be used as an adverbial modifier of different types:

1) the adverbial modifier of **purpose**

- *My brother went to Oxford to study.*
- *They will come here later to get the necessary information.*

2) the adverbial modifier of **result (consequence)** – usually after adjectives modified by the adverbs *enough, too, so* and nouns modified by *such*.

- *He is too lazy to get up early.* – Он слишком ленив, чтобы рано вставать.
- *He is lazy enough to get up late.* – Он достаточно ленив, чтобы поздно вставать.
- *She was so kind as to accept my proposal.* – Она была так добра и приняла мое предложение.
- *Do you think I am such a fool as to let it out of my hands?* – Вы думаете, что я такой дурак, чтобы выпустить это из рук?

3) the adverbial modifier of **attendant circumstances** (the infinitives in the examples below can also be treated as adverbial modifiers of result)

- *He left the house never to come back.* – Он покинул дом и больше не вернулся.
- *I'm sorry to have raised your expectations only to disappoint you.* – Мне жаль, что я пробудил в вас надежду только для того, чтобы затем отнять ее.

4) the adverbial modifier of **comparison** – with the conjunctions *than, as if/ as though*.

• *She nervously moved her hand towards his lips as if to stop him. – Она нервно протянула руку к его губам, как будто хотела остановить его.*

• *Soon she realized that it was much more pleasant to give than to be given. – Вскоре она, поняла, что гораздо приятнее самой отдавать, чем когда тебе отдают.*

5) the adverbial modifier of **condition**

• *I'll thank you to take your hands off me. (= I'll thank you if you take your hands off me)*

• *To look at him you would imagine that he was an angel. (= If you looked..., you would imagine...)*

6) the adverbial modifier of **time**

• *His father lived to be ninety. (= lived until he was ninety)*

• *Go away! I shudder to see you here. (= I shudder when I see you here)*

7) the adverbial modifier of **cause**

• *They're out of their mind to have sent you here. (They have sent you here, so one can think them out of their mind.)*

• *She was silly to come here. (She came here, and it was silly of her.)*

Practice

Ex. 1. Translate the sentences and say whether the infinitive is used in the function of subject or adverbial modifier of purpose.

1. To do well in that class you must spend hours in the library.
2. To do well in that class is my primary goal this semester.
3. To solve this problem is extremely important.
4. To solve this problem you have to make a great many experiments.
5. To drive a car in a big city is very difficult.
6. To drive a car in a big city one must be an experienced driver.
7. To calculate the age of our planet requires much knowledge in different branches of science.
8. To calculate the age of our planet one must have much knowledge in different branches of science.
9. To prove it I'll drop in at your laboratory some time.
10. To prove it was absolutely impossible.

Ex. 2. Combine each of the following parts of sentences into one sentence using the infinitive.

MODEL: *They sent me to University, they wanted me to study law.*
– *They sent me to University to study law.*

1. I am buying bread. I want to feed the bird.
2. He opened the door. He intended to go out.
3. He rushed into the burning house. He wanted to save the child.
4. He rang the bell. He wanted to tell us that the dinner was ready.
5. The farmer shot the rifle. He wanted to frighten the birds.
6. He sent the children to his sister's house. He wanted them to watch the TV program.
7. I am saving up. I want to buy a car.
8. I keep my hens in area surrounded by wire netting. I want to protect them against the foxes.

Ex. 3. Translate into English. Use the infinitive in the function of an adverbial modifier of purpose.

1. Я пришел, чтобы убедиться, смогу ли я помочь вам.
2. Он встал, чтобы уйти.
3. Она отошла назад, чтобы посмотреть на свою работу.
4. Подойдите и найдите кого-нибудь еще, кто мог бы помочь нам.
5. Понадобилось 15 минут, чтобы исследовать второй тоннель.
6. Он подошел к детям, чтобы попрощаться.
7. Он улыбнулся ей и пошел помогать Тому упаковывать вещи.
8. Мы ушли в другую комнату, чтобы посмотреть их библиотеку.
9. Вы должны делать то, что говорит доктор, чтобы поправиться.

Ex. 4. Combine the following sentences using so as/in order.

MODEL: *He took off his boots. He didn't want to make any noise.*
– *He took off his boots so as/ in order not to make any noise.*

1. He was playing very softly. He didn't want to disturb anyone.
2. I sent him out of the room. I wanted to discuss his progress with his headmaster.
3. I am learning Greek. I wish to read the book in the original.
4. He sent his children to their aunt's house. He wanted to have some peace.
5. He worked only for short periods each day. He didn't want to strain his eyes.
6. They got up very early. They wanted to get to the top of the hill before sunrise.
7. We must keep our gloves on. We don't want to get frostbitten.

Ex. 5. Translate the sentences into Russian or Ukrainian.

1. The text was too difficult to translate by ear.
2. The time was too short to fulfil the task.
3. She was too tired to enjoy the trip.
4. He was clever enough not to get offended.
5. She was too old to drive a car.
6. They were attentive enough to understand the details.
7. I was too bored to watch the film up to the end.
8. The children were calm enough not to make much noise.
9. The lady was too angry to listen to my explanations.
10. He was too shy to make new friends.
11. Ann was talented enough to win this contest.
12. Mother was strict enough not to let the children watch this film.

Ex. 6. Point out infinitives of result and translate the sentences into Ukrainian or Russian.

1. I intended to use the opportunity, it was too good to be missed.
2. When I left the Post Office I found that it was too late to catch the London train.
3. It was getting too hot to work and we decided to have a break.
4. Dixon was clever enough to avoid talking on this subject to Welch.
5. Michael considered Jonny to be too young to be drawn into their religious community.
6. She was woman enough not to forget to powder her nose even at that critical moment.
7. His case is such as not to be helped.
8. He turned to Margaret to find her in conversation with Carol Goldsmith.
9. He heard a loud noise at the front door and opened it to see a stranger in a shabby raincoat.
10. She liked to be kind to people and used to give promises to forget them at once.
11. He went quickly to the bathroom, and returned to find Murphy sitting beside his bed.
12. I wish I were strong enough to help you, my boy.

Ex. 7. Paraphrase the following sentences so as to use infinitives of result.

A. MODEL: *He is clever. He can answer the question.*

– He is clever enough to answer the question.

1. He wasn't strong. He couldn't support the man.
2. It isn't very hot. We can't lie in the sun.
3. The coffee isn't strong. It won't keep us awake.

4. I am quite old. I could be your father.
5. You aren't very old. You can't understand these things.
6. He was very curious. He opened the letter.
7. You are quite thin. You can wear this dress.
8. We are clever. We can do this task.

B. MODEL: *He is very ill. He can't work today.*
 – *He is too ill to work today.*

1. It is very hot. We can't run.
2. I am rather old. I can't wear this dress.
3. He was nervous. He couldn't speak.
4. I was terrified. I couldn't move.
5. It is very cold. We can't have a stroll.
6. He was very snobbish. He wouldn't talk to any of us.
7. It was very dark. We couldn't go out into the garden.
8. It was rather cloudy. We couldn't see the eclipse properly.

C. MODEL: *1. Julie's purse is big, it can hold her dog.*
 – *Julie's purse is big enough to hold her dog.*
2. The storm was so strong that I couldn't go out.
 – *The storm was too strong (for me) to go out.*

1. It's not warm today, we can't go outside in shorts and sandals.
2. I couldn't finish my homework last night because I was very sleepy.
3. This jacket is very small, I can't wear it.
4. Alan is very smart, he can't make that kind of mistake.
5. I live far from school and so I can't walk there.
6. This watch is very expensive, I can't buy it.
7. We got to the concert early, that's why we could get good seats.
8. Mike couldn't go to his aunt's housewarming party because he was very busy.
9. I can't lift a horse, I'm not that strong.
10. I can't reach the top shelf, I'm not that tall.
11. It was so dark that he could see nothing before him.
12. You are so experienced, you ought to know better.
13. She was so excited that she couldn't utter a word.
14. He was so angry, he wouldn't speak to me.
15. His English vocabulary is very poor; he can't make himself understood.

Ex. 8. Respond to the questions according to the model.

MODEL: *Did he win the game? (unfortunate, to lose)*

– *Oh, no. He was so unfortunate as to lose it.*

1. Did she put you up in her house? (impolite, to turn us out).
2. Did they obey him? (unreasonable, to have their own way)
3. Did they get tickets for the concert after all? (foolish, to miss the opportunity)
4. Did they escape the worst of the thunderstorm? (unfortunate, to get wet through)
5. Did he get a good mark at the exam? (careless, to make a great number of mistakes)
6. Did Ann have the prescription made up? (careless, to lose it)

Ex. 9. Translate into English. Use the infinitive in the function of an adverbial modifier of result.

1. Она была слишком удивлена, чтобы говорить об этом.
2. Он достаточно взрослый, чтобы понять вашу шутку.
3. Ему достаточно много лет, чтобы быть моим дедушкой.
4. Я слишком слаба, чтобы идти туда одна.
5. Он достаточно здоров, чтобы кататься на лыжах.
6. Он достаточно опытен, чтобы выполнить эту работу в срок.
7. Я был так занят, что не мог ни с кем встретиться.
8. Глаза у него были достаточно зоркие, чтобы позаботиться о собственной выгоде.
9. Он достаточно умен, чтобы понять это.
10. Рассказ был слишком захватывающим, чтобы не дочитать его до конца.
11. Он знает физику достаточно хорошо, чтобы помочь сыну.
12. Она слишком застенчива, чтобы держаться свободно с незнакомыми людьми.

Ex. 10. Think of all possible ways to convey in Russian or Ukrainian the idea expressed by the infinitive in bold type.

1. He returned to his motherland never **to leave** it again.
2. He went to Africa **to die** of malaria.
3. When the first two cantos of Childe Harold's Pilgrimage came off the press, the success of the poem gave Byron every right to write in his diary: "I awoke one morning **to find** myself famous."
4. He yawned, stretched himself vigorously, and went on deck **to be told** that they were almost abreast of the lights of Brighton.
5. They heard a voice above them, and looked up **to see** a woman's head thrust through a small window hole under the thatch.

6. He went out into the street **to find** himself alone.
7. At times he smiled softly to himself – only, immediately after, - **to relapse** again into gloom.
8. She glanced back **to find** Arnie shaking Erik’s hand.
9. That night there was a storm and I woke up **to hear** the rain lashing window panes.
10. He urged them forward to where he had set his valises, only **to find** one of them gone.

Ex. 11. Replace the finite verbs in bold type by the infinitive, making all other necessary changes.

1. Olive heard the side gate open, and, looking out of the window, she **saw** John walking up the garden.
2. When I came back I **found** the door locked and the key hanging from a nail in the hall.
3. He opened his eyes and **felt** the drops splashing on his face.
4. He tried to persuade her not to do so, but only **broke** down.
5. On entering the house she **saw** her son walking up and down in an agony of doubt.
6. When he returned he **found** his wife already come home and seated with some work.
7. He looked towards the door and **saw** the butler standing in the conventional attitude.
8. He joined the Philharmonic Orchestra, where he very soon **became** the leading violin soloist.
9. He had toured the world and **understood** how true the saying was which went, “East or West, home is best.”
10. After a long separation they met at last, and never **did** they **part** again.

Ex. 12. Translate the sentences into English, using infinitives of result.

1. Он достаточно умен, чтобы понять это.
2. Течение было таким сильным, что он не мог переплыть реку.
3. Он был так взбешен, что одного слова было бы достаточно, чтобы свести его с ума.
4. Она была так неосторожна, что поделилась с ним своими догадками.
5. Он был так терпелив, что по нескольку раз объяснял ребенку трудные места в задании.
6. Он был так поражен, что не мог вымолвить ни слова.
7. Хирург был настолько осторожен, что не причинил мальчику боли.
8. Я просмотрел две главы и нашел только пять подходящих примеров.
9. На следующее утро она проснулась и обнаружила, что она одна во всем доме.

10. После длительного путешествия он вернулся домой и понял, что в гостях хорошо, а дома лучше.

11. Она открыла дверь кабинета и увидела, что отец ходит взад и вперед в сильном гневе.

12. Он прошел через все комнаты и увидел только кошку на кухне. Квартира была пуста.

13. Время от времени он просыпался и тут же снова засыпал.

14. После долгого отсутствия она вернулась домой и поняла, что ничего не изменилось: они не простили ее.

15. В который раз обдумав ситуацию, он понял, что выхода нет.

16. Она открыла дверь и увидела, что все уже собрались и ждут ее.

Ex. 13. Paraphrase the sentences according to the model.

MODEL: *It is foolish of him to meet her again.*

– He is foolish to meet her again.

1. It was brave of her to spend the night in the old house alone.
2. It was mean of you to eat all the cake and not leave any more for me.
3. It was unreasonable of you to complain about the exam results.
4. It was kind of you to give birthday presents to the children.
5. It was stupid of Jack to cheat in the exam. He was bound to get caught.
6. It was rude of them to criticize her in front of the staff.
7. It was very polite of him to give his chair to the old lady.
8. It was right of us to accept his offer.
9. It is unkind and ungrateful of you to say such a thing.
10. It is very clever of Bob to behave like that.
11. It was silly of you to pay ten dollars more than you had to.
12. It would be uppish of me to put it that way, wouldn't it?
13. It was unwise of her to throw the reproach in his face.

7.7. The Infinitive as Parenthesis

The infinitive is used as parenthesis in set phrases of the type:

<i>to begin with</i>	<i>to tell the truth</i>	<i>to put it in a nutshell</i>
<i>to be frank</i>	<i>to be more precise</i>	<i>to make the matters / things worse</i>
<i>so to speak</i>	<i>to say nothing of ...</i>	<i>to cut / make a long story short</i>
<i>to be sure</i>	<i>to say the least of it</i>	<i>to sum up</i>
<i>to put it mildly</i>	<i>to crown it all</i>	<i>to conclude</i>

- *To put mildly, he was not up to the mark.* – Мягко выражаясь, он был не на высоте.
- *He was rude, to say the least of it.* – Он был груб, чтобы не сказать больше.
- *To be quite frank, I don't like them at all.* – Откровенно говоря, они мне совсем не нравятся.
- *We need to be all on the same wavelength, so to speak.* – Мы все должны, так сказать, понимать друг друга с полуслова.

Revision Exercises on the Infinitive

Ex. 1. Use the appropriate form of the infinitive.

1. I hate (to bother) you, but the man is still waiting (to give) a definite answer.
2. He hated (to bother) with such matters when he had many more important questions (to decide).
3. She would never miss a chance (to show) her efficiency, she was so anxious (to praise).
4. The idea was too complicated (to express) in just one paragraph.
5. Is there anything else (to tell) him? I believe he deserves (to know) how the matter stands.
6. He took to writing not (to earn) a living but a name. All he wanted (to read) and not (to forget).
7. How fortunate he is (to travel) all over the world and (to see) so much of it.
8. The girl pretended (to read) a book and not (to notice) me.
9. It seems (to rain) ever since we came here.
10. It is so thoughtful of you (to book) the tickets well in advance.
11. Perhaps it would bother him (to speak) about the quarrel.
12. The only sound (to hear) was the ticking of the old clock downstairs.
13. She said she would love (to come) and was simply delighted (to ask) for a date.
14. I offered (to carry) her case but she was afraid (to let) it out of her hand.
15. Let's go and see the place. You will be sorry (to miss) it.

Ex. 2. State the form and functions of infinitives in the following sentences.

1. He came into the room to shut the windows.
2. He seemed to know all about influenza and said there was nothing to worry about.
3. Do you want me to read to you?
4. I made a note of the time to give the various capsules.
5. They said the boy had refused to let anyone come into the room.

6. You can't come in. You mustn't get what I have.
7. Don't make me laugh.
8. It took me about five minutes to work out how much a suit at nine and a half guineas would cost.
9. The British Museum is much too big to be seen in an hour or so.
10. Father decided to take a holiday from his office so as to help in celebrating the day.
11. It was necessary to make it in a day, just on Monday.
12. She was sitting near enough to see his face.
13. That's how I used to be myself.
14. A railway station is the most difficult of all places to act in.
15. I think the best way to get a general idea of a country is to study the map.
16. If he couldn't get something to do he'd have to commit suicide.
17. You may fail in your English if you go on like that.
18. It's true there was no scenery to stare at, but the costumes and make-up, the light and sound effects help the audience to concentrate on the dialogue and the acting.
19. It seemed a privilege to lend anything to him.
20. Thank you for your very kind invitation to visit you and stay with you.
21. It made our mouths water to hear him talk about such tasty things.

Ex. 3. State the form and functions of infinitives in the following sentences.

1. To go on with this discussion is to waste time.
2. Oh, I'm sorry to have taken so much of your time.
3. It all sounded too good to be true.
4. We assembled to discuss and arrange our plans.
5. Now, the first thing to settle is what to take with us.
6. He was the first to raise the question.
7. A celebration such as this was a chance not to be missed.
8. Look back to make sure you haven't left anything behind.
9. She was the last to realize how dangerous it was.
10. You're a bachelor with no family to take care of.
11. I didn't come here to be shouted at.
12. He came here to speak to me, not to you.
13. To meet the demands for goods, new shops have been opened in the town.
14. The plan will be discussed at the meeting to be held on May 25.

Ex. 4. Translate the sentences into English, comment on the form of the infinitive and state its function.

1. Вам лучше подождать здесь.
2. Я думала, что вы, может быть, не хотите, чтобы с вами говорили.

3. Последним, кто приехал, был мой отец.
 4. О таких вещах нельзя говорить.
 5. У нее была привычка приходить ко мне каждое утро и спрашивать, что я хочу на завтрак.
 6. Почему за ним нельзя просто послать?
 7. Это, кажется, просто сделать.
 8. Том не спешил с ответом.
 9. С ним нельзя было шутить.
 10. Очень холодно. Я лучше закрою окно.
 11. Вам лучше не ходить туда одной.
 12. Рассказ был слишком хорош, чтобы его так быстро забыть.
 13. Она вошла, и он встал, чтобы встретиться с ней.
 14. Я хочу, чтобы меня оставили одного.
 15. Он снял очки, чтобы их протереть.
 16. Он был недостаточно взрослым, чтобы понять их рассказ.
 17. У него было желание поехать на юг к друзьям.
 18. Джек посмотрел на Тома, чтобы понять, как он воспринял эти новости.
 19. За ним послали, но он приехал слишком поздно, чтобы сделать что-либо полезное.
 20. Они продолжали сидеть и разговаривать почти до полуночи.
- Том, который жил дальше всех, ушел первым.
21. Она тихо вошла, чтобы сказать, что Джейн уже приехала.

Ex. 5. Translate the sentences into English and state the functions of the infinitives.

1. С ней приятно разговаривать.
2. Проблема была слишком сложной, чтобы обсудить ее за час.
3. Я рад, что узнал правду.
4. Ты бы лучше не надоедал ему своими глупыми вопросами.
5. Она не такой человек, от которого можно ожидать помощи.
6. Было бы лучше убедить его работать, чем принуждать его.
7. Мы очень довольны, что видели этот спектакль.
8. Кажется, дети уже забыли об этом печальном событии.
9. Вам следовало бы предупредить меня заранее.
10. Я молчала, так как мне нечего было сказать.
11. Они обещали мне помочь подготовиться к приему гостей.
12. Номер его телефона легко запомнить.
13. Этот человек сидит здесь, должно быть, около часа. Кого бы это он мог ждать?
14. Вы помните, кто первый вошел в комнату?
15. Вряд ли он тот человек, который даст нам интересные сведения.

16. Мы сделали вид, что не заметили его ошибки, чтобы не смущать его.
 17. Главное в том, как заставить ее поверить нам и послушаться нашего совета.
 18. Они получили письмо от Джеймса, в котором сообщалось, что его сестра недостаточно здорова, чтобы самой писать ответ.
 19. На следующий день она встала рано, чтобы приготовить комнату к приезду сына.
 20. Он подошел достаточно близко, чтобы увидеть ее лицо.
 21. Спустя десять дней она была достаточно здорова, чтобы выписаться из больницы.

8. PREDICATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH THE INFINITIVE

- The English infinitive can be used in such predicative constructions:
 – the Objective-with-the Infinitive Construction,
 – the Subjective Infinitive Construction,
 – the For-to-Infinitive Construction.

8.1. The Objective-with-the Infinitive Construction

The Objective-with-the Infinitive is a construction in which the infinitive is in predicate relation to a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case. In the sentence this construction has the function of a complex object.

I want Anna to help me.
 I want my friend to help me.
 I want her to help me.

<u>S</u>	<u>V</u>	a proper name	}	+ Infinitive
		a noun in the common case		
		a pronoun in the objective case		

The Objective-with-the Infinitive construction is used after the following groups of verbs:

1. After verbs denoting **emotion and feeling** (likes, dislikes): *to like, to love, to hate, to dislike, can't bear*.
 - *I like him to sing this song. – Мне нравится, когда он поет эту песню.*
 - *I hate you to talk like that. – Я ненавижу, когда ты так говоришь.*
 - *I can't bear you to speak like that. – Я не могу выносить, когда вы так говорите.*

2. After verbs expressing **wish and intention**: *to want, to wish, would like, would love, would prefer, to desire, to intend, to mean.*

• *I want you to come and dine with me. – Я хочу, чтобы ты пришел пообедать со мной.*

• *She desired me to follow her upstairs. – Она велела, чтобы я пошел за ней наверх.*

• *What else would you like us to do? – Что еще вы бы хотели, чтобы мы сделали?*

• *I didn't mean you to learn the poem by heart. – Я не имел в виду, чтобы вы выучили это стихотворение наизусть.*

3. After verbs expressing **mental activity**: *to think, to believe, to know, to consider, to expect, to find, to understand, to suppose.*

• *I think him to be right. – Я думаю, что он прав.*

• *We expected Dave to meet us at the airport. – Мы ожидали, что Дэйв встретит нас в аэропорту.*

• *I know her to be the most wonderful creature that ever lived. – Я знаю, что она самое удивительное существо на земле.*

• *I suppose him to be about twenty-five. – Я полагаю, что ему около 25 лет.*

• *Everybody considers her to be very kind and generous. – Все считают, что она очень добрая и щедрая.*

Note 1: With the verbs *to think, to consider, to find* the same idea can be expressed without an infinitive.

• *We thought her beautiful.*

• *She found the subject rather interesting.*

• *He considers himself an interesting person.*

4. After verbs denoting **order, request, permission**: *to order, to command, to ask, to allow, to forbid, to tell, to request, to persuade, to convince, to coax, to recommend, to advise, to encourage, to permit, to urge.*

• *He asked me to check the facts. – Он попросил меня проверить эти факты.*

• *He allowed them to carry out the experiment. – Он разрешил им поставить этот опыт.*

• *She told us to turn the music down. – Она велела нам сделать музыку потише.*

• *I recommended them to buy these dictionaries. – Я порекомендовала им купить эти словари.*

• *The boss ordered her to put up the notice downstairs.* – Начальник приказал ей вывесить объявление внизу.

• *The shop assistant persuaded us to buy the gloves we didn't really need.* – Продавец убедил нас купить перчатки, которые нам были не особенно нужны.

5. After verbs denoting **inducement**: *to have, to make, to let, to get, to cause.*

• *She can't get him to do it properly.* – Она не может добиться, чтобы он делал это правильно.

• *The noise caused her to awake.* – От шума она проснулась.

Note 2: After the verbs *to have, to make, to let* the bare infinitive is used.

• *What makes you suspect him?* – Почему вы его подозреваете?

• *Don't interrupt him. Let him talk.* – Не перебивайте его. Пусть говорит.

• *I'll have the secretary call up the embassy.* – Я поручу секретарю позвонить в посольство; Я скажу, чтобы секретарь позвонил в посольство.

6. After verbs denoting **sense perception**: *to see, to hear, to feel, to watch, to observe, to notice, to listen to.* In this case the bare infinitive is used.

• *I haven't heard anyone call me.* – Я не слышал, чтобы кто-нибудь звал меня.

• *She saw him overtake the red car.* – Она видела, как он обогнал красную машину.

• *I felt the blood rush into my cheeks and then leave them again.* – Я почувствовал, как кровь прилила к моим щекам и затем снова отхлынула от них.

• *We noticed the captain appear on the bridge* – Мы заметили, что капитан появился на капитанском мостике.

• *Have you heard him play the piano?* – Слышали ли вы, как он играет на рояле?

• *He was listening attentively to the chairman speak.* – Он внимательно слушал, как председатель говорил.

Note 3: The only possible form of the infinitive after the verbs of sense perception is the Simple Infinitive Active. If the meaning is passive, Participle II is used.

• *I heard my name mentioned.* – Я услышал, что назвали мое имя.

Note 4: Only a subordinate object clause, but not the Objective-with-the Infinitive Construction, is possible:

a) if the verbs *to see* and *to notice* are used with the meaning “to realize”, or the verb *to hear* with the meaning “to learn”.

- *I saw that he didn't know anything.* – Я видел (понимал), что он ничего не знает.

- *I hear that they have got married.* – Я слышала (узнала), что они поженились.

b) if the infinitive in the Objective-with-the Infinitive Construction is expressed by the verb *to be* after the verbs *to see* and *to notice*.

- *She saw that the room was in disorder.* – Она увидела, что комната в беспорядке.

Practice

Ex. 1. Point out the Objective-with-the Infinitive Construction.

1. I want you to hurry.
2. He wants you to forget it.
3. Do you want me to sign the paper?
4. Which do you wish your son to do, go into business or become a lawyer?
5. They want their chief to be removed from office.
6. They want the installation to be dismantled.
7. His mother wants him to enter a technical college.

Ex. 2. Make up your own sentences.

I want	you	to forget it
She wants	me	to remember that
They want	us	to take care of the children
		to resign
		to tell the truth

We want	the proposal to be adopted
They don't want	the problem to be solved
Would you like	the man to be exposed
I wouldn't like	the job to be done right away
We expect	the review to be published
He ordered	the facts to be proved
	everything to be arranged

Ex. 3. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Он хочет, чтобы вы забыли это.
2. Ей хотелось бы, чтобы ее сын стал юристом.

3. Они хотят, чтобы эта установка была демонтирована.
4. Энн хочет, чтобы вы позаботились о ее дочери.
5. Энн хочет, чтобы о ее дочери позаботились.
6. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы этот вопрос был поднят сегодня.
7. Они не хотят, чтобы это предложение было принято.
8. Мы хотим, чтобы этого человека разоблачили.
9. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы эта рецензия была опубликована.

Ex. 4. A) Point out the Objective-with-the Infinitive Construction.

1. We expect everybody to do his duty.
2. I expect him to be back on Sunday.
3. Everybody expected him to mark the occasion.
4. Nobody expected him to resign.
5. We consider him an outstanding politician.
6. I consider him the best composer living.
7. We expected her to tell the truth at the meeting.

B) Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Офіцер очікував, що солдати виконають свій обов'язок.
2. Ми очікуємо, що люди відсвяткують цю подію.
3. Більшість людей вважає його видатним політичним діячем.
4. Я вважаю, що він найкращий композитор сучасності.
5. Вчені тепер знають, що ці результати дослідження **правильні**.
6. Ми припускали, що зустріч відбудеться за тиждень.

Ex. 5. Paraphrase the following using the Objective-with-the Infinitive Construction.

MODEL: *I believe that she is familiar with many foreign languages.*

I believe her to be familiar with many foreign languages.

1. He believes they are absolutely wrong.
2. I believe they are working hard these days.
3. They believe he is a very experienced interpreter.
4. I believe that they have passed all their exams.
5. She believes that they are responsible people.
6. I believe that he is a very honest man.
7. I believe they have been working for this firm for 25 years.
8. They believe I'm a very cheerful person.

Ex. 6. Rewrite the sentences using the Objective-with-the Infinitive Construction.

MODEL: *It is known to every economist that an increase in the price of a factor will reduce demand for it. – Every economist knows an increase in the price of a factor to reduce demand for it.*

1. The rate of unemployment in tourist areas is higher than in highly industrialized ones. Economists know this.
2. It is well known to economists that the motives for nationalization are political as well as economic.
3. As prices for fuel and electricity have risen, we expect an increase in all prices.
4. The degree of profitability in private enterprises is higher than in the public sector. Some economists think so.
5. Many experts think that the growing use of fertilizers and other chemicals presents a danger to the environment.
6. Experts expected that the Iran – Iraq war would cause a sharp rise in oil prices in 1979–1980.

Ex. 7. Make up your own sentences using the verbs denoting order and permission.

I	allow	me	to use his telephone
He	allows	us	to change the article
We	do not allow	anyone	to read his letters
They	does not allow	everybody	to go skiing in such weather
	allowed	him	to stay at home
	ordered	you	

The professor		the prisoner	to be arrested
The commander	allowed	the man	to be set free
The manager	did not allow	the bridge	to be blown up
The chief	ordered	the machine	to be questioned
The inspector		anything	to be used
		the painter	to be changed
			to be operated on

Ex. 8. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Инспектор приказал арестовать этого человека.
2. Командир приказал взорвать мост.
3. Она не разрешает пользоваться своим принтером.
4. Кто разрешил изменить название статьи?
5. Она не разрешает читать свои письма.
6. Прикажите убрать отсюда эти столы.

Ex. 9. Point out the Objective-with-the Infinitive Construction.

1. Have somebody clear it up.
2. If you don't want to speak to the manager, you can have someone speak to him.
3. Have someone raise the question if you are not coming yourself.
4. I'll have John remind Edward of the reception.
5. Why didn't you have anybody help you?
6. If you are busy, you must have someone arrange everything.
7. I know you were ill. Why didn't you have your son call us?
8. Why don't you have your assistant do the job? You said you could rely on him.
9. What makes you think so?
10. What made you ask it?
11. Don't make me laugh.
12. Let the criminal talk. He is sure to expose himself sooner or later.

Ex. 10. Make up your own sentences using verbs of inducement.

Have someone	call the police
I'll have somebody	get in touch with them
You can have them	bring dictionaries for all the students
We must have someone	buy newspapers for all of us
Why not have John	see her off
They had James	

Ex. 11. Make sentences from the parts A, B, and C using the verbs LET and MAKE to get the complex object.

A	B	C
1. The small rent	the manager	work smoothly
2. A large supply of raw materials and spare parts (запасные части)	landowners	make their farms profitable
3. Profitability of housing in areas near big cities	tenant farmers	transfer land from farming to housing
4. Used up supplies of mineral resources	the enterprise	raise the price of the output
5. An increased rent		transfer land from mining to other uses

Ex. 12. Paraphrase the following according to the model.

MODEL A: *Mother insisted that I should consult my doctor by all means.
Mother made me consult my doctor by all means.*

MODEL B: *Mother allowed me to stay outdoors a bit longer.
Mother let me stay outdoors a bit longer.*

1. He insisted that I should change my plans for the summer.
2. I insisted that he should keep the news a secret for a while.
3. I insisted that he should give up smoking.
4. She allowed me to have my own way.
5. Allow me to keep the book for another week, please.
6. My doctor insisted that I should go to the polyclinic to have my blood pressure tested.
7. I can't allow you to bother the sick man every now and then.

Ex. 13. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Пусть кто-нибудь купит газеты.
2. Распорядитесь, чтобы кто-нибудь позвонил ему.
3. Вы должны сделать так, чтобы кто-нибудь вас проводил.
4. Пусть он вызовет полицию.
5. Распорядитесь, чтобы эти стулья убрали.
6. Скажите, чтобы принесли словари.
7. Проследите, чтобы эти статьи перевели на датский и голландский.
8. Пусть она переведет это предложение на немецкий язык.
9. Что заставило вас задать этот вопрос?
10. Не смешите меня. (Не заставляйте меня смеяться.)
11. Разрешите мне сказать несколько слов по этому вопросу.
12. Мы добьемся того, чтобы он сказал правду.
13. Я не позволю тебе трогать мои вещи.
14. Она добилась того, чтобы мы подчинились ее приказу.
15. Что заставило вас так подумать обо мне?
16. Посторонись и дай ему пройти.

Ex. 14. Translate into English.

1. Я хочу, чтобы все дети смеялись.
2. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы доктор это посмотрел.
3. Мой брат хочет, чтобы я изучала испанский язык.
4. Я бы хотел, чтобы мои ученики тщательно готовились к занятиям.
5. Вам бы хотелось, чтобы я рассказала вам всю правду?
6. Она не рассчитывала, что они вернутся так поздно.
7. Учитель рассчитывал, что ученики поймут это правило с первого раза.
8. Я не ожидал, что он напишет такие хорошие стихи.
9. Мой дедушка не любил, когда дети разговаривали за столом.
10. Она не могла заставить его ложиться спать рано.
11. Собака так громко лаяла, что заставила кошку взобраться на самое высокое дерево.
12. Почему вы не заставили сына регулярно ходить в школу?

13. Когда ты заставишь своего друга ходить вместе с тобой в спортзал?

14. Она заставила собаку перепрыгнуть через забор.

15. Заставьте ее надеть пальто, сегодня очень холодно.

Ex. 15. A) Point out the Objective-with-the Infinitive Construction and translate into Ukrainian or Russian.

1. He heard the telephone ring.

2. We watched the planes take off.

3. I saw him get on the bus.

4. Have you ever heard him play the piano?

5. Did any of you see him enter the bank?

6. None of us noticed him put the paper in his briefcase.

B) Translate into English.

1. Ніхто з нас не чув, як вона це казала.

2. Хтось з вас бачив, як підозрюваний відкрив двері?

3. Ми не чули, що хтось постукав у двері.

4. Ви колись чули, як ця дитина грає на скрипці?

5. Вона помітила, що її гаманець зник.

6. Я відчув, як хтось мене щипнув.

Ex. 16. Combine the sentences using the Objective-with-the Infinitive Construction.

MODEL: *Somebody approached me. I felt it.*

I felt somebody approach me.

1. The sun set and dark clouds covered the sky. I saw it.

2. He played the violin wonderfully at the party. I heard it.

3. Somebody touched me gently on the hand. I felt it.

4. I know him. He is very reliable.

5. It was the signal to start. I thought so.

6. They will have finished their work by June. I expect so.

7. The referee whistled and stopped the game. I heard it.

8. The book is a great success with the readers. I believe it.

9. It must be done as quickly as possible, without attracting anybody's attention. I'd like so.

10. Big Ben chimed "Three". I heard it.

11. On hearing it she flushed. I noticed it.

12. The boy noticed a bird. It flew on to the bush near the window.

13. Jane saw her neighbour. He opened the door of his flat and went in.

14. I saw him. He pointed to a picture on the wall.

15. I heard him. He shut the door of the study.
16. We saw that the children climbed to the tops of the trees.
17. I noticed that Henry went up and spoke to the stranger.
18. He slipped and fell. I saw it.
19. She bent and picked up something from the floor. The policeman saw it.
20. I saw that he opened the door and left the room.

Ex. 17. Translate into English.

1. Я слышал, как он открыл двери.
2. Я почувствовал, как он коснулся моей руки.
3. Все дети видели, как стая птиц полетела к лесу.
4. Она поспорила с друзьями, и все видели, как она переплыла реку.
5. Он так тихо вошел в комнату, что я даже не заметила, как он положил письмо на стол и вышел.
6. Я услышала звук открываемой двери и вышла в коридор, там я увидела, как он поставил свой чемодан у двери и устало прислонился к стене.
7. Мы видели, как она сошла с поезда и пошла по направлению к кассам.
8. Он слышал, как председатель назвал его имя.
9. Я заметил, что она побледнела.
10. Мы слышали, как он заговорил с ними по-французски.
11. Он услышал, как молодой человек выругался.
12. Мальчик увидел, как его мать положила в суп сахар вместо соли.
13. Мы заставили его пообещать приехать еще раз.
14. Мистер Браун услышал, как перед домом остановилась машина.
15. Роберт не увидел, как Кейт вошла в кафе, и удивился, когда почувствовал, что кто-то прикоснулся к его плечу.
16. Он знал, что книга такая интересная, но не ожидал, что будет так восхищен.
17. Невозможно заставить Тома работать в такой жаркий день.
18. Я заметил, что такси замедлило ход и остановилось на углу улицы.
19. Мой друг попросил, чтобы директор разрешил ему съездить в Киев на два дня.
20. Я ожидаю, что телеграмма будет послана немедленно.

Ex. 18. Use the appropriate type of the infinitive stem (a full infinitive or a bare infinitive).

1. He made me (to do) it all over again.
2. He made her (to repeat) the message.

3. Would you like me (to go) now?
4. They won't let us (to leave) the Customs till our luggage has been checked.
5. He wouldn't let my baby (to play) with the gold watch.
6. Please let me (to know) your decision as soon as possible.
7. He made us (to wait) for hours.
8. I let him (to leave) earlier as he wanted to meet his wife.
9. I'd like him (to go) to a university but I can't make him (to go).
10. He tried to make me (to believe) that he was my stepbrother.
11. Before he wanted (to go) he made us (to promise) not to tell anybody what we had seen.
12. That is too heavy for one woman (to carry); let me (to help) you.
13. The teacher advised us (to use) dictionaries.
14. Her father doesn't allow her (to go) to the cinema alone.
15. Who told the nurse (to give) the sick man this medicine?
16. The old man doesn't like his grandchildren (to make) a lot of noise when they are playing.
17. The gardener won't let the children (to pick) the flowers.

Ex. 19. Paraphrase the following, using the Objective-with-the Infinitive Construction.

1. Out of the tail of my eye I saw that he clutched at the edge of the table.
2. I felt that somebody touched me lightly on the shoulder.
3. He heard that someone called his name.
4. We did not expect that he would return so soon.
5. The passenger ordered that his luggage should be labelled for Prague.
6. I could hardly believe that it had happened.
7. I saw that the telegraph boy handed the cable to the man.
8. He thought that he was fit for the job.
9. They heard how the woman uttered a little exclamation.
10. What I want is that you both should be happy.
11. He hated it when people argued about trifles.
12. I would like to see how he would say it to my face.

Ex. 20. Translate what is given in brackets, using a complex object with an infinitive.

1. His remark made (всех чувствовать себя неловко).
2. We never had (чтобы с нами случилось что-либо подобное).
3. Let us try to get (чтобы он присоединился к нашей компании).
4. In this way she caused (чтобы ее уважали).
5. The new arrival ordered (чтобы его вещи принесли) to his room.

6. They warned (чтобы я не брался за это) before I was sure I could do it.
7. They asked (чтобы он разрешил выставить свою картину).
8. We considered (что план был вполне осуществлен).
9. She could not force (чтобы не думать об этом).
10. How could you let (чтобы тебя так провели).
11. The garden was so enclosed and carpeted with flowers that one could hardly believe (что он находится) in the middle of a big city.
12. I only want (чтобы это было сделано) and as soon as possible.
13. He liked (чтобы все содержалось) in perfect order.
14. Now everything was changed without his having noticed (как произошла перемена).

Ex. 21. Paraphrase the following so as to use a complex object with an infinitive after the verbs given in brackets.

MODEL: *Somebody mentioned my name (to hear).*

– I heard somebody mention my name.

1. You may be sure she won't let you down (to rely on, to count on, to depend on).
2. With the introduction of this device the productivity of labour will considerably increase (to enable).
3. At the thought of it I felt sad (to cause).
4. It is very pleasant when everybody likes you (to have).
5. When I waited in the reception room a girl came out with a file in her hands (to see). She must have been the secretary (to understand).
6. He shall return. They will take care of it (to get).
7. It seemed to me that he knew more than he had said (to suppose, to suspect).
8. Something hard struck my leg (to feel).
9. He was taken in without being aware of it (to let, to allow).
10. We hope that steps will be taken in this direction (to expect).
11. A wind was rising. The windows rattled (to make).

Ex. 22. Translate into English, making use of the verbs in brackets.

1. Я считаю, что это был благородный поступок с его стороны (to consider, to think).
2. Я не позволю говорить такие вещи в моем присутствии (to have, to stand, to let, to allow).
3. Я хочу, чтобы мы все были друзьями (to want, to wish).
4. Мы много раз слышали, как он рассказывал эту историю (to hear).
5. Она никак не могла решиться спросить его об этом (to bring).

6. Поручите вашему секретарю сделать копию этого документа (to have).

7. Археологи предполагают, что эти предметы использовались только как украшения (to suppose, to believe).

8. Можем ли мы рассчитывать на то, что вы нас поддержите? (to count on, to rely on, to depend on).

9. Никто, кроме нее, не заметил, как выражение его лица неожиданно изменилось (to see, to notice).

10. Поговорите с ним; постарайтесь, чтобы он отказался от своего намерения (to get).

11. Я не помню, чтобы он когда-либо принял поспешное решение (to know).

12. Почему вы так думаете (to make)?

13. Он почувствовал, как кровь бросилась ему в лицо (to feel).

14. Он очень хороший организатор: у него все распоряжения выполняются очень аккуратно (to cause).

Ex. 23. Translate the sentences paying attention to the complex object.

1. We know many newly industrialized countries to have weak trade unions.

2. The developing countries want the rich countries to stop imposing tariffs on imports from the Third World.

3. Economists consider land to be the factor of production supplied by nature.

4. As the prices of fuels rise, we expect their production to expand.

5. Some businessmen think trade union regulations to result in fewer jobs.

6. A rise in the price of a unit of labour will make the firm start using a more capital-intensive technology (капиталоемкая технология).

7. Higher prices for oil make research laboratories work at substitutes for oil.

8. The command economy does not let an individual make free economic decisions.

9. Increased output (расход) per worker in agriculture lets more workers be transferred from agriculture to industry.

10. Allocation of additional capital lets a high level of production be maintained with fewer workers.

11. When market conditions change, economists expect the price for land to vary.

12. Too high cost of imported cotton has made a lot of textile enterprises close down in Russia.

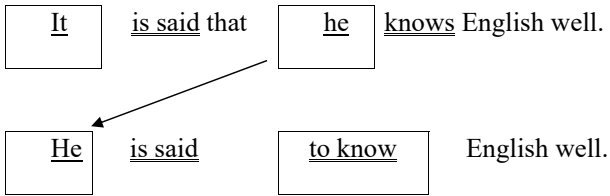
13. Economists believe the availability of labour to be an essential condition of economic activity.

14. High oil prices make consumers purchase substitute commodities.
 15. A decrease in prices for energy could let farmers improve technology rapidly.

8.2. The Subjective Infinitive Construction

The Subjective Infinitive Construction is traditionally called the Complex Subject. This predicative construction consists of a noun in the common case or a personal pronoun in the nominative case and an infinitive.

<u>It is said that</u>		<u>he knows English well.</u>
the main clause		the subordinate clause



“*He ... to know*” is the Subjective Infinitive Construction which consists of the personal pronoun *he* in the nominative case and the infinitive *to know* which forms a part of a compound verbal predicate (*is said to know*).

The Subjective Infinitive Construction is used with a limited number of finite verbs either in the passive or in the active voice.

1. The Subjective Infinitive Construction is used with the following groups of verbs in **the passive voice**:

- a) verbs of **sense perception**: *to see, to hear, to observe, to watch*.
 - *She was seen to disappear in the distance.* – Видели, как она исчезла вдали.
 - *He was heard to sing in the next room.* – Было слышно, как он пел в комнате.

- b) verbs of **mental activity**: *to know, to think, to consider, to expect, to believe, to suppose, to mean, to intend*.
 - *Mark was thought to be honest and kind.* – Марка считали честным и добрым.

- *She is considered to be very clever.* – Считают, что она очень умная.
- *This fruit is known to be grown in the south.* – Известно, что эти фрукты выращивают на юге.
- *She is believed to have lived in Vienna for a long time.* – Полагают, что она долго жила в Вене.
- *The conference was supposed to be making good progress.* – Предполагалось, что конференция проходит успешно.

Note 1: Pay attention to the translation of the verb *to suppose* in the Subjective Infinitive Construction.

- *You are supposed to know it.* – Вам полагается это знать.
- *She is supposed to do this work.* – Ей полагается делать эту работу.

c) verbs of **saying and reporting**: *to say, to report, to declare, to announce, to predict.*

- *She is said to be working on her report.* – Говорят, что она сейчас работает над докладом.
- *The goods are reported to have been awaiting shipment for several days.* – Сообщают, что товары ожидают отгрузки уже несколько дней.
- *He was declared to have taken the first place.* – Объявили, что он занял первое место.

d) verbs of **inducement and permission**: *to cause, to make, to order, to allow.*

Note 2: The verb *to make* when used in the passive voice is followed by a full infinitive.

- *Jack was made to repeat his words.* – Джека заставили повторить его слова.
- *No dam was allowed to be built in this part of the country.* – В этой части страны не разрешили строить дамбу.
- *The doctor was ordered to change his shift.* – Врача заставили работать в другую смену.

2) The Subjective Infinitive Construction is used with the following verbs in **the active voice**:

to seem, to appear – казаться.
to prove, to turn out – оказываться.
to happen, to chance – случаться.

- *The weather appears to be improving.* – Погода, по-видимому, улучшается.

• *She appears to them to have forgotten her promise.* – Им кажется, что она забыла свое обещание.

• *This picture may prove to be the best at the exhibition.* – Эта картина может оказаться лучшей на выставке.

• *Mr. White turned out to be sociable.* – Мистер Уайт оказался общительным.

• *Only yesterday we happened to see her.* – Только вчера мы случайно увидели (встретили) ее.

• *He chanced to be in the park when I was there.* – Он случайно оказался в парке, когда я был там.

Note 3: In negative sentences the particle *not* is usually used with the finite verb preceding the infinitive.

• *She doesn't seem to know him.* – Она, кажется, не знает его.

• *He didn't prove to be a very experienced engineer.* – Он оказался не очень опытным инженером.

• *They didn't happen to be at work at that time.* – Случилось так, что их не было на работе в то время.

Note 4: After the verbs *to prove*, *to seem* and *to appear* the link verb *to be* can be often omitted if it is followed by an adjective or a noun modified by an adjective.

• *She proved very clever.* – Она оказалась очень умной.

• *She seemed tired.* – Она казалась (выглядела) усталой.

• *He **appears an experienced doctor.*** – Он **кажется опытным врачом** (производит впечатление опытного врача).

Note 5: Sometimes the introductory *there* is used before the verbs *to seem*, *to appear*, *to prove*, *to happen*:

• *There seem to be no changes in the trade relations between these two countries.* – Кажется, что в торговых отношениях между этими двумя странами нет никаких изменений.

(= *It seems that there are no changes in the trade relations between these two countries.*)

• *There appears to be great excitement about the news.* – Повидимому, это известие вызвало большое волнение.

(= *It appears that there is great excitement about the news.*)

• *There proved to be many difficulties in solving the matter.* – В решении этого вопроса оказалось много трудностей.

(= *It proved that there are many difficulties in solving the matter.*)

• *There happened to be many people there at that time.* – Случилось так, что там было много народу в это время.

(= *It happened that there were many people there at that time.*)

3) The Subjective Infinitive Construction is used with the modal phrases expressing different shades of probability or certainty:

to be likely – вероятно;

to be unlikely – маловероятно, вряд ли;

to be certain, to be sure – непременно, наверняка, несомненно, бесспорно.

- *He is likely to know her address.* – Он, вероятно, знает ее адрес.
(= *It is likely that he knows her address.*)
- *They are very likely to come soon.* – Очень вероятно, что они скоро придут.
(= *It is likely that they will come soon.*)
- *They are most likely to have received our letter.* – **Весьма вероятно** (Вероятнее всего), что они уже получили наше письмо.
(= *It is most likely that they have received our letter.*)
- *The goods are unlikely to be unloaded today.* – Маловероятно, что (Вряд ли) товары будут разгружены сегодня.
(= *It is unlikely that the goods will be unloaded today.*)
- *They are certain to come to Milan.* – Они наверняка (непременно) придут в Милан.
(= *It is certain that they will come to Milan.*)
- *She is sure to be asked about it.* – Ее непременно (наверняка) спросят об этом.
(= *It is sure that she will be asked about it.*)

Compare: *He is sure to come.* – Он обязательно придет.

He is sure of coming. – Он уверен, что придет.

Practice

Ex. 1. Point out the Subjective Infinitive Construction and translate the sentences into Ukrainian or Russian.

- A) 1. Margaret was heard to argue with Howard.
2. James was said to avoid Alice.
3. Edward is believed to have left for Sofia.
4. Mr. Jones was known to have lived in Cairo for a long time.
5. Catherine was expected to write from Amsterdam.
6. Ann is expected to return from Dublin tomorrow.
7. The conference was announced to have started its work.
8. Mr. Hudson was known to have flown from Athens to Brussels.

9. Mr. Hastings was considered to know Copenhagen well.
10. The Ambassador was reported to have returned to Melburn.
11. Victoria was thought to be rather selfish.
12. The minister was reported to have made a speech at Cairo Airport.

- B) 1.** Mr. Johnson is considered to be an experienced lawyer.
2. Mr. Johnson is considered to have been an experienced lawyer.
 3. Mr. Huxley is believed to know five languages.
 4. Mr. Huxley is believed to be studying Dutch.
 5. Mr. Huxley is believed to have studied Danish and Dutch in his childhood.
 6. The country is known to export oil.
 7. English is known to have adopted a lot of French words.
 8. Mr. Russell was known to have his own opinion on the matter.
 9. Mr. Russell was known to have expressed his opinion in his letter to the management.
 10. Mr. McDonald is believed to have lived in Sweden for over ten years.
 11. He is believed to know that country very well.
 12. Mr. Hook was believed to be living in Holland.
 13. Her cousin was believed to have been living in Sweden since the end of World War II.
 14. Fifteen planes were reported to be taking part in the operation.
 15. Fifteen planes were reported to have taken part in the operation.

Ex. 2. A) Paraphrase the following sentences with the Subjective Infinitive Construction by using complex sentences with subordinate object clauses.

MODEL: *The delegation was expected to arrive on Thursday.*

– It was expected that the delegation would arrive on Thursday.

1. The letter is expected to be delivered on Saturday.
2. We are supposed to do the job right away.
3. Nora's behaviour was found to be suspicious.
4. The news is expected to be announced today.
5. Your team was expected to win the game.
6. Their library is said to be twice as large as ours.
7. The construction of the plant was stated to have been completed.
8. Constance was believed to be pleasant company.
9. Our Head engineer was known to have made an important discovery.
10. An important discovery was announced to have been made.
11. Dr. Storm was said to have realized his plan.
12. The plan was reported to have been realized in time.

B) Translate the following sentences.

1. Mr. Hardy is considered to be a capable man.
2. Thomas Perkins is considered a talented writer.
3. Oscar Wilde is considered to be a very good stylist.
4. Elizabeth was considered to be one of the best runners.
5. Who is considered the best swimmer here?

C) Make up your own sentences.

Jack Mr White Who	is considered (to be)	a good singer a good lawyer a hard-working student a talented poet very shy experienced competent and efficient
-------------------------	-----------------------	---

D) Translate into English.

1. Його вважають досвідченим лікарем.
2. Кого тут вважають найкращим плавцем?
3. Він вважається гарним співаком?
4. Його вважають гарним адвокатом.
5. Майкла вважали чудовим працівником.
6. Цього хірурга вважали одним з найкращих у ті часи.
7. Хто вважається переможцем у грі?

Ex. 3. Paraphrase the following so as to use the Subjective Infinitive Construction.

- A)**
1. He was a very gloomy man. Nobody ever saw him smile or look happy.
 2. We know Bernard Shaw to have been a very witty man.
 3. The father did not allow anybody to touch anything on his desk.
 4. People consider the climate there to be very healthful.
 5. We heard a car pull up at the curb.
 6. Nothing could make him understand the situation.
 7. Who do they suspect to have done this?
 8. Everybody heard him say that in so many words.
 9. Scientists consider that electricity exists throughout space.
 10. Everyone knows computer technology to have had a great effect on the work of the stock exchange.

- B)**
1. It was announced that the Polish dancers were arriving the next week.
 2. It is expected that the performance will be a success.
 3. It is said that this book is popular with both old and young.

4. It is believed that the poem was written by an unknown soldier.
5. It is supposed that the playwright is working at a new comedy.
6. It was understood that the parties had come to an agreement.
7. It is reported that the flood has not caused much damage to the crop.
8. It was supposed that the crop would be rich that year.
9. It has been found that this mineral water is very good for the liver.

Ex. 4. Use the Subjective Infinitive Construction instead of the subordinate clauses and complex objects.

1. It is reported that the football match will take place on May 15th.
2. We expected the children to return by seven o'clock.
3. It is understood that the commission will soon come to a decision.
4. They often heard the girl sing that tune.
5. It was known that he was in the habit of sleeping the whole winter with the window open.
6. People saw him enter the house early in the morning.
7. It was believed that the expedition had returned to its winter camp.
8. The doctor ordered him to give up smoking.
9. It was expected that the conference would take place in May.
10. It was reported that many buildings had been damaged by the fire.
11. It is said that the expedition has reached Vladivostok.

Ex. 5. Translate into English using the Subjective Infinitive Construction.

1. Как известно, Жуковский был прекрасным педагогом и лектором.
2. Говорят, что экспедиция собрала очень интересный материал о природных богатствах этого района.
3. Сообщалось, что в этот район была послана большая группа строителей.
4. Предполагается, что в этом районе будет создан новый город.
5. Полагают, что они уже доехали до места назначения.
6. Никак не ожидали, что холода наступят так рано.
7. Как сообщают, средняя температура мая в этом году была значительно ниже, чем в прошлом.
8. Известно, что черный цвет поглощает световые лучи наиболее интенсивно.
9. Говорят, что этот архитектор работает сейчас над новым проектом.
10. Полагают, что это изобретение поможет сэкономить много металла.
11. При переводе текста на экзамене студентам разрешалось пользоваться словарем.
12. Известно, что он писал свою последнюю картину в течение трех лет.

Ex. 6. Translate the following sentences into Russian or Ukrainian. Point out the Subjective Infinitive Construction and comment on the forms of the infinitives.

1. The children seem to like each other very much.
2. My friend seemed to know grammar much better than we thought.
3. Her hair seemed to have dried.
4. She seemed to be saying that all the time now.
5. The trouble is the audiences don't seem to like to think.
6. It seems to have been pouring with rain since morning.
7. She seemed to be crying.
8. He seemed to have been doing nothing but reading for a week.
9. You don't seem to understand me.
10. The girl didn't seem to be happy.
11. She didn't seem to be following me.
12. They didn't seem to have met.

Ex. 7. A. Translate the following sentences into Russian or Ukrainian.

1. Our neighbour turned out to be sociable.
2. The situation turned out to be rather awkward.
3. The bread turned out to be stale.
4. Our new colleague turned out to be unusually quiet.
5. Frank Swain turned out to be extremely patient.

B. Make up your own sentences.

Mrs. White Mr. Eden Miss Webster Our neighbours	turned out to be	a cheerful man a competent manager a good doctor witty very curious sociable shy rather unscrupulous absent-minded
--	------------------	--

Ex. 8. Respond to the questions according to the models:

MODEL A: *Do you know Mr Green?*

– Yes, I happen to know him.

1. Does Jim know who has won the game?
2. Did you meet the Smiths in Paris?
3. Did you see James Burton play golf?
4. Did you see the new French film?

MODEL B: *Does she know Mr Brown? (to have met him before)*
– *No, she doesn't seem to have met him before.*

1. Does she know his last novel? (to have read it)
2. Have they heard the news? (to have heard it)
3. Does he know he was wrong? (to realize it)
4. Does he know geography well? (to be good at it)

Ex. 9. Paraphrase the following so as to use the Subjective Infinitive Construction.

1. It seems they know all about it.
2. It seems they have heard all about it.
3. It seemed that the discussion was coming to an end.
4. It seems that you don't approve of the idea.
5. It seemed that the house had not been lived in for a long time.
6. It appeared that he was losing patience.
7. It appeared that he had not heard what had been said.
8. It happened that I was present at the opening session.
9. It so happened that I overheard their conversation.
10. It proved that my prediction was correct.
11. It turned out that the language of the article was quite easy.
12. It seemed there was nothing to add.
13. She wasn't a football fan, but she went to matches because it happened that she lived next door to the stadium.
14. It proved that working from home was a real advantage after her son was born.
15. It seems banks are able to offer interest on checking accounts in some countries.
16. I proved that there were some broken cups in the case.
17. It happened that he was at home at the time.
18. It seems that there is a great difference between these two samples.

Ex. 10. Translate the following sentences into English using the Subjective Infinitive Construction.

1. Оказалось, что мы уже когда-то встречались.
2. Вы, кажется, устали. Не хотите ли отдохнуть?
3. Он, кажется, начинает сердиться.
4. Он, казалось, не понимал всей серьезности положения.
5. Условия работы оказались более трудными, чем предполагалось.
6. Вам, кажется, не нравится его предложение?
7. Вы, случайно, не знаете этого человека?
8. Ничто, казалось, не нарушало тишины.

9. Он, по-видимому, был чем-то обеспокоен.
10. Вы, как будто, меня не слушаете.
11. Нам не раз довелось бывать в этих местах.
12. Я как раз был в Ялте, когда открывали памятник Чехову.
13. У нас оказалось много общих знакомых.
14. Мой спутник оказался большим знатоком архитектуры.
15. Книга с самого начала показалась мне интересной.
16. Книга, которую вы мне дали, оказалась скучной.
17. Найденная кость оказалась бивнем мамонта.
18. Новые автобусы оказались очень удобными.

Ex. 11. Translate the following sentences into English using the Subjective Infinitive Construction.

1. Говорят, что это здание было построено в XVII веке.
2. Как известно, английская писательница Войнич жила в течение нескольких лет в Петербурге и изучала русскую литературу. Считают, что русская литература оказала огромное влияние на ее творчество.
3. Известно, что римляне построили на Британских островах хорошие дороги.
4. Я случайно знаю его номер.
5. Полагают, что они знают об этом больше, чем хотят сказать.
6. Говорят, что он работает над своим изобретением уже несколько лет.
7. Вы, кажется, много читали перед поступлением в университет.
8. Шум, казалось, все приближался.
9. Я случайно проходил мимо вокзала, когда в Петербург приехала известная американская певица.
10. Джордж и его старшая сестра были случайно куплены одним и тем же рабовладельцем.
11. Джорджа заставили уйти с фабрики, бросить работу, которую он так любил, и вернуться к хозяину.
12. Он, кажется, пишет новую статью, кажется, он работает над ней уже две недели.

Ex. 12. Translate the following sentences into Russian or Ukrainian. Point out the Subjective Infinitive Construction.

1. He is certain to come back.
2. I think she is very likely to stay a week or more.
3. She is unlikely to be late.
4. Steerforth was sure to be there expecting me.
5. We are not likely to see the stranger again.
6. Most of us want a good many things that we are not likely to get.

7. You are not likely to believe my story.
8. These objects are sure to be wanted as evidence.

Ex. 13. Paraphrase the following using the Subjective Infinitive Construction.

1. It is likely that the article will appear in the next issue of the journal.
2. It is not very likely that he will change his opinion.
3. It was certain that they would come to an understanding.
4. It seemed unlikely that questions of the kind should crop up.
5. We are sure that everything will turn out all right.
6. He has surely noticed it.
7. I am certain this treatment will help you a lot.
8. It is likely there will be much snow this winter.
9. It is certain that they will be here on Monday.
10. It is unlikely that the meeting will be postponed.
11. It was not likely that the telegram would reach them in time.
12. It is likely that the conference will be held in Kyiv.

Ex. 14. Respond to the questions according to the model:

MODEL: *Will John take part in the meeting?*

Yes, he is certain to take part in it. / No, he is unlikely to take part in it.

1. Will he apologize to his mother?
2. Will they confirm the reservation?
3. Will he fix the clock?
4. Will the performance be a success?
5. Will they keep the appointment?
6. Will the college be supplied with new books?
7. Will he congratulate me on my birthday?
8. Will he be nominated for the Presidency?
9. Will the shortage of staff pose a problem?
10. Will the agreement be beneficial for both parties?

Ex. 15. Translate the following sentences into English using the Subjective Infinitive Construction and define the function of the parts of this construction.

1. Я уверен, вам эта пьеса понравится.
2. Они, конечно, сделают все, что смогут.
3. Он знал, что его обязательно об этом спросят.
4. Двух дней, пожалуй, будет достаточно.
5. Завтра утром телеграмма будет непременно доставлена.

6. Вряд ли он об этом что-либо знает.
7. Он, наверняка, все перепутает.
8. Казалось маловероятным, чтобы возникли какие-либо затруднения.
9. Это предположение, по всей вероятности, его заинтересует.
10. Надеюсь, вряд ли будут возражения против такой повестки дня.
11. Маловероятно, что он упустит возможность посмотреть финальный матч.
12. Обязательно прочитайте эту книгу, она вам несомненно понравится.

Ex. 16. Translate the sentences paying attention to the Subjective Infinitive Construction.

1. He is said to know all about nature.
2. He was said to have known the whole truth about it.
3. Gagarin is known to be the first man in the world to travel into space on the 12th of April, 1961.
4. He is supposed to be a very good film actor.
5. There was a rumour that at last they were likely to be married.
6. Innocent people were announced to have been murdered by terrorists.
7. The exhibition of 19th century French painting is expected to open by the end of next week.
8. Monet's painting is reported to be on exhibition until the end of the month.
9. The President of Russia was reported to speak to the nation on television tonight.
10. The American astronaut Neil Armstrong is known to be the first man to walk on the moon in 1969.
11. The students were supposed to come on time and take part in the marathon.
12. You are supposed to check your change before you leave the cashier.
13. Anna Mutter is believed to be one of the finest violinists in the world.
14. True friends are known to be like diamonds, precious but rare. False friends are said to be like autumn leaves found everywhere.
15. His "office" turned out to be in one of the back streets close by Olimpia.
16. This appeared to amuse the policemen.

Ex. 17. Translate the sentences into English using the Subjective Infinitive Construction.

1. Гадали, що саме вона писала ці листи.
2. Дуже вірогідно, що група вже поїхала з Москви.
3. Здається, що ця стаття була перекладена дуже освіченим перекладачем.

4. Вони виявилися талановитими викладачами.
5. Вважають, що він – один з найкращих спортсменів країни.
6. Він неодмінно подзвонить тобі, щоб сказати все, що він думає.
7. Вони, мабуть, погодяться взяти участь у змаганнях.
8. Дуже вірогідно, що ця проблема буде обговорюватися на засіданні уряду.
9. Малоймовірно, що вони встигнуть закінчити роботу до травня.
10. Вона випадково написала дуже гарний вірш.

Ex. 18. Translate the sentences into English using the Subjective Infinitive Construction.

1. Здається, ви не розумієте, на що я натякаю.
2. Кажуть, що в середу водоканал відключить воду в усьому місті.
3. Повідомили, що прем'єр-міністр здійснив перевірку роботи державних установ.
4. Ймовірно, цей проєкт буде успішним.
5. Вважають, що в минулому Марс був придатний для життя.
6. Іноді виявляється, що реальність дивніша за вигадку.
7. Відомо, що Нікола Тесла передбачив багато відкриттів сучасності.
8. Було чуто, як сусіди голосно засміялися за стіною.
9. Виявилося, що цей студент зовсім не любить англійську граматику.
10. Бачили, як злодій поцупив гаманець перехожого.
11. Здавалося, що наші друзі зовсім не готові до іспиту, але, як виявилося, їм пощастило.
12. Так склалося, що Майкл і Роберт ніколи не бачили один одного, але вони часто розмовляли по телефону, тому що працювали у різних філіалах однієї компанії.
13. Якщо випадково побачиш Пітера, передавай мої вітання.

Ex. 19. Translate the following sentences into English using the Subjective Infinitive Construction and define the function of the parts of this construction.

1. Сообщалось, что этот институт разработал новый метод операций на сердце.
2. Статья молодого ученого оказалась настолько интересной, что привлекла внимание многих специалистов.
3. Результаты опыта оказались еще более интересными, чем предполагалось.
4. Мне довелось провести несколько дней на пароходе с этим человеком. Он оказался очень приятным собеседником.

5. Полагали, что матч был отложен не из-за плохой погоды, а по какой-то другой причине.
6. Эти картины будут обязательно выставлены на ближайшей выставке.
7. Их приезда ждут с минуты на минуту.
8. Только сотрудникам лаборатории разрешается пользоваться этой библиотекой.
9. Дискуссия, очевидно, будет очень горячей.
10. Казалось, вопросам не будет конца.
11. Говорят, что подготовка второго издания этого словаря подходит к концу. Предполагают, что он будет намного полнее предыдущего. Ожидают, что новый словарь будет выпущен до конца года.
12. Боюсь, что я ни за что не нашел бы вас, если бы случайно не заглянул сюда.
13. Я был случайным свидетелем этой сцены.
14. Об этом событии будут, безусловно, много говорить.
15. С тех пор никто не слышал, чтобы они ссорились.
16. Казалось, никто не заметил перемены в его поведении.
17. Кажется, он не понял, что был неправ.

8.3. The for -to-Infinitive Construction

The for-to-Infinitive Construction is a construction in which the infinitive is in predicate relation to a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case introduced by the preposition *for*. The construction is used where the doer of the action expressed by the infinitive is different from that of the finite verb (the predicate).

- *He longed to see the truth.* – Он очень хотел узнать правду.
(The doer of the action of the finite verb and of the infinitive is the same.)
- *He longed for me to see the truth.* – Он очень хотел, чтобы я узнал правду.
(The doer of the action of the finite verb and of the infinitive is not the same.)

In all its uses the for-to-Infinitive Construction is generally rendered in Ukrainian or Russian by a subordinate clause.

The construction can have different functions in the sentence. It can be used as:

- 1) **subject** (often with the introductory *it*)
 - *It was difficult for him to do anything else.* – Ему было трудно сделать что-либо еще.
 - *For me to hear him was disturbing.* – Меня приводило в волнение слышать его.

2) **predicative** (mostly with the link verb *to be*)

- *The best thing is for you to do it now.* – Лучше всего, чтобы вы сделали это сейчас.
- *That was for him to find out.* – Выяснить это должен был он.
- *What it all means remains for an expert to say.* – Что все это значит, остается сказать эксперту.

3) **object**

- *She waited for the door to open.* – Она ждала, когда откроется дверь.
- *He asked for the papers to be brought.* – Он попросил принести бумаги.
- *His family was anxious for him to do something.* – Его семье очень хотелось, чтобы он что-нибудь сделал.
- *She thought it very odd for a perfect stranger to talk to her like that.* – Она сочла очень странным, что совершенно незнакомый ей человек разговаривает с ней таким образом.

4) **attribute**

- *There was no need for him to be economical.* – Ему не было необходимости быть экономным.
- *The best thing for you to do is to wait for them here.* – Самое лучшее, что вы можете сделать, это подождать их здесь.
- *There was really nothing for him to do but what he had done.* – Ему действительно ничего не оставалось делать, кроме того, что он сделал.
- *There is nobody here for him to play with.* – Здесь нет никого, с кем он мог бы поиграть.

5) **adverbial modifier of purpose**

- *She paused for him to continue.* – Она остановилась, чтобы он продолжал.
- *He stepped aside for me to pass.* – Он отошел в сторону, чтобы я могла пройти.

6) **adverbial modifier of result**

- *The wall was too high for anything to be visible.* – Стена была слишком высокой, чтобы можно было что-нибудь увидеть.
- *She spoke loud enough for you to hear.* – Она говорила достаточно громко, чтобы вы могли ее слышать.

Practice

Ex. 1. Translate into Russian or Ukrainian and comment on the functions of the for-to-Infinitive Construction.

1. The boy had evidently come in from the garden and was waiting for her to wake.
2. The letter was not meant for anyone but you to read.
3. He longed for me to say it without prompting.
4. There is a train tonight at nine. I'll arrange for you to catch it.
5. The scene had affected Isabel too much for her to be able to tell it to me without getting somewhat emotional.
6. She stood at the garden gate alone, holding her baby up in her arms for me to see.
7. There is nothing left for us to add.
8. She stood waiting for the trolley-bus to take her down to the city.
9. There was but little room for him to pass, and, as he rode, his horse scraped against the hub of the wheel.
10. I left something under your door for you to read it.
11. He opened the study door, and held it for her to pass in.
12. I suppose it was natural for you to be anxious about the garden party.
13. We drifted down stream all the afternoon, and in the evening pulled into the reeds under the willow-boughs and lit a fire for her to cook by.
14. I still thought it might be worth while for me to go round to Jackson's.
15. He would be pleased to withdraw till the proper time arrived for him to speak.
16. It's easy for you to talk so.
17. He spread a rug for his wife to sit on.
18. It seemed impossible for either of us to remain much longer in the house.
19. He was a very nice fellow. You had only to say you wanted something for him to give it to you.

Ex. 2. Translate into Russian or Ukrainian and comment on the functions of the for-to-Infinitive Construction.

1. There was no home for him to go to.
2. It seemed almost a shame for anyone to be as pretty as she was tonight.
3. And it's not for you to make terms. It's for you to accept them.
4. There's nothing for us to do but amuse ourselves.
5. But the pain in James' head asserted itself too cruelly for him to think of anything else for the moment.

6. Some trouble with the authorities had made it necessary for him to be much abroad.

7. There were plenty of papers for him to read, but he left them alone.

8. Since you are so anxious for me to distinguish myself I have concluded to do so.

9. It is impossible for me to write about that time in detail – I can't bear to.

10. She longed for night to come to bring some sleep to her.

11. The free market is one way for society to solve the economic problems as to what, how and for whom to produce.

12. Economically advanced countries' aid to the Third World is not generally strong enough for the latter to achieve economic independence.

13. For research and development to be carried out, the governments in less developed countries have to invest enough resources to their own research institutes.

14. For higher profit to be obtained, firms have to increase efficiency of labour.

15. Unemployment is growing too rapidly for labour markets to be balanced.

Ex. 3. Construct "for-phrases", using the words in brackets in the appropriate form.

1. It's very important (children; to play outdoors).

2. It'll be the best (she; to talk to the manager).

3. It might be just possible (you; to make him see the doctor).

4. It would be easy (I; to pretend).

5. It's very bad (boys; to smoke).

6. It's not (you; to carry that heavy bag).

7. The simplest thing is for (he, to come and see) everything for himself.

8. The runners listened for (the signal, to give).

9. Don't you find it odd for (she, to keep) it secret so long?

10. He asked for (a catalogue, to send) him.

11. The captain gave orders for (the flag, to hoist).

12. The people gave way for (we, to pass).

13. I always thought my friend an excellent example for (everybody, to follow).

14. It is rather strange for (they, to leave) without letting us know.

15. That is for (I, to judge), isn't it?

Ex. 4. Use “for-phrases” instead of the subordinate clauses and state their function.

1. It is quite natural that he should act like that.
2. It’s impossible that he should have so let us down.
3. The main thing is that all of us should work in close cooperation.
4. Let us wait till a definite answer arrives.
5. Why be so anxious that he should go?
6. This is a lesson that you shall remember for the rest of your life.
7. I will leave the magazine that you may read it.
8. He closed the window lest the papers be scattered by the wind.
9. The ice has become too thin, so the boys can’t go skating.
10. The young actor must be very talented since the producer has given him a leading part to play.
11. It is something extraordinary that a man of his age should be so active and full of vitality.
12. It’s high time you went to bed.

Ex. 5. Rewrite the sentences using the for-to-Infinitive Construction.

MODEL: *The information is too outdated. The economists cannot rely on it.*

– *The information is too outdated for the economists to rely on it.*

The demand for durable goods is big. Their manufacturers raise the output.

– *The demand for the durable goods is big enough for their manufacturers to raise the output.*

1. The manufacturer’s guarantee is too short. We will not buy their equipment.
2. The company’s investment in machinery was too big last year. The dividends cannot be high.
3. The value of the equipment is too high. We cannot take any risks transporting it by train.
4. The rate of unemployment is too high. The government cannot ignore it.
5. The firm’s requirements are too high. All their jobs cannot be filled in.
6. Your income is not big. You cannot live without a job.
7. The choice of goods is good. The store is the most popular one in the neighbourhood.
8. Human capital in some industries is not well-paid. Young people do not want to pay for their education in corresponding professions.
9. The birth-rate in Russia is low. The size of the labour force will become a problem for society in the near future.
10. The efficiency of investment on the farm is high. The cost of its final products is lower than the one on other farms of the region.

Ex. 6. Translate what is given in brackets, using “for-phrases”.

1. What I want is (чтобы вы меня ясно поняли).
2. He asked (чтобы его друзей приняли в клуб).
3. There is no need (нам здесь задерживаться).
4. The boy has a very musical ear; you have only to play a melody once (и он сможет тут же повторить ее) from memory.
5. It was so dark in the room that I had to wait a space (пока мои глаза привыкнут к темноте).
6. Call them (чтобы нас кто-нибудь встретил).
7. He waited at the receiver (когда ему дадут **нужный номер**).
8. It is impossible (чтобы он вам поверил) even after you had shown him the letter.

Ex. 7. Translate the sentences into English, using the for-to-Infinitive Construction.

1. Первое, что мы должны сделать – это заказать билеты.
2. Вопрос был слишком неожиданным, чтобы я смог на него ответить.
3. Я подчеркнула эти предложения, чтобы вы проанализировали их.
4. Этот текст достаточно легкий, чтобы вы могли прочитать его без словаря.
5. Ему ничего не оставалось делать, как немедленно выехать в Москву.
6. Самое лучшее, что вы можете сделать, – это поехать сейчас же на курорт.
7. Каждый вечер мистер Пеготти ставил свечу на подоконник, чтобы маленькая Эмили знала, что он ее ждет.
8. Дора сказала, что первое, что она должна сделать, – это дать Джипу хороший ужин.
9. Мне было очень сложно незаметно пройти в ее комнату и оставить записку.
10. Забор был слишком высок, чтобы он смог перелезть через него и попасть в сад.
11. Вы думаете, мне легко отказаться от этой мысли?
12. Вам вредно столько курить.
13. Не такая это игра, чтобы дети могли в нее играть.
14. Машина шла слишком быстро, чтобы я мог рассмотреть лицо водителя.
15. В пещере было так темно, что мы не смогли найти выход.

Ex. 8. Translate the sentences into English, using the for-to-Infinitive Construction.

1. Я залишила листи на столі, щоб містер Пітерс підписав їх.
2. Вам необхідно бути тут завтра о п'ятій годині.
3. Нам дуже важко зробити цю роботу за такий короткий термін.
4. Вам тут абсолютно нічого робити.
5. Їй дуже важко перекласти цю статтю без словника.
6. Зараз дуже пізно, щоб діти йшли гуляти.
7. Необхідно, щоб документи були відіслані завтра.
8. Дуже важливо, щоб він отримав ці документи завтра вранці.
9. Усе це настільки просто, що кожен може зробити це самостійно.
10. Йому буде простіше показати вам дорогу туди по мапі.
11. Сьогодні достатньо тепло, щоб хлопчик пішов до школи без пальто.
12. У мене дуже мало часу, щоб я встиг все тобі розповісти.

Ex. 9. Translate the sentences into English, using the for-to-Infinitive Construction.

1. У вас нет никаких оснований чувствовать себя обиженными.
2. Первое, что я должен сделать, – это позвонить другу и попросить у него совета.
3. Важно, чтобы в классной комнате было много света.
4. Он так заразительно смеялся, что нам трудно было не последовать его примеру.
5. Достаточно было намека, чтобы он все понял.
6. Не время нам сейчас ссориться.
7. Она сидела, прислушиваясь, не зазвонит ли телефон.
8. Нам необходимо было пройти еще километров сто, чтобы добраться до леса, где расположился наш лагерь.
9. Считаю, что нам совершенно нечего волноваться. Я уверен, что все будет организовано так, что мы получим необходимое оборудование без задержки.
10. Он сидел, ожидая, пока его друг заговорит.
11. Мама открыла дверь, чтобы я могла войти без стука.
12. Лучшее, что вы могли бы сейчас сделать, – это постараться забыть обо всех неприятностях.
13. Благодаря ранней весне в этом году оказалось возможным начать сельскохозяйственные работы значительно раньше.
14. Густой туман помешал самолету вылететь вовремя.
15. Из-за сильного шторма пароход не мог подойти к берегу.

Ex. 10. Translate the following into English using infinitive for- and of- phrases.

1. Мне было трудно их убедить.
2. Болезнь помешала ему воспользоваться этой возможностью.
3. Было бы лучше, если бы ему ничего не говорили.
4. Его присутствие позволило мне избежать ссоры.
5. Люси видела, что я был очень озабочен тем, чтобы она произвела хорошее впечатление.
6. Он искал спокойное место, где бы его семья могла отдохнуть.
7. Это был удобный для нее случай поговорить с ним наедине.
8. Я попросил разрешения, чтобы Том пожил у нас еще неделю.
9. Странно, что он написал такую статью.
10. Для меня большая честь познакомиться с таким человеком, как Джон Бейли.
11. Я плотно закрыл дверь, чтобы нам никто не мешал.
12. Очень мило с его стороны, что он интересуется моими делами.
13. Ему доставит удовольствие все подготовить к их приезду.
14. Им было бы жаль потратить столько усилий зря.
15. Очень предусмотрительно с вашей стороны, что вы пришли сегодня.
16. Мы все ждали, когда придет письмо.
17. Просто удивительно, как это Дэн нашел вас.
18. Мне очень хотелось, чтобы он скорее приступил к работе.
19. Для меня было облегчением уехать из дома.
20. Им было бы удобно не втягивать его в это дело.
21. Мы сочли неразумным с ее стороны уехать от нас, не сказав ни слова.

Revision Exercises on Infinitive Constructions

Ex. 1. Point out the Objective-with-the Infinitive Construction and the Subjective Infinitive Construction. Translate the sentences into Russian or Ukrainian.

1. The pills my doctor has given me make me feel rather odd.
2. I want you to say to yourself that he died a gallant death in the service of his country, and we must be proud of him.
3. She didn't seem to notice his unfriendly tone.
4. I had seen my father leave the house that very morning.
5. Just as he was falling into unconsciousness he heard his door open and quickly shut.
6. Lady Franklin seemed to expect an answer.
7. George was sure that fresh air and exercise would make us sleep well.

8. I've never seen a chap spend so much time on radiograms.
9. I thought it to be the signal to start.
10. We didn't expect him to come back so soon and were wondering what had happened.
11. I looked at the house with suspicious curiosity, and it seemed to be looking back at me.
12. She felt somebody touch her gently by the hand.
13. I'd like it to be done as quietly as possible, without attracting anybody's attention.
14. The boy was made to repeat his story twice.
15. The number to which I had been directed turned out to be a house standing a little by itself, with its back to the river.
16. "He appears to be asleep, my lady," said the butler.
17. Professor Lee was expected to join the expedition in North Africa, but he had fallen ill.
18. He was heard to say that it would rain and ordered the door to the balcony to be shut.
19. He is said to have been a sailor in his youth.
20. You're not likely to keep us company, Jim, are you?

Ex. 2. Translate the sentences paying attention to the Objective-with-the Infinitive Construction and the Subjective Infinitive Construction.

1. All product prices are expected to be raised due to the new tax.
2. I happen to be pretty comfortably placed.
3. He is thought to be lucky to have gone as far as this.
4. I happen to know that he was supposed to come to the wedding.
5. They hardly expect him to recover consciousness.
6. Economists consider an alternative to finding a job to be provided by unemployment benefits.
7. In many less developed countries, most food has been found to be produced within the family.
8. Every firm is known to have tried to reduce the use of oil-based products in the 1970s when the price of oil increased six times.
9. Nationalized industries are said to have become the most important source of national income.
10. Advertising is assumed to have been made the most important tool of selling commodities.
11. Economists believe the US grain market to have been strongly affected by government agricultural policies and by competition inside and outside the country.
12. We know the government to be considering the necessity of cutting taxes in industry.

13. The population of Russia has been found to be decreasing at a rapid rate.
14. Chemical firms are known to be working at substitutes for oil inputs.
15. Her heart sank, she felt on a sudden a cold chill pass through limbs and she shivered.

Ex. 3. Translate the sentences into English, using the Objective-with-the Infinitive Construction or the Subjective Infinitive Construction.

1. Его заставили обратиться к врачу.
2. Оказывается, он ничего об этом не слышал.
3. Кажется, вы расстроены. Что-нибудь случилось?
4. Я никогда не видела, как танцует Джейн Бак.
5. Я спала и не слышала, как они ушли.
6. Родители всегда хотят, чтобы их дети выросли честными людьми.
7. Я считаю, что это было несправедливо с вашей стороны.
8. Кто позволил вам распоряжаться моими вещами?
9. Он почувствовал, как силы возвращаются к нему.
10. Ничто не могло заставить его изменить принятое решение.
11. Ожидается, что зима в этом году будет суровая.
12. Они наверняка поженятся.
13. Я случайно услышала последнюю фразу, сказанную вами.
14. Я хочу, чтобы мы все встретились еще раз.
15. Она почувствовала, что кто-то дотронулся до ее плеча.
16. Она внимательно наблюдала за тем, как прыгают другие гимнастки.
18. Не позволяйте детям играть со спичками.
19. Оказалось, что мы уже знакомы.
20. Она побледнела, и я почувствовала, как она вздрогнула.

Ex. 4. Translate the sentences into English, using the Objective-with-the Infinitive Construction or the Subjective Infinitive Construction.

1. Никто никогда не предполагал, что он сделает такую головокружительную карьеру.
2. Полицейский наблюдал, как дети перешли улицу и остановились у витрины магазина игрушек.
3. Мы слышали, что он все-таки женился, но не на Синди.
4. Участники забастовки хотели, чтобы правительство выплатило им все долги.
5. Мы заставили его принять наше приглашение.
6. Мы случайно узнали, что Дэвид сейчас в городе.
7. Он наверняка сделает ей предложение перед своей командировкой.
8. Ответ Чарльза заставил всех вздрогнуть.

9. Секретарша заметила, как директор взял факс со стола, прочитал его, нахмурился и поднял трубку телефона.

10. Говорят, что эта книга переведена на многие языки.

11. Ваш приятель, кажется, интересуется историей Древнего Египта.

12. Вальтер Скотт считается создателем исторического романа.

13. Стюардесса извинилась и сказала, что она не может разрешить мне пересесть.

14. Шаги на лестнице заставили его повернуть голову и прислушаться.

15. Сообщают, что экспедиция успешно достигла места назначения.

16. Казалось, он смотрел не в ее глаза, а сквозь нее.

17. Наши родители всегда хотели, чтобы мы стали выдающимися учеными в сфере медицины.

18. Почему ты не можешь понять, что невозможно заставить человека делать то, что ему не свойственно?

19. Вряд ли вы успеете закончить вашу работу до назначенного срока.

20. Считается, что слоны очень миролюбивы, хотя также известно, что некоторые могут быть довольно агрессивными.

21. Полагают, что из-за пособий по безработице временная безработица превращается в постоянную.

Ex. 5. Translate the sentences, using the Objective-with-the Infinitive, the Subjective Infinitive or the for-to-Infinitive constructions.

1. Она ждала, пока откроют дверь.

2. Я видела, как дети бежали к реке.

3. Я хочу, чтобы вы перевели эту статью.

4. Она слышала, как кто-то вошел в комнату.

5. Ожидается, что они скоро приедут в Киев.

6. Предполагают, что конференция будет в конце месяца.

7. Я бы хотела, чтобы вы провели лето с нами.

8. Предполагается, что она будет играть главную роль в этой пьесе.

9. Ожидают, что погода изменится.

10. Я не имела в виду, чтобы вы заучивали этот текст наизусть.

11. Я подозреваю, что он взял мою книгу.

12. Мы ожидали, что делегация приедет в конце недели.

13. Я хочу, чтобы вы были более внимательны.

14. Ожидают, что книга будет напечатана в этом году.

15. Говорят, что она сделала очень хороший доклад на научной конференции.

16. Могу я положиться на то, что вы приедете вовремя?

17. Я знаю, что он написал очень хорошую статью в стенную газету.
18. Я заставила ее выучить это стихотворение наизусть.
19. Они ожидали, что мы примем участие в обсуждении.

Revision Exercises on the Infinitive

Ex. 1. Read, translate and comment on the forms and functions of the infinitives.

1. To sleep in such a place, he felt, would be madness.
2. Dick climbed to the top of a tall oak to look around on the snow-covered forest.
3. They began to run straight like deer and they were fast enough to be on time.
4. – Go on, my boy, I'm here to listen to you. – Well, I want to take my words back, sir. I'm sorry to have called you names.
5. Everybody resents him because he has so much money to throw around.
6. To exclude all possibility of mistakes it's necessary to do researches in this field as well.
7. I knew little about the man I was to defend and was reluctant to take up the case.
8. Gold and love affairs are hard to hide.
9. There is a time to fish and a time to dry nets.
10. I took the opportunity to speak to Pandora.
11. This joke made our guide smile for the first time.
12. I failed to see Caroline leave the house.
13. It was an extremely stupid thing to do, wasn't it?
14. To listen to Elton John is sheer delight.
15. People go to safari to watch wild animals in their natural habitat.
16. I went to the bathroom to cool down.
17. Need I say more? I'd better stop now not to cause any more trouble, to put it mildly.
18. To win the contest, Paul needed luck.
19. This table is very convenient to work at.
20. It is a great pleasure to accept you in my house.
21. The man is hard to deal with.
22. I have so many problems to consider.
23. He went to the Middle East to die of yellow fever.

Ex. 2. Paraphrase the following using infinitive in different functions.

1. He is proud that he is earning his living now.
2. I'm pleased that I have been of help to you.
3. There's nothing that you can do about it. It can't be helped.

4. She knows theatre so well that she can easily make a report on new trends in this field.
5. She is so ignorant that she is unlikely to catch the idea of the story.
6. Have you noticed how she flushed when you looked at her?
7. These are the medicines which will bring down the fever and will ease the pain in the side.
8. There was no reason why she should get excited over a little thing like that.
9. She was so puzzled that she couldn't utter a sound.
10. This is a flower that you can decorate your dress with.
11. She bought a pair of shoes on heavy soles so that she could wear in rainy weather.
12. I hate it when people interrupt me while I'm speaking.

Ex. 3. Translate the following sentences into English and define the functions of the infinitives.

1. Она хочет, чтобы вы забыли это.
2. Ей бы хотелось, чтобы ее сын стал известным писателем.
3. Кэйт хочет, чтобы о ее младшем брате позаботились.
4. Пусть он вызовет полицию и сообщит все детали.
5. Распорядитесь, чтобы кто-нибудь позвонил ему и сообщил о деловой встрече.
6. Проследите, чтобы эти статьи перевели на немецкий язык.
7. Что заставило вас задать этот вопрос? Он вывел ее из себя.
8. Он не разрешает пользоваться своим компьютером. Он считает, что это не очень удобно для него.
9. Прикажите убрать отсюда эти стулья. Они мешают студентам проходить в актовый зал.
10. Не смешите нас. Вы заставляете нас плакать от смеха.
11. Кто разрешил изменить заглавие статьи? Я не разрешаю что-либо изменять.
12. Все ожидали, что он отпразднует это событие.
13. Я считаю, что он самый лучший оперный певец из ныне живущих.
14. Она не слышала, как звонил телефон. Возможно, она спала.
15. Кто-нибудь из вас видел, как он вышел из банка?
16. Туристы слишком устали, чтобы продолжать путь. Им пришлось заночевать в лесу.
17. Лектор остановился, чтобы собраться с мыслями.
18. Его чрезмерная любезность заставила меня почувствовать себя неловко.
19. Я почувствовала, как кто-то положил мне руку на плечо, и вздрогнула от неожиданности.
20. Она с сожалением поняла, что ничего нельзя было сделать.

Ex. 4. Translate these sentences into English, paying attention to the form of the infinitive.

1. Она пожалела, что не предупредила родителей о том, что задерживается.

2. Я была довольна, что посмотрела балет С. Прокофьева «Ромео и Джульетта» в исполнении молодых артистов балета в нашем театре оперы и балета.

3. Дети моего старшего брата были счастливы, что их взяли в цирк.

4. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы эту книгу переиздали.

5. Не может быть, чтобы они все еще сидели в читальном зале. Наверное, они уже ушли.

6. Она, должно быть, все еще гостит у своих друзей на даче.

7. Неужели она на вас рассердилась?

8. Как мне повезло, что я побывала на их концерте.

9. Посмотрите на него! Он наверняка решает какую-нибудь важную задачу.

10. Вряд ли они запомнили мой адрес. Они случайно заходили ко мне как-то вместе с моей сестрой.

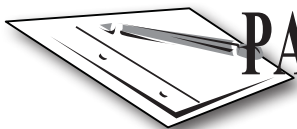
11. Кажется, они живут здесь уже много лет.

12. Об этом печальном событии не следует упоминать в ее присутствии. Она может разволноваться, а у нее больное сердце.

13. Он, должно быть, принимает сейчас душ. Я слышу, как вода бежит в ванной.

14. Кажется, они ждут, чтобы им дали необходимые указания, связанные с выполнением этого задания.

15. Он терпеть не может, когда его прерывают во время работы.



PART III

The Gerund

9. GRAMMATICAL MEANING OF THE GERUND

9.1. The gerund is a non-finite form of the verb with some noun features. It is formed by adding the suffix *-ing* to the stem of the verb and coincides in form with Participle I.

9.2. The grammatical meaning of the gerund is that of a process. Thus to some extent it competes with nouns of verbal origin:

describing – description

translating – translation

helping – help

Gerund

1. You will enrich your vocabulary by translating from English into Russian and vice versa.

2. *Thank you for helping me.*

Gerunds convey the idea of action or process itself.

Noun

1. *I can show you my translation. I hope I don't have any mistakes in it.*

2. *Thank you for your help.*

Nouns tend to convey the fact or the result of an action.

10. FEATURES AND FORMS OF THE GERUND

10.1. The gerund has verbal and nominal features.

The verbal features of the gerund can be observed in:

1. its combinability:

a) the gerund of transitive verbs can take a direct object:

• *He has made progress in understanding and speaking English.*

b) the gerund takes a predicative if it is a link verb:

• *John dreams of becoming a sailor.*

c) the gerund can be modified by adverbs:

• *She burst out crying bitterly.*

2. Besides, the gerund has the verbal categories of voice and perfect:
The Forms of the Gerund

Perfect	Voice	
	Active	Passive
Simple	writing	being written
Perfect	having written	having been written

Intransitive verbs (for example, *to run*) cannot form the passive voice.
The forms of the gerund have the following names:

The Simple Active Gerund – writing,

The Simple Passive Gerund – being written,

The Perfect Active Gerund – having written,

The Perfect Passive Gerund – having been written.

10.2. The Usage of Forms

The Simple Gerund denotes an action simultaneous with that of the predicate.

- *Students improve their pronunciation*
 - *He improved his pronunciation*
 - *You will improve your pronunciation*
- } *by listening to tape recordings.*

The Perfect Gerund denotes an action prior to that of the predicate.

• *He is proud of having won the first prize.* – *Он гордится тем, что получил первую премию.*

• *They accused him of having lied.* – *Они обвинили его в том, что он солгал.*

- *I regret*
 - *I regretted*
 - *I will always regret*
- } *having uttered these words.*

Note 1: A prior action is not always expressed by a Perfect Gerund; in some cases we find a Simple Gerund. This occurs after the verbs *to remember*, *to excuse*, *to forgive*, *to thank* and after the prepositions *on (upon)*, *after* and *without*.

• *I don't remember hearing the legend before.* – *Я не помню, чтобы я когда-нибудь слышала эту легенду.*

• *You must excuse my not answering you before.* – *Вы должны извинить меня за то, что я не ответил вам раньше.*

• *On leaving the house we directed our steps to the nearest shade.* – *Выйдя из дома, мы направились в тень.*

- *After walking about ten yards, he found the hat among the leaves. – Пройдя ярдов десять, он нашел шляпу в кустах.*

But the Perfect Gerund may also be used after the above mentioned verbs and prepositions.

The Category of Voice

Like other verbs forms, the active gerund points out that the action is directed from the subject, whereas the passive gerund indicates that the action is directed towards the subject.

Active	Passive
1. I hate <u>interrupting</u> people. – Терпеть не могу прерывать людей.	1. I hate <u>being interrupted</u> . – Терпеть не могу, когда меня прерывают.
2. I'm not used to <u>talking</u> in that way. – Я не привык так разговаривать.	2. I'm not used to <u>being talked to</u> in that way. – Я не привык, чтобы со мной так разговаривали.
3. He entered without <u>having knocked</u> on the door. – Он вошел, не постучав в дверь.	3. The door opened without <u>having been knocked</u> on. – Дверь открылась без стука.

The perfect passive gerund is very rarely used.

Note 2: After the verbs *to need, to want, to require, to deserve* and the adjective *worth* the gerund is used in the active form, though it is passive in meaning.

- *Your hair needs cutting.* – *Ваши волосы нужно подстричь.*
- *This house wants painting.* – *Этот дом нуждается в покраске (нужно покрасить).*
- *These bags require drying.* – *Эти мешки нужно просушить.*
- *I don't think this article deserves reading.* – *Думаю, эту статью не стоит читать.*
- *Your suggestion is worth talking over.* – *Ваше предложение стоит обсудить.*

10.3. The nominal features of the gerund are mainly revealed in its syntactical functions, partly in its combinability:

a) Like a noun, the gerund can function as subject, object, or predicative.

- *Doing sports is useful for health.* (Subject)
- *She likes making people happy.* (Object)
- *My hobby is playing the guitar.* (Predicative)

b) The gerund, like a noun, can be preceded by a preposition.

- *He is very, very tired of rowing.*
- *Don't forget to call me up before leaving London.*
- *I insist on going there now.*

c) Like a noun, the gerund can be modified by a noun in the possessive case or by a possessive pronoun.

• *I insist on John's staying with us. – Я настаиваю на том, чтобы Джон остался с нами.*

• *Do you mind our being present? – Вы не возражаете против того, чтобы мы присутствовали / против нашего присутствия?*

10.4. The combination of a noun or a pronoun with a gerund makes **the gerundial predicative construction**. The noun (in the possessive or common case) or the pronoun (a possessive pronoun or a personal pronoun in the objective case) denotes the doer of the action expressed by the gerund.

A gerundial construction is nearly always rendered in Russian by a clause introduced by «то, что» / «тем, что» / «как».

• *We were against Mr. Bond's / Mr. Bond going to Italy. – Мы возражали против того, чтобы мистер Бонд ехал в Италию.*

• *We were against his / him going to Italy. – Мы возражали против того, чтобы он ехал в Италию.*

• *I resented Peter's / Peter winning the prize. – Мы были возмущены тем, что Питер выиграл приз.*

• *Mary recalled his / him buying the book. – Мери вспомнила, как он купил книгу.*

In Modern English the structures with the possessive case of nouns and the possessive pronouns are considered more formal.

Possessive forms are not used when the nominal element denotes an animal, a lifeless thing, or when it is complex.

• *I remember the horse winning the race.*

• *The lower part of the town was under water owing to the river having overflowed.*

• *I object to Edward and Nathan leaving the place today.*

• *I insist on both of them coming in time.*

Practice

Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian or Russian and comment on the form of the gerund.

1. I hate interrupting people.
2. I hate being interrupted.
3. Betty hates disturbing people.
4. George hates being disturbed when he is watching TV.
5. Lawrence is against sending them the document.
6. Lawrence is against being sent to Belgium.
7. William likes reading detective stories.
8. William likes being read to.
9. Philip mentioned visiting them from time to time.
10. Philip mentioned having been visited by a stranger.
11. Charles denies knowing these people.
12. Charles denies being helped.
13. Charles denies having been helped.
14. Douglas denied having seen the man before.
15. Albert must be proud of having a friend like you.
16. Albert must be proud of having won the prize.
17. Don't leave without speaking to the chief.
18. Don't begin eating without waiting for the others to come.

Ex. 2. Open the brackets using the gerund.

MODEL: *His hair is very long, it needs **cutting**.*

1. This shirt is quite clean; it doesn't want (wash) yet. 2. The grass in the garden is very dry; it wants (water) badly. 3. The baby's crying; I think he needs (feed). 4. The house is old, and it badly wants (paint). 5. The windows are very dirty; they need (clean). 6. I know my hair wants (cut) but I never have time to go to the hairdresser's. 7. I'd consider the plan if I were you. The plan is worth (consider). 8. Her shoes have a hole in them; they want (mend). 9. The floor is covered with dust; it needs (sweep). 10. You should tidy the room. – Yes, it needs (tidy). The flowers want (water), and the shelves want (dust). 11. I wouldn't keep these old clothes if I were you. They aren't worth (keep).

Ex. 3. Use the gerund of the verb in the active or passive voice (simple form).

1. Why do you avoid (to see) me?
2. He tried to avoid (to see).
3. We insist on (to send) him there at once.

4. He insists on (to send) there instead of me.
5. Do you mind (to examine) the first?
6. He showed no sign of (to know) them.
7. She showed no sign of (to impress).
8. He had the most irritating habit of (to joke) at the wrong moment.
9. I was annoyed at (to interrupt) every other moment.
10. He hated (to remind) people of their duties or (to remind) of his.
11. On (to introduce) they easily fell to (to talk).
12. In (to discuss) the problem they touched upon some interesting items.
13. The matter is not worth (to speak of).
14. The equipment must go through a number of tests before (to install).
15. The operator can set the machine in motion by (to push) the button or (to press) the pedal.
16. The water requires (to filter).

Ex. 4. Comment on the form of the gerund and paraphrase simple sentences with the gerund into complex sentences with subordinate object clauses.

MODEL: *He mentioned **having apologized** to John. – He mentioned **that he had apologized** to John.*

*In reviewing the vocabulary pay attention to the words which require the gerund. – **When you review** the vocabulary, pay attention to the words which require the gerund.*

1. Jean often mentions knowing Mr. Anderson.
2. Jean seldom mentioned having stayed with the Edens in 1995.
3. Helen is surprised at being treated like that.
4. Helen was surprised at being laughed at.
5. Walter denied having asked any questions.
6. Walter denied having been threatened.
7. Ann didn't doubt his having been admitted to college.
8. William was proud of being spoken of as a promising painter.
9. William was proud of having seen Roger.
10. Edward mentioned having been asked not to throw away the document.
11. Before defending him find out if he is really not to blame.
12. After making a few more experiments Professor Eden drew some new conclusions.
13. At hearing his name mentioned he turned round.
14. In drawing up the plan don't forget to mention this point.
15. On completing the work Mr. Eden took a long holiday.
16. In looking through the newspapers the other day I came across a most interesting article.

Ex. 5. Fill in the gaps with the proper form of the words in brackets. If possible, give two variants.

1. I really hate _____ having to be away from home so much. (you)
2. We don't approve of _____ locating the factory so close to houses. (the developer)
3. I have always detested _____ jumping up at me when I come home. (the dog)
4. No one in the crowd that day will forget _____ fighting so hard to win the match. (Robert)
5. I remember _____ arguing a great deal when they were children. (Jane and Mary)
6. I'm surprised at _____ making the mistake. (he)
7. It is difficult to imagine _____ accepting the decision without any objection. (she)
8. Listen to those kids! Fancy _____ being able to speak Spanish as well as that! (they)
9. I can't imagine _____ approving of what you are doing! (your mother)
10. Please excuse _____ not writing to you. (I)

11. THE SYNTACTICAL FUNCTIONS OF THE GERUND

11.1. The Gerund as Subject

As a rule the gerund as subject stands in front position. It can be translated into Russian or Ukrainian as a noun or as an infinitive.

- *Doing is better than saying.* – *Сделать – это лучше, чем сказать.*
- *Defining problems precisely requires patience.* – *Точное определение задач требует терпения.*
- *Giving several viewpoints is vital.* – *Чрезвычайно важно иметь (получить) несколько точек зрения.*

The subject stands in post-position in sentences opening with the introductory *it*, which happens when the meaning of the subject is accentuated and the predicate is a phrase such as *to be (of) no use / no good / useless, to make all the (no) difference.*

- (it makes all the difference... – это существенно меняет дело)
- *It's very nice being read to.* – *Приятно, когда вам читают вслух.*
- *If you want me to help, it's no good beating about the bush.* – *Если вы хотите, чтобы я помог, не годится (какой смысл, бесполезно) ходить вокруг да около.*

In sentences with the introductory *there* the gerund is preceded by the negative pronoun *no*. Such sentences are usually emphatic.

- *Well, there's no avoiding it now.* – *Этого теперь нельзя избежать.*
- *There is no accounting for his strange behaviour.* – *Его странному поведению нет объяснения.*
- *There is no denying that this is an important event.* – *Несомненно, это очень важное событие.*

Practice

Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian or Russian, comment on the form and say whether the Gerund is in front position or in postposition.

1. Smoking so much is bad for you.
2. It's no use talking. We've got to act.
3. Nick's having forgotten to leave a message made me very angry.
4. Tom's taking the medicine obediently surprised Aunt Polly.
5. His knowing English will help him in his work.
6. He is stubborn. There is no stopping him.
7. Being able to read rapidly to oneself is an essential skill for all students.
8. If your going there is a question of money, I might help you.

Ex. 2. Paraphrase the following sentences beginning with *The fact that...*

MODEL: *John's having denied it was unexpected.*

– *The fact that John denied it was unexpected.*

1. Your threatening them made them angry.
2. Walter's having given up the job disappointed us.
3. His making this statement was welcomed by all those present.
4. The President's refusing to take steps aroused everybody's indignation.
5. The papers' not commenting on the event was most surprising.
6. Their exchanging delegations is most important for establishing friendly relations.

Ex. 3. Change the structure of the sentences so as to use the construction *there is no + gerund*.

1. Once he started talking on his favourite subject, nothing would stop him.
2. No one would have denied the strength of the argument.
3. You can never tell what he may do next.

4. When they are together they must quarrel, and it is impossible to avoid it.
5. She is so unbalanced. It is hardly possible to account for her moods.
6. The old man is very shrewd. You won't deceive him.
7. He is too stubborn. Don't even try to persuade him.
8. He was ready to gratify her every wish, but she was not to be easily satisfied.

11.3. The Gerund as Part of the Predicate

The gerund is used in compound predicates of both types – verbal and nominal.

1) part of the compound nominal predicate (predicative).

- *His hobby is collecting stamps.* – *Его любимое занятие – коллекционирование марок.*
- *I'm against accepting the plan.* – *Я против того, чтобы принимать этот план.*
- *We are for joining them.* – *Мы за то, чтобы присоединиться к ним.*
- *The negotiations are still far from being ended.* – *Переговоры еще отнюдь не закончены.*

2) part of the compound verbal phasal predicate.

In this function the gerund is used after the verbs:

- to begin, to start – начинать
- to continue, to go on – продолжать
- to keep (on) – продолжать
- to carry on – продолжать
- to finish – заканчивать
- to give up – переставать; отказываться от
- to stop – прекращать
- to burst out – разразиться
- to cease – прекращать, переставать
- to leave off – прекращать, переставать

- *They started arguing.* – *Они начали спорить.*
- *He finished reading.* – *Он окончил читать.*
- *She went on / kept on asking questions.* – *Она продолжала задавать вопросы.*
- *They all burst out laughing at the expression on her face.* – *Все они рассмеялись, увидев ее выражение лица.*

• *The company ceased trading at 6 pm today.* – *Компания прекратила торговлю сегодня в 6 часов вечера.*

• *Leave off shouting! I can't hear myself think in here.* – *Прекрати кричать! Я не слышу собственных мыслей.*

In combination with such adjectives as *worth* (стоящий) and *busy* (занятый) the gerund forms a compound verbal predicate.

• *These goods are worth buying.* – *Эти товары стоит купить.*

• *When I entered the room, he was busy translating an article.* – *Когда я вошел в комнату, он был занят переводом статьи.*

Practice

Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences, comment on the form and the function of the gerund.

1. I am all for discussing it at once.
2. The head of the delegation was against the agreement being signed.
3. What is worth doing is worth doing well.
4. These words are not worth remembering.
5. Such people are not worth speaking about.
6. Her favourite pastime is interfering in other people's affairs.
7. I couldn't help telling Walter about it.
8. Reading Agatha Christie is the nation's favourite pastime.
9. Who was against the negotiations being held at the end of the month?
10. Go on reading.
11. He kept on speaking though nobody was listening to him any longer.
12. He kept smiling.

Ex. 2. Paraphrase the sentences using the gerund.

MODEL: *I don't want (you) to go there.*

I am against (you/your) going there.

1. I don't want to raise the question. I am against ...
2. I don't want you to raise the question. I am against
3. We don't want to speak about it at the party. We are against ...
5. Dr. Hunter doesn't advise me to take the treatment. Dr. Hunter is against ...
6. John doesn't want Mary to join us. John is against....

Ex. 3. Translate the following sentences into English using the gerund, comment on its form and function.

1. Я против того, чтобы упоминать об этом факте.
2. Я против того, чтобы он упоминал об этом факте.
3. Я против того, чтобы говорить об этом в его присутствии.
4. Я против того, чтобы вы говорили об этом в его присутствии.
5. Дональд против того, чтобы объявлять об этом всем.
6. Дональд против того, чтобы мы объявляли об этом всем.
7. Мы против того, чтобы Гарри обратился к нему за разрешением.
8. Мы против того, чтобы обращаться за разрешением сейчас.
9. Роберт возражает против того, чтобы мы поддержали их.
10. Роберт возражает против того, чтобы поддерживать их.

Ex. 4. Complete the sentences using the gerund. Define the form and the function of the gerund.

1. Advise you to read the book. The book is worth...
2. Go and see the film. The film is worth...
3. That's a good song. Let's listen to it. The song is worth...
4. It isn't important, you needn't argue about it. It isn't worth...
5. Mention this fact by all means. The fact is worth...
6. Don't worry about it. It is not worth...
7. Don't quote this man. He is not worth...
8. Remember his words. What he says is worth...

Ex. 5. Complete the sentences using the gerund. Define the form and the function of the gerund.

1. Has it stopped ... ?
2. We must go on
3. The guide began
4. The doctor continued
5. When will you finish ... ?
6. When the motors ceased
7. Before the band started
8. The boy kept on

Ex. 6. Complete the following, using gerunds as subject or predicative (use the verbs given in bold type in the sentences in brackets).

1. (Why **go** into every detail?) I think it's no use
2. (Did he realize what risk he **was running** when he **tried** to land the plane on such a small clearing in the wood?) He knew only too well that ... was ... , but there was no alternative.
3. (Now you **keep** strict hours of meals.) ... must do you a lot of good.

4. (The children **watched** the monkeys go through different tricks.) It was such fun ...

5. (We couldn't **get in** that night.) all tickets were sold out, there was no ...

6. (I see you are going **to assemble** your bicycle.) Is it worth while ... so long before the beginning of the season?

7. (It was so pleasant **to be** free and alone.) What I enjoyed most in that quiet corner after the noise of the city and the strain of the last two month was ...

8. (The boy **cried** over the broken toy.) "Is it any good ...?" the mother said to the child. "Tears are no help in sorrow."

9. (I didn't expect **to find** you there.) It was quite unexpected ...

10. (You **distort** facts and **turn** things upside down.) This is ..., it is ...

11. (He liked **to collect** postage stamps.) a) ... was a hobby with him.
b) His hobby was ...

12. (When one **reads** without paying attention to the language, one **robs** oneself of great intellectual pleasure.) ... is ...

Ex. 7. Translate into English, using the gerund:

a) as subject or predicative.

1. Бесплезно звонить ему; его в это время никогда не бывает дома.

2. Сон на открытом воздухе очень полезен.

3. Он не только хороший певец, но и прекрасный актер; его стоит послушать в опере.

4. Нет смысла делать перерыв, нам всего на полчаса работы.

5. Переходить реку в этом месте опасно.

6. Когда после долгого подъема достигаешь вершины горы, испытываешь чувство необычайного удовлетворения.

7. Спорить с ним – это только понапрасну терять время.

8. Так приятно встречаться со старыми друзьями!

9. Слушать его рассказы – это еще раз переживать волнующие события тех дней.

10. Я не вижу в этом логики; по-моему, это все равно, что ставить телегу впереди лошади.

b) as part of a compound verbal predicate.

1. Когда вы закончите одеваться? Ведь мы можем опоздать.

2. Дождь пошел как раз, когда мы выходили из дому.

3. Клайд продолжал лгать матери, говоря, что у него мало денег, хотя он знал, как она нуждалась в его помощи.

4. После ухода миссис Чивли, Мейсон стал тушить свечи в гостиной.

5. Услышав кашель Сэма, мистер Потт перестал читать газету и посмотрел в его сторону.

11.4. The Gerund as a Direct Object

The gerund can be used as a direct or a prepositional object. As a direct object it follows a number of verbs, some of which take only the gerund, while others may be followed either by the gerund or by the infinitive.

<i>admit</i>	<i>detest</i>	<i>involve</i>	<i>regret</i>
<i>adore</i>	<i>endure</i>	<i>mention</i>	<i>report</i>
<i>appreciate</i>	<i>enjoy</i>	<i>mind</i>	<i>resent</i>
<i>anticipate</i>	<i>escape</i>	<i>miss</i>	<i>resist</i>
<i>avoid</i>	<i>excuse</i>	<i>postpone</i>	<i>risk</i>
<i>contemplate</i>	<i>face</i>	<i>practice</i>	<i>suggest</i>
<i>consider</i>	<i>forgive</i>	<i>put off</i>	<i>understand</i>
<i>deny</i>	<i>imagine</i>	<i>recall</i>	<i>can't help</i>
<i>delay</i>	<i>intend</i>	<i>recollect</i>	<i>can't stand</i>

• *I really appreciate having time to relax.* – Я действительно рада, что есть время расслабиться.

• *Excuse my interrupting you.* – Извините, что я прервал вас.

• *Nobody risked asking the question.* – Никто не решился задать этот вопрос.

• *Avoid catching cold.* – Избегайте простуды.

• *I recollect seeing Ryder some years ago in Bonn.* – Я вспоминаю, что видел Райдера несколько лет назад в Бонне.

• *I don't recall ever meeting her.* – Я не припоминаю, чтобы когда-нибудь встречал ее.

• *I couldn't help laughing.* – Я не мог не засмеяться.

• *I can't stand Marty coming home late all the time.* – Я не выношу, что Марти все время поздно приходит домой.

Practice

Ex. 1. Translate the sentences, comment on the form and function of the gerund.

1. Do you mind my interfering in your talk?
2. Mr. Stiles mentioned having made some experiments in chemistry.
3. I don't mind raising the question.
4. George hates treating people like that.
5. Lawrence can't stand being shouted at.
6. Everybody likes being liked.
7. The flowers want watering.

8. Your shoes need polishing.
9. The house needs painting.
10. Why risk being killed?
11. Avoid being worried and worrying others.
12. I enjoyed talking to Mr. Main.
13. Excuse my dwelling on it in detail but I'd like you to know everything.
14. Why did you give up trying?

Ex. 2. Translate into English, comment on the form and function of the gerund.

1. Фрэнк Свейн не перестал учить старика.
2. Избегайте упоминать это имя.
3. Ваше пальто нуждается в чистке.
4. Мы не решились задать ему этот вопрос.
5. Извините, что я вмешиваюсь в ваш разговор.
6. Не рискуйте касаться этой проблемы.
7. Вы не возражаете, если я приглашу Дору, не правда ли?
8. Он не возражает против того, чтобы работу выполнил какой-нибудь другой инженер.
9. Она не возражает против того, чтобы Дональд остался дома.
10. Я не мог избежать разговора с ней.
11. Я не отрицаю, что помогаю им.
12. Я не могу оправдать его работу на конкурирующую (rival) фирму.
13. Терпеть не могу ждать.
14. Стоит это читать?
16. Я ужасно не люблю тратить время зря.
17. Она ничего не имела против того, чтобы зайти еще раз.
18. Он избегал выражать свое мнение.

Ex. 3. Respond to the questions using the verbs in brackets.

1. What do you think? Should I try to pass my driving test again? (keep)
2. What shall I do? Shall I wait any longer before writing to them again? (suggest)
3. What does John say? Did he take the ledger from my desk drawer? (deny)
4. What should we do? Should we travel in this bad weather? (postpone)

Ex. 4. Complete the following, using gerunds.

1. Don't put off
2. You should avoid
3. He hates
4. The book (poem, picture, film, proverb) is worth
5. She does not seem to mind

6. I don't think he remembers
7. I don't regret
8. Do you intend ... ?
9. Everyone enjoyed
10. The car (stockings, house, shoes) wants (want)
11. They denied
12. The father suggested
13. He never mentioned
14. Just imagine

11.5. The Gerund as a Prepositional Object

I. The gerund can be used as a prepositional object after the following verbs:

<i>object</i>		<i>persist</i>	
<i>look forward</i>		<i>consist</i>	
<i>confess</i>		<i>succeed</i>	<i>in</i>
<i>admit</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>help</i>	
<i>restrict oneself</i>		<i>result</i>	
<i>agree</i>		<i>believe</i>	
<i>take</i>			
		<i>long</i>	
<i>hear</i>		<i>thank</i>	
<i>learn</i>		<i>blame</i>	
<i>accuse</i>		<i>praise</i>	
<i>suspect</i>	<i>of</i>	<i>punish</i>	<i>for</i>
<i>approve</i>		<i>reproach</i>	
<i>remind</i>		<i>sentence</i>	
<i>despair</i>		<i>apologize</i>	
		<i>forgive</i>	
<i>count</i>		<i>charge</i>	
<i>depend</i>		<i>threaten</i>	<i>with</i>
<i>rely</i>		<i>interfere</i>	
<i>insist</i>	<i>on</i>		
<i>plan</i>		<i>warn</i>	
<i>congratulate</i>		<i>advise</i>	<i>against</i>
<i>concentrate</i>		<i>campaign</i>	
<i>work</i>		<i>decide</i>	
<i>dream</i>		<i>prevent</i>	
<i>complain</i>		<i>stop</i>	<i>from</i>
<i>boast</i>	<i>of / about</i>	<i>discourage</i>	
<i>talk</i>		<i>profit</i>	
<i>think</i>			
<i>coax</i>		<i>feel</i>	<i>like</i>
<i>persuade</i>	<i>into / out of</i>		
<i>talk</i>			

• *We all agree to your opening the discussion.* – Мы все согласны на то, чтобы вы открыли дискуссию.

• *They object to his coming.* – Они возражают против того, чтобы он пришел.

• *Dad has taken to jogging every morning.* – Папа стал заниматься бегом по утрам.

• *I'm looking forward to your calling me.* – Я с нетерпением жду твоего звонка.

• *We were planning on just having a snack and catching the early train.* – Мы собирались только перекусить и сесть на утренний поезд.

• *He was accused of having broken the law.* – Его обвинили в том, что он нарушил закон.

• *Catherine's parents don't approve of her leaving school this year.* – Родители Кэтрин не одобряют, чтобы она ушла из школы в этом году.

• *We succeeded in obtaining satisfactory results.* – Нам удалось получить удовлетворительные результаты.

• *Happiness consists largely in having good friends.* – Счастье состоит преимущественно в наличии хороших друзей.

• *If you persist in causing trouble, the company may be forced to dismiss you.* – Если вы будете продолжать создавать проблемы, компания, возможно, будет вынуждена вас уволить.

• *He didn't feel like going to work.* – Ему не хотелось идти на работу.

II. As a prepositional object the gerund can be used after the following adjectives and participles:

to be afraid
to be aware
to be conscious
to be capable
to be fond

} **of**

to be ignorant
to be proud
to be sure
to be tired
to be guilty

} **of**

to be responsible **for**
to be keen **on**
to be intent **on**

to be absorbed
to be engrossed
to be interested
to be engaged

} **in**

to be accustomed
to be used
be addicted

} **to**

to be pleased (**with**)
to be indignant
to be surprised
to be disappointed
to be good

} **at**

to be sorry
to be worried

} **about**

- *I'm afraid of being late.* – Я боюсь опоздать.
- *I was surprised at seeing her there.* – Я был удивлен, увидев её там.
- *I was disappointed at not finding them at home.* – Я был разочарован, что не застал их дома.
- *He was surprised at having been asked about it.* – Он был удивлен, что его спросили об этом.
- *He is proud of having won the first place in the chess tournament.* – Он гордится, что занял первое место в шахматном турнире.

Practice

Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian or Russian.

1. The boy was accused of betraying his friends.
2. We accused him of having betrayed our common cause.
3. We suspected her of giving us false information.
4. I don't approve of your supporting Walter.
5. Koppel disapproved of the old man devoting too much time to drawing.
6. Do you object to my quoting a passage from the book?
7. Nobody objected to a treaty being concluded.
8. Who's responsible for delivering the luggage?
9. I am looking forward to seeing Mrs. Eden.
10. We were surprised at the newspapers not commenting on the negotiations.
11. He approved of your joining us.
12. I insist on some steps being taken immediately.
13. They insisted on the document being signed.
14. Everybody was disappointed at the speaker not having dwelt on this subject in detail.
15. Both delegations were interested in a trade agreement being signed.
16. Philip got used to being treated like this.
17. I am used to William making fun of everything.
18. We got tired of listening to your complaints.
19. Did he apologize for having kept you waiting?

Ex. 2. Translate the sentences from English into Russian or Ukrainian. Define the functions of the gerund.

1. Could you please stop making so much noise?
2. I don't enjoy writing letters.
3. Does your work involve meeting a lot of people?
4. I considered taking the job but in the end I decided against it.

5. If you walk into the road without looking, you risk being knocked down by a car.
6. I don't fancy going out this evening.
7. The batteries of this radio need changing.
8. Do you think the grass needs cutting?
9. I wonder what prevented him from coming to the party.
10. Do you think this book is worth reading?
11. The arrested man was suspected of breaking into houses.
12. Have you ever thought of getting married?

Ex. 3. Replace the parts of the sentence or clauses by gerundial phrases.

MODEL: *She thought she would go to the country for the weekend.*
She thought of going to the country for the weekend.

1. I thought I would come and see you tomorrow.
2. I am thinking that I shall go out to the country tomorrow to see my mother.
3. What do you think you will do tomorrow? – I don't know now; I thought I would go to the zoo, but the weather is so bad that probably I shan't go.
4. I hear there are some English books at our university bookstall now. – So you are thinking that you will buy some, aren't you?
5. I thought I would work in the library this evening, but as you have come, I won't go to the library.
6. We were thinking we would plant roses this year.

Ex. 4. Complete the following, using gerunds as a prepositional object.

1. He never thought of
2. The boy is very clever at
3. I don't insist on
4. Does anyone object to ... ?
5. His friends accused him of
6. Children ought to be prevented from
7. I am not used to
8. Nobody suspected us of
9. He was quick in
10. Did he confess to ... ?
11. We were tired of
12. Why do you persist in ... ?
13. We are most grateful to our guide for
14. Who would have thought him capable of ... ?
15. Did you succeed in ... ?
16. I found them engaged in
17. Who is responsible for ... ?

Ex. 5. Translate the following into English using gerunds after the adjectives in brackets. Fill in prepositions where necessary.

1. Я гордился тем, что работал с ним тогда. (proud)
2. Я знал, что он не способен так поступить. (capable)

3. Доктор привык выслушивать всяких людей. (used)
4. Мне жаль, что я тогда причинил вам так много беспокойства. (sorry)
5. Я больше, чем ты, заинтересован в том, чтобы найти ее. (interested)
6. Я уверен, что ты вполне способен решить эту проблему. (capable)
7. Мне надоело пытаться делать то, что мне не нравится. (tired)
8. Мне жаль, что я заставляю Вас ждать. (sorry)
9. Я был немного разочарован тем, что не встретил Чарльза. (disappointed)
10. Я так довольна, что меня выбрали для выполнения этой миссии. (pleased)
11. Он отвечает за содержание сада и гаража в порядке. (responsible)
12. Он любил смеяться над теми, кто был робок. (fond)

Ex. 6. Translate the following into English using gerunds after the verbs in brackets. Fill in prepositions where necessary.

1. Я не виню тебя за то, что тебе так хочется уехать из города. (to blame)
2. Тогда я заподозрил его в том, что он меня дразнит. (to suspect)
3. Нам было не трудно работать вместе. (to have no difficulty)
4. Он настаивал на том, чтобы научить ее работать на компьютере. (to insist)
5. Не было ничего, что могло бы помешать ему вернуться в Лондон. (to prevent.)
6. Он извинился, что не пришел вовремя. (to apologize)
7. Мне удалось заставить Энн говорить. (to succeed)
8. Отец часто обвинял меня в том, что я отношусь к дому как к отелю. (to accuse)
9. Она настояла на том, чтобы заплатить за такси. (to insist)
10. Дэн уговорил Беллу остаться на обед. (to talk into)
11. Доктор начал с того, что пощупал его пульс. (to begin)
12. Он настоял на том, чтобы Анну немедленно пригласили сюда. (to insist)
13. Я спросил его, как ему нравится быть отцом. (to feel about)
14. Как ты объяснил покупку этого автомобиля? (to account)
15. Он упрекал себя за то, что не попытался поговорить с ней. (to reproach)

Ex. 7. Complete the following by translating what is given in brackets, using the gerund in the function of an object. Insert prepositions where necessary.

- a) 1. We hope he will succeed ... (найти свое место в жизни).
2. We counted ... (что застанем его на месте).
3. I can't recall ... (чтобы меня с ним когда-нибудь познакомили). I even don't remember ... (что видел его).
4. He couldn't get used ... (чтобы его называли дедушкой).
5. She was quite unconscious ... (что пришла в неудачный момент).
6. Excuse me ... (что я вошел не постучав).
7. I'm really ashamed ... (что так давно вам не писал).
8. He is upset ... (что ему приходится начинать все снова).
9. She denied ... (что обещала что-либо подобное).
10. Why do you avoid ... (называть вещи своими именами)?

- b) 1. From the age of four, I had been used to ... (делать все по-своему).
2. I was not used to ... (когда меня развлекают дамы (entertain)).
3. How proud I was of ... (что изобрел это замечательное устройство).
4. I was tired of always ... (носить чужую одежду).
5. In the morning she was ashamed of herself for ... (что была так груба вчера вечером).
6. He's merely used to ... (что за ним ухаживают).
7. He was grateful to Finch for ... (что уговорил его зайти).
8. But they are used to ... (иметь дело с настоящими бизнесменами (to deal)).
9. She wasn't fond of ... (задавать множество вопросов).
10. At the time I was very keen on ... (получить собственный доход).

Ex. 8. Use gerundial constructions instead of the subordinate clauses.

1. I remember that we met your brother in the Caucasus.
2. He suggested that we should start at once.
3. She quite understood that you disliked the idea of remaining in town the whole summer.
4. I propose that he shall do the work.
5. I prefer that you decide for yourself.
6. I insisted that he should come up with us.
7. He is responsible that the letter is delivered today.
8. We are frightfully keen that you should spend the summer with us.
9. He denied that I had seen him.
10. She disliked that I told her the truth.
11. I prefer that we should stay at home on such a rainy day.

12. He objected that we should start so early.
13. He acknowledged that they had made a mistake.
14. She decided that they would take the early train.
15. They admitted that he was wrong.
16. We insisted that the work should be done properly.
17. They agreed that he was a very brave man.
18. I am displeased that you have made that mistake.
19. I am uneasy that she does not come.
20. The doctor insisted that the patient should go to the south.
21. He wrote that she would arrive at the end of the month.

Ex. 9. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Он против того, чтобы приглашать Паркеров.
2. Он против того, чтобы вы приглашали Паркеров.
3. Он против того, чтобы были приглашены Паркеры.
4. Избегайте говорить с такими людьми.
5. Она не переставала брать уроки английского языка.
6. Они мечтают посетить Италию.
7. Он обвинил мисс Маргу в том, что она испортила чертеж его друга.
8. Эту книгу стоит прочесть.
9. Этот фильм не стоит смотреть.
10. Почему доктор не помешал Элсворту выставить свою картину?
11. Простите, что я опять напоминаю вам об этом.
12. Секретарь сейчас занята перепечаткой срочного материала.
Не позвоните ли вы минут через двадцать?
13. Не полагайтесь на то, что достанете билеты накануне; лучше закажите их заранее.
14. Все сердечно поздравляли спортсмена с установлением нового рекорда.
15. Мы очень благодарны вам, что вы избавили нас от стольких хлопот.
16. Я не привыкла, чтобы со мной так обращались.
17. Я не привыкла готовить себе завтрак.
18. Наконец мне удалось найти дорогу.
19. Он настаивал на том, чтобы оплатить счет за обед.
20. Мы извинились за опоздание.
21. Я думаю о поездке в Америку этим летом.
22. Он поблагодарил их за то, что его выслушали.
23. Мы рассчитываем закончить в срок.
24. Она настаивала, чтобы ей показали все.
25. Вы подозреваете, что я вам лгу?
26. Его обвинили в краже автомобиля.

Ex. 10. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Он расплакался.
2. Я не могу не любоваться этой чудесной картиной.
3. Мама возражает против того, что ты поздно приходишь домой.
4. Я одобряю вашу упорную работу.
5. Она отрицала, что помогла им.
6. Перестань дразнить кошку.
7. Я боюсь простудиться.
8. Если он будет намеренно стараться (упорствовать в попытках) причинять неприятности, его уволят с работы.
9. Я настаиваю на том, чтобы остаться в Санкт-Петербурге.
10. Он упрекает (обвиняет) тебя в том, что ты не пишешь ему письма.
11. Вы не возражаете, если я лягу спать?
12. Продолжайте делать уроки.
13. Она не поблагодарит тебя за то, что ты потерял работу.
14. Она собиралась помочь, но передумала.
15. Они с нетерпением ждут, когда увидятся со своими друзьями из Швейцарии.
16. Вам не хочется (Вы не расположены) сегодня вечером поиграть в теннис?

Ex. 11. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Он думал о том, чтобы поступить в университет.
2. Прекрати сердиться. Прости его за то, что он испортил вечер в твой день рождения.
3. Я не могу не чувствовать стыда.
4. Я поздравил своего друга со сдачей экзамена по вождению машины.
5. Продолжайте разговаривать.
6. Я настаиваю на том, чтобы сказать ему правду.
7. Они боялись опоздать на поезд.
8. Я не одобряю того, что ты играешь в компьютерные игры.
9. Мы оставили мысль о поездке за город.
10. Она бросила танцы в прошлом году.
11. Мама возражает против того, что я привожу в дом слишком много друзей.
12. Вы не возражаете, если я позвоню вам?
13. Ты обвиняешь меня в том, что я тебя обманула?
14. Студенты нашей группы с нетерпением ждут, когда совершат круиз (турне) по Европе на каникулах в этом году.
15. Его мама продолжает надеяться, что он скоро позвонит или напишет.
16. Что помешало ей прийти на его день рождения?

Ex. 12. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Дякую за вашу допомогу.
2. Вітаємо Вас із завершенням проекту.
3. Детектив боявся втратити підозрюваного з поля зору.
4. Треба покарати його за те, що розбив ніс хлопцю.
5. Ви наполягаєте, щоб я це все з'їв?
6. Ви звинувачуєте мене у намаганні підробити документи?
7. У старої ворожки добре виходило читати думки.
8. Я цікавлюся грою в шахи, але в мене погано виходить пояснювати правила.
9. Нам вдалося зробити неймовірне.
10. Пітер підозрював, що його діти щось накоїли, але не усвідомлював, що вони обманюють вже не вперше.

11.6. The Gerund as Attribute

When used as an attribute, the gerund modifies nouns, mainly abstract nouns. It is always preceded by a preposition.

The gerund as an attribute is often used after the following nouns:

hope	}	of	astonishment	}	at
importance			disappointment		
intention			surprise		
means			}	for	
method					apology
necessity					plan
pleasure					preparation
possibility			reason	}	in
problem			experience		
process			interest		
right			skill		
way			harm		
art			difficulty		
fear			}	to	
chance	objection				
opportunity					

- *What's the use of doing it?* – *Какой смысл это делать?*
- *He gave up the idea of becoming an actor.* – *Он отказался от мысли стать актером.*

- *There are different ways of solving this problem. – Имеются различные способы разрешения этой проблемы.*
- *We discussed different methods of teaching foreign languages. – Мы обсуждали различные методы преподавания иностранных языков.*
- *Have you got any reason for saying such a thing? – Есть ли у вас основание говорить такое?*
- *He has no objection to being sent there. – Он не возражает против того, чтобы его послали туда.*
- *There is no point in lying. I'll find out anyway. – Нет смысла врать. Я все равно узнаю.*
- *We were on the point of leaving when suddenly we heard a strange noise. – Мы уже собирались уходить, как вдруг услышали странный шум.*
- *I always make a point of introducing new members to the chairman. – Я считаю для себя обязательным представлять новых участников председателю.*

Practice

Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian or Russian, comment on the form and function of the gerund.

1. His habit of arguing over everything is most annoying.
2. I'm so sorry I missed the chance of visiting Greenwich.
3. What's the reason for Howard being so upset?
4. Everybody recognizes the importance of learning foreign languages.
5. There is every chance of another committee being set up.
6. Is there a probability of the negotiations being resumed?
7. There is very little hope of the troops being withdrawn from the country.
8. I didn't have much hope of his plan working.
9. I'll give myself the pleasure of kicking him downstairs and teach him manners to a lady.
10. We gave up all hope of ever seeing him again.
11. What's the use of arguing?
12. No doubt he could change his way of living if he only wanted to.

Ex. 2. Make up your own sentences.

I	gave up		becoming a lawyer
Donald	hates	the idea of	going to Ankara
Who	likes	the idea of	going out in such weather
	doesn't like	her/his/ our	taking a holiday in January
	suggested		spending the weekend at the Harwells'
			consulting Mr Howard

Ex. 3. Paraphrase the following sentences using the expression “I like the idea of doing something.”

MODEL: “I don’t want to go to Egypt”, said Lawrence.

Lawrence didn’t like the idea of going to Egypt.

1. “I don’t want to be treated by Doctor Howard”, she said.
2. “I wouldn’t like to come here again,” said Donald.
3. “I’m against Mr Carr being sent to Vienna,” he said.
4. “I don’t want to take a holiday in January”, said Howard.
5. “I don’t want to spend the weekend at the Harwells”, said John.

Ex. 4. Translate the following sentences into English using the model.

MODEL: *way / intention / purpose / difficulty of doing smth*

1. Это хороший способ уйти от ответа.
2. У него не было ни малейшего желания обманывать вас.
3. У меня и мысли не было разрешить ей остаться.
4. Он приехал сюда с целью помочь вам.
5. Наши шансы получить обед были очень малы.
6. Переходить реку не опасно.
7. Вреда в том не будет, если мы скажем ему.
8. У нее была привычка ложиться спать рано.
9. У меня не было возможности поговорить с ней об этом.
10. Не будет никакой трудности в том, чтобы найти место, где остановиться.

Ex. 5. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Его опыт вождения машины пригодится ему в будущей работе.
2. Он никак не мог свыкнуться с мыслью, что ему придется пробыть там еще полгода.
3. В такое время года есть только одна возможность добраться туда – это самолетом.
4. Он очень обрадовался перспективе поработать несколько лет под руководством такого известного ученого.
5. Представьте себе их восторг, когда они узнали, что он получил первую премию за свой проект.
6. Он пытался найти удобный предлог, чтобы уйти пораньше.
7. Истинная причина столь поспешного возвращения миссис Чивли в Лондон заключалась в ее личной заинтересованности в том, чтобы сэр Роберт снял свой доклад в парламенте. Она понимала, что только страх быть разоблаченным может заставить его согласиться на это.
8. Метод обучения мистера Броклхерста убивал у детей всякую инициативу и желание учиться.

Ex. 6. Fill in the blanks with prepositions.

- a) 1. She only succeeded ... blocking the way.
2. She showed no intention ... leaving.
3. There is no point ... staying.
4. He did not object ... being examined.
5. I was not used ... driving a big car through crowded streets.
6. She was surprisingly clever ... finding out things.
7. How can I prevent her ... going there?
8. I was thinking at the time ... selling the place.
9. After all I'm personally responsible ... bringing you back safe and sound.
10. They positively insisted ... visiting all the rooms.
11. What are your reasons to accuse her ... taking the papers?
12. Everything depends ... being on the spot.
13. I thanked him again ... lending me the car.

- b) 1. Jones insisted ... shaking hands.
2. I take all the blame ... not seeing further than my nose.
3. Unfortunately I haven't succeeded ... making much impression on you.
4. He made a point ... never sounding disappointed.
5. His mission had very little to do ... winning the war.
6. He had never had much difficulty ... getting jobs. The trouble had always been ... keeping them.
7. She thanked him ... taking her out.
8. He did not object ... seeing Francis.
9. I'll look forward ... seeing your book.
10. I thought ... taking a trip up the Scandinavian coast.
11. Jack hesitated, then decided ... talking.
12. Quite late, when he was on the point ... going upstairs, the door bell rang.
13. He put the note under a saucer on the table to keep it ... blowing away.

11.7. The Gerund as Adverbial Modifier

1) The gerund is used as an adverbial modifier **of time** after the prepositions **on, after, in, before, since, at**.

• *On finishing the translation he put it aside.* – Закончив перевод, он отложил его в сторону.

• *In doing the work we met with a lot of difficulties.* – Когда мы выполняли эту работу, мы столкнулись со многими трудностями.

• *After saying this he left the room.* – Сказав это, он вышел из комнаты.

• *Before being sent to the warehouse, the cases were counted and marked.* – Перед тем, как ящики отправили на склад, их пересчитали и пометили.

• *At hearing his name he turned round.* – Услышав свое имя, он обернулся.

2) The gerund is used as an adverbial modifier **of manner** after the prepositions **by, without, in.**

• *He improved his article by changing the end.* – Он улучшил статью, изменив конец.

• *She startled her father by bursting into tears.* – Она напугала своего отца тем, что расплакалась.

• *The day was spent in packing.* – День прошел за упаковкой вещей.

• *She dressed without making a sound.* – Она оделась молча.

3) The gerund is used as an adverbial modifier **of attendant circumstances** after the prepositions **besides, instead of, without, apart from.**

• *Besides being clever, he is very industrious.* – Кроме того, что он умен, он очень трудолюбив.

• *Instead of writing the letter himself, he asked his friend to do it.* – Вместо того, чтобы написать письмо самому, он попросил своего друга сделать это.

• *He left the room without waiting for a reply.* – Он вышел из комнаты, не ожидая ответа.

• *They danced without speaking.* – Они танцевали и не разговаривали.

• *Apart from being gentle, he was also very strong.* – Кроме того, что он был нежным, он также был очень сильным.

4) The gerund is used as an adverbial modifier **of purpose** after the prepositions **for, for the purpose of, with the object, with a view to** (с целью, для того, чтобы).

• *This commission has been established for the purpose of settling disputes between Ukrainian trading organizations and foreign firms.* – Эта комиссия была создана с целью разрешения споров между украинскими торговыми организациями и иностранными фирмами.

• *A British delegation arrived in Kyiv with the object of conducting trade negotiations.* – В Киев прибыла британская делегация для ведения торговых переговоров.

• *One side of the gallery was used for dancing.* – Одна сторона галереи использовалась для танцев.

5) The gerund is used as an adverbial modifier **of condition** after the prepositions **without, in case of, in the event of** (в случае если, при условии).

• *You will never speak good English without learning grammar. – Вы никогда не будете говорить хорошо по-английски, если не изучите грамматику (не изучив грамматику).*

6) The gerund is used as an adverbial modifier **of reason** after the prepositions **because of, for fear of, through, on account of**.

• *So you see I couldn't sleep for worrying. – Как ты понимаешь, я не мог уснуть из-за того, что волновался.*

• *We lost our way through not knowing the way. – Мы потерялись из-за того, что не знали дороги.*

• *They missed the train because of being late. – Мы не сели на поезд, потому что опоздали.*

7) The gerund can be used as an adverbial modifier **of concession** after the prepositions **in spite of, despite**.

• *In spite of her being very kind to us we decided to leave. – Несмотря на то, что она была очень добра к нам, мы решили уйти.*

Practice

Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian or Russian, comment on the form of the gerund and define its function.

1. Before reading the novel look through the preface.
2. You began the conversation by arguing.
3. How did you manage to leave without anybody seeing you?
4. He left without saying a word.
5. She went out without turning round.
6. Michael answered me without looking up.
7. He returned without anyone having noticed his absence.
8. Instead of buying a TV set with the money he saved, he went on a sightseeing tour abroad.
9. What have you been doing this week besides reading for your examinations?

Ex. 2. Make up your own sentences.

We learn to speak English We can't learn a foreign language only One learns to swim You won't change anything You won't achieve anything	by	speaking arguing reading swimming shouting
--	----	--

Ex. 3. Replace the phrases in bold type using the gerund after the preposition *WITHOUT*.

1. To surprise her, he booked a table at a restaurant and she didn't know.
2. He went into the house and no one heard him.
3. She left the meeting and the chairman didn't ask her any questions.
4. She sold her shares and none of us found out about this.
5. He changed the figures in his books and the manager didn't notice.

Ex. 4. Translate into English, comment on the form of the gerund, define its function.

1. Он ушел, не сказав ни слова.
2. Вместо того, чтобы спорить, вы бы лучше прочли документ.
3. Что вы делали вчера кроме чтения газет?
4. Вы не убедите меня тем, что будет повторять это снова.
5. Кроме того, что Элли талантлива, она еще и очень трудолюбива.
6. Как насчет того, чтобы пообедать где-нибудь в городе (dine out)?
7. Он работает без остановки целый день.
8. Ты ничего не добьешься, если будешь возражать.
9. Все это надо обсудить до того, как принимать решение.
10. Вы можете исправить фигуру, делая гимнастику.
11. Он даст ответ, посоветовавшись со своим юристом.
12. Он прошел мимо, не заметив нас.
13. Он упустил возможность поехать, потому что заболел.
14. Не делайте этого, не обдумав все, как следует.

Ex. 5. Replace the parts of the sentence or clauses by gerundial phrases.

MODEL: *When she had bought everything she needed, she went home.*
After buying everything she needed, she went home.

1. After she took the child to the kindergarten, she went to the library to prepare for her exam.
2. When he had made a thorough study of the subject, he found that it was a great deal more important than he had thought at first.
3. After I had hesitated some minutes whether to buy the hat or not, I finally decided that I might find one I liked better in another shop.
4. When she had graduated from the university, she left St. Petersburg and went to teach in her hometown.
5. When he had proved that his theory was correct, he started studying ways and means of improving the conditions of work in very deep coalmines.

Ex. 6. Complete the following, using gerunds as adverbial modifiers.

1. His outlook broadened after
2. In ... she missed a line.
3. She took far too much upon herself by
4. He produced his pass on
5. I don't want to raise false hopes by
6. You will have to take my words on faith before
7. He was so much irritated that on ... he banged down the receiver without
8. In ... the geological party struck upon a new oil deposit.
9. He could tell the funniest joke without
10. In spite of ... the sportsman pulled through to finish.
11. He was afraid he might upset all their plans by
12. But for ... the play wouldn't have enjoyed such popularity.
13. On ... the young man didn't trouble himself to reply.
14. Take your time before
15. On ... she suddenly felt her nerves were at breaking point.
16. The matter cannot be so easily dismissed without

Ex. 7. Translate into English, using gerunds as adverbial modifiers.

1. Он вышел из зала, не дожидаясь окончания спектакля.
2. Увидев приближающийся поезд, мы поспешили на платформу.
3. Просматривая журналы, он натолкнулся на очень интересную статью по экономике Англии.
4. Прежде чем писать об этих событиях, он решил съездить в те места, где они происходили.
5. Мы уговорили его прийти, сказав, что никого из посторонних не будет.
6. Проверя годовой отчет, бухгалтер обнаружил ошибку.
7. Он ушел, не сказав ни слова, даже не простившись.
8. Кто мне может сказать, куда ушел Андрей, закончив работу?
9. Не буду утомлять вас перечислением всех деталей.
10. Он выглядел бодрым и веселым, как всегда, несмотря на то, что провел бессонную ночь у постели больного.
11. Если бы он не был таким раздражительным, с ним было бы гораздо легче работать.
12. Вы бы меня очень обязали, если бы передали посылку по адресу.
13. Он начал с рассказа о том, как он попал сюда.
14. Увидев почтовый ящик, я остановился, вспомнив, что уже два дня ношу с собой письмо.
15. Услышав крик ребенка, мать вскочила и бросилась в детскую.
16. При объяснении этого физического явления преподаватель продемонстрировал несколько опытов.

Ex. 8. Supply gerund forms for the words in brackets, define their functions.

a.

1. The baby started crying when he woke up, and went on (cry) all the morning.
2. He didn't want to lose any more money, so he gave up (play) cards.
3. Imagine (keep) a snake as a pet!
4. Please go on (write); I don't mind (wait).
5. He offered to buy my old car, if I didn't mind (wait) a month for the money.
6. The taxi-driver tried to stop in time, but he couldn't avoid (hit) the old woman.
7. At first I enjoyed (listen) to him, but after a while I got tired of hearing the same story again and again.
8. My watch keeps (stop). – That's because you keep (forget) to wind it up.
9. I suggest (telephone) the hospitals before asking the police to look for him.

b.

1. Where is Ann? – She is busy (do) her homework.
2. Let's go for a swim. – What about (go) for a drive instead?
3. I intended to go to the cinema yesterday, but my friend told me the film wasn't worth (see).
4. Try to forget it; it isn't worth (worry) about.
5. When I came he was busy (write) a letter to his friend.
6. Do you feel like (go) to a film or shall we stay at home?
7. It's no use (have) a bicycle if you don't know how to ride it.
8. It's no use (ask) children to keep quiet. They can't help (make) noise.
9. Mr Shaw is very busy (write) his memoirs.
10. There are people who can't help (laugh) when they see someone slip on a banana skin.
11. I didn't feel like (work) so I suggested spending the day in the country.
12. What about (buy) double quantities of everything today?

c.

1. My father thinks I am not capable of (earn) my own living.
2. I am tired of (do) the same thing all the time.
3. I tried to convince him that I was perfectly capable of (manage) on my own, but he insisted on (help) me.
4. There was no way of (get) out of the building.
5. He didn't leave the house because he was afraid of (meet) someone who would recognize him.
6. I called at his house on the off chance of (see) him.
7. There is no point in (remain) in a dangerous place if you can't do anything to help the people.

8. What's your idea of (do) it?
9. He expects me to answer in return but I have no intention of (reply) at all.
10. I'm not used to (drive) on the left.
11. I want to catch the 7 a.m. train tomorrow. – But you are no good at (get) up early, are you?

d.

1. By (neglect) to take ordinary precautions he endangered the life of his crew.
2. After (hear) the conditions I decided not to enter for the competition.
3. After (walk) for three hours we stopped to let the others catch up with us.
4. Don't forget to lock the door before (go) to bed.
5. Why did you go all round the field instead of (walk) across it?
6. He surprised us all by (go) away without (say) "Good-bye".
7. Before (give) evidence you must swear to speak the truth.
8. She rushed out of the room without (give) me a chance to explain.

Ex. 9. Finish the following sentences using the gerund, define its function.

1. "How did you like his singing?" "I enjoyed...".
2. "Would you like to walk a bit?" "Not in this rain. I hate ...".
3. "Is Dennis still dreaming of becoming an actor?" "He's given up the idea...".
4. "Do you often talk with young Howard?" "He avoids...".
5. "Will you paint the walls?" "Yes, the walls need...".
6. "Did they cross the river?" "No, they didn't risk...".
7. "Did you laugh at it?" "We couldn't help ...".
8. "Doctor Caswell didn't recommend Ellsworth to visit picture galleries, did he?" "On the contrary. He approved of ...".
9. "Does he say that Edward betrayed everybody?" "Yes, he accuses Edward of ...".
10. "Will Howard see to it that the luggage is delivered in time?" "Yes, he is responsible for...".
11. "How did Doctor Caswell take the news?" "He congratulated Ellsworth on ...".
12. "Was he nervous when he spoke at the presentation?" "Not, a bit. He is used to ...".
13. "The salad is delicious, who made it? Jane?" "Yes, she is good at...".
14. "He always interferes in everybody's affairs." "Yes, I'm tired of ...".
15. "Has Norway trade agreements with many countries?" "Yes. Norway is interested in ...".
16. "Did you hear him say good-bye?" "No, he left without ...".

17. "What did Howard say to our joining them?" "He didn't like the idea of ..."

18. "Did he say that listening to spoken English was important?" "Yes, he stressed the importance of ..."

19. "I know you were reading for your examination yesterday. What else were you doing?" "I did a lot of things besides..."

20. "We shouldn't argue with them. Right you are. What's the use of...?"

21. "When we speak English, we learn to speak a foreign language by..."

22. "Did he explain the rule?" "No. He gave a few examples instead of..."

Ex. 10. Replace the parts in bold type by gerundial phrases.

1. **When the girl entered the room**, she glanced a little wonderingly at the faces of the three men.

2. He felt much better **after he had been operated on**.

3. **Just before I got into my apartment** I was approached by a man who asked me if I was a doctor.

4. This woman's face attracted his attention as familiar for he remembered **that she had passed by him several times**.

5. **That I was on the spot** was a bit of luck for him.

6. **While he was writing his report**, he remembered that he had forgotten to mention some facts.

7. When she saw him she stopped reading at once and put the letter away **and even didn't comment in any way upon what she was reading**.

8. The whole neighbourhood was so dreary and run-down that he hated the thought **that he would have to live there**.

9. She didn't feel **as if she would go out that day**.

10. In this thick fog she was afraid **that she might be knocked down**.

11. You will do nothing but irritate him **if you will nag him all the time**.

12. He preferred to keep silent for fear **that he might say something inopportune**.

13. **He was not only the author of brilliant short stories**, he was also a talented playwright.

14. Once he gets into his head an idea of doing something, **it is impossible to talk him out of it**.

Ex. 11. Make one sentence out of the following pairs of sentences by using gerundial phrases. The part in bold type is to become the predicate.

MODEL: *She talked about food. It **made** him feel angry.*

*Her talking about food **made** him feel hungry.*

1. He **had been** with us for twenty minutes. He didn't say a word.

2. He **made** everything clear to me. He explained every detail.

3. She **has** quite a gift. She makes complicated things clear and simple.
4. He surely **risked**. He might have broken his neck when he jumped across the stream.
5. My brother **has** a very irritating habit. He hums some tune all the time.
6. She sang out of tune. It **annoyed** me immensely.
7. We **have** no objections. They may leave earlier.
8. She looked out of the window. She **saw** a large crowd gathering in the garden in front.
9. They **were engaged**. They were bedding out the flowers.
10. She **was** very much **disappointed**. She had not received any letters.
11. We **kept** the child from crying. We told him funny stories.
12. He decided not to go there. He **gave up** the idea completely.
13. Why are you sitting idle? You **ought to take** the initiative into your hands.
14. He was not at all helpful. More than that, he **was a burden** to us.

Ex. 12. Replace the italicized parts of the sentence or clauses by gerundial phrases.

MODEL: *He said all this and he did not even smile.*
He said all this without even smiling.

1. We suspected *that the boy was lying*.
2. *Nobody could tell* when they were going to return.
3. She did not *wish to make* an effort.
4. *It is necessary to brush* the coat.
5. *It was impossible to reason with her* when she felt like this.
6. She was very clever, *she could turn* an old dress into a new one.
7. He wouldn't say whether he meant to buy the car *before he took it* for a trial run.
8. Let's go out for dinner. *I don't feel well enough to cook anything.*
9. I don't like the idea *that I should do it all.*

Ex. 13. Replace the parts in bold type by gerundial phrases.

1. When she saw him she stopped reading at once and put the letter away **and even did not explain anything**.
2. In this thick fog she was afraid **that she might be knocked down**.
3. He preferred to keep silent for fear **that he might say something inopportune**.
4. He felt much better **after he had been operated on**.
5. **He was not only the author of brilliant short stories**, but he was also a talented playwright.
6. **When he had written his report**, he remembered that he had forgotten to mention some facts.

7. Once he gets into his head an idea of doing something, **it is impossible to talk him out of it.**

8. **When the girl entered the room,** she glanced a little wonderingly at the faces of the three men.

9. The whole neighbourhood was so dreary and run-down that he hated the thought that **he would have to live there.**

10. You will do nothing but irritate him **if you will nag him all the time.**

11. **That I was on the spot** was a bit of luck for him.

12. Samuel Griffiths came back from Chicago on this particular day, **after he had concluded several agreements there.**

Ex. 14. Translate the sentences from Russian into English using gerundial phrases.

1. Я слышал о том, что он назначен директором большого завода.

2. Я не возражаю против того, чтобы они приехали сюда.

3. Я помню, что он мне говорил об этом несколько дней тому назад.

4. Я настаиваю на том, чтобы вы ответили им немедленно.

5. Я слышал о том, что его посылают на юг.

6. Вы можете рассчитывать на то, что он даст вам точную информацию.

7. Нет надежды, что он закончит свою работу к вечеру.

8. Извините, что я позвонил вам вчера так поздно.

9. Вы не возражаете против того, чтобы я прочел этот рассказ вслух?

10. Вы ничего не имеете против того, чтобы я курил здесь?

11. Мы настаивали на том, чтобы они начали переговоры немедленно.

12. Он возражает против того, чтобы собрание было назначено на понедельник.

13. Вы ничего не имеете против того, чтобы он зашел к вам сегодня?

14. Доктор настаивает на том, чтобы он провел осень на юге.

15. Он отвечает за то, чтобы работа была закончена вовремя.

Ex. 15. Translate into English.

1. Он избегал говорить о своем прошлом с друзьями.

2. Девушка была очень разочарована, когда узнала, что Клайд всего лишь бедный родственник Гриффитсов.

3. Миссис Чивли делала вид, что вернулась в Лондон потому, что ей надоело жить за границей.

4. Лорд Горинг любил говорить парадоксами и испытывал удовольствие, когда его не понимали.

5. Леди Чилтерн вспомнила, что когда-то училась вместе с миссис Чивли.
6. Миссис Чивли намеревалась выйти замуж за лорда Горинга.
7. Лорд Горинг не дал миссис Чивли вмешаться в дела сэра Роберта Чилтерна.
8. Больше всего леди Базилдон не любила, когда ее поучали.
9. Не то что у него нет чувства юмора, просто ему сейчас не до шуток.
10. Неизвестно, чем бы все это кончилось, если бы он не пришел в этот момент.
11. Когда обмениваешься мнениями, это позволяет лучше сформулировать свои собственные мысли.
12. Я не сержусь, когда меня критикуют, если это критика по существу.
13. Доклад может быть рекомендован к опубликованию только после того, как он будет обсужден и одобрен ученым советом.
14. Спасибо, что позвонили. Было так приятно поговорить с вами. Не зашли бы вы как-нибудь до отъезда? С нетерпением жду встречи с вами.
15. Сидеть на боковых местах неудобно, потому что не видно всей сцены.
16. В Англии многие художники, не имея работы, пытаются выручить хоть немного денег, рисуя на тротуарах.
17. Мой приятель такой любопытный, что, увидев знакомое лицо, он не может не подойти и не расспросить обо всех общих знакомых.
18. Вот это деловой разговор!

Revision Exercises on the Gerund

Ex. 1. Translate into your mother tongue and define the function of the gerund.

1. Repairing cars is his business.
2. It goes without saying.
3. Have you finished writing?
4. Taking a cold shower in the morning is very healthy.
5. I like skiing, but my sister prefers skating.
6. She likes sitting in the sun.
7. It looks like raining.
8. My watch wants repairing.
9. Thank you for coming.
10. I had no hope of getting an answer before the end of the month.
11. I had the pleasure of dancing with her the whole evening.

12. Let's go boating.
13. He talked without stopping.
14. Some people can walk all day without feeling tired.
15. Living in little stuffy rooms means breathing poisonous air.
16. Iron is found by digging in the earth.
17. There are two ways of getting sugar: one from beet and the other from sugarcane.
18. Jane Eyre was fond of reading.
19. Miss Trotwood was in the habit of asking Mr. Dick his opinion.
20. His father disliked wasting time on such trifles.
21. Avoid making mistakes if you can.
22. The neighbours saved our life by lending us that money.
23. Beethoven continued writing music after he became deaf.
24. Don't make so much fuss over losing your money.

Ex. 2. Translate into your mother tongue and define the function of the gerund.

1. The place is worth visiting.
2. Watching football matches may be exciting enough, but of course it is more exciting playing football.
3. She stopped coming to see us, and I wondered what had happened to her.
4. Can you remember having seen the man before?
5. She was terrified of having to speak to anybody, and even more, of being spoken to.
6. He was on the point of leaving the club, as the porter stopped him.
7. After being corrected by the teacher, the students' papers were returned to them.
8. I wondered at my mother's having allowed the journey.
9. I understand perfectly your wishing to start the work at once.
10. Everybody will discuss the event, there is no preventing it.
11. At last he broke the silence by inviting everybody to walk into the dining room.
12. On being told the news, she turned pale.

Ex. 3. Translate the sentences from English and point out gerundial constructions.

1. We appreciate John's helping us.
2. I can't imagine my mother approving it.
3. They resented my winning the prize.
4. I think that's enough to start her worrying.
5. I can't excuse her not answering our invitation.

6. I can't bear his interfering with what I do.
7. Would you mind my smoking?
8. Fancy her appearing at that very moment!
9. I really miss his playing the piano in the evening.
10. Excuse my asking, but does everyone in your family approve of your flying?
11. Your coming has done him good.
12. I wonder at Jolyon's allowing the engagement.
13. I understand perfectly your wanting to leave.
14. I didn't object to other people being there.

Ex. 4. Point out gerundial constructions and comment on their functions.

1. Do you agree to our taking her up to town and putting her under best control?
2. His breathing heavily when he greeted her was the result of running up two flights of stairs.
3. Of course I should insist on your accepting the proper professional fee.
4. She was startled by the noise of the outer door being opened.
5. "You know Sven hates your standing down at the door alone", said Minnie.
6. I can't bear the thought of the children staying there alone.
7. We knew nothing of his being a humorous writer.
8. Your being so indifferent irritates me a great deal.
9. We've got a lot of questions to settle before your leaving.
10. What annoyed me most of all was his accepting their proposal quite readily.
11. Nick was very much excited about his favorite cake getting spoiled.
12. I remember in school days he couldn't answer the teacher's questions without my prompting him.
13. Don't think she'll approve of your telling me this.
14. His having failed at the entrance examination was a great disappointment to his mother.
15. Uncle Julius insists on my coming to keep him company.

Ex. 5. Use the appropriate form of the gerund of the verbs in brackets.

1. (to speak) without (to think) is (to shoot) without aim.
2. Do you know what is peculiar about the English rule of (to drive)?
3. I'm glad to say that the lady didn't keep us (to wait).
4. I remember (to take) to Paris when I was a very small child.
5. I strongly suspect Gerald of (to know) all about it beforehand, though he swears he didn't.

6. Excuse me for not (to write) more at the moment.
7. She never lost the power of (to form) quick decisions.
8. He had an air of (to be) master of his fate, which his chief attraction.
9. She denied (to see) me at the concert though I'm sure I saw her in the stalls.
10. I want to thank her for (to look) after the children while I was out.
11. He passed to the front door and out without (to see) us.
12. I enjoy (to read) poetry.
13. I don't mind (to stay) here for a little while.
14. Are you going to keep me (to wait) all day?
15. They reproached us for (not to come) to the party; they were waiting for us the whole evening.
16. He suspected her of (to give) the police information about him while the workers were on strike.
17. I sat on the doorstep thinking over my chances of (to escape) from home.
18. There is very little hope of the work (to do) in time.
19. The coat showed evident signs of (to wear) on the preceding night.
20. (To avoid) the use of the perfect gerund is quite common if there is no fear of (to misunderstand).

Ex. 6. Use the appropriate form of the gerund and insert prepositions where necessary.

1. Newton, the famous scientist, was sometimes engaged (to work out) difficult problems.
2. "There's no question (to forgive) you", he said quickly.
3. Of course, I should insist (to pay) for my work.
4. I wonder if there's any use (to try) to improve him.
5. We began to speak only when we were out (to hear) of the old man.
6. I insist (to go) there at once.
7. We all suspected him (to learn) it before and (to try) to conceal it from us.
8. They were all busy (to unpack) the books and (to put) them on the shelves.
9. (To hear) the news she ran over to the telephone to inform Gerald at once.
10. But (to make) this request Mr. Dennant avoided (to look) in his face.
11. I spent the rest of the time in the hall of the Station Hotel (to write) letters.
12. You can help me (to give) a piece of good advice, you're old enough to know it better.
13. (To discuss) the plan ourselves we decided to consult Mike's eldest brother who in our eyes was an expert.
14. He hesitated a little (to open) the door. He had a feeling that there was somebody waiting for him inside.

15. (To hear) the sound of the door opened downstairs he tiptoed into the corridor and bent over the banister.

16. (To see) three little children dancing in the street to their own music he came up nearer to see them better.

17. Excuse me (to come) late.

Ex. 7. Comment on the functions of the gerund in the following sentences.

1. Looking after children requires patience.

2. It is no use discussing it now, we must act.

3. It was no good taking the little darling up to town, she got only tired.

4. Seeing is believing.

5. What he loves best in the world is playing football.

6. The main thing to do in this situation is getting away as soon as possible.

7. The car began moving away down the road.

8. Every second he kept glancing at the clock.

9. The kind woman started crying before the boy had finished his sad story.

10. However hard he tried he could not stop thinking about it.

11. He enjoyed teaching and knew that he did it well.

12. Do you mind seeing these photos again?

13. I dislike reminding you continually of the things you ought to have done.

14. I can't afford buying this expensive hat.

15. Oh, how I dislike being interrupted!

16. He was busy getting ready for his journey.

17. Nobody thought of anything but spending money, and having what they called "a good time".

18. But instead of soothing Shelton these words had just the opposite effect.

19. The idea of settling down in that little town filled her with nothing but regret.

20. He was in the habit of dozing after dinner in his favorite armchair.

21. She knew that there was a danger of falling ill.

22. I walked to my place as fast as I could without breaking into a run.

23. Before speaking he carefully thought out what he was going to say.

24. By studying early in the morning he saved a good deal of time.

25. On reading her letter he had once more a feeling of disappointment.

Ex. 8. Fill in prepositions where necessary.

1. Your colleagues are good ... keeping a secret, aren't they?

2. You seem very fond ... saying things behind my back.

3. You seem upset... losing Jones.

4. The man of letters is accustomed ...writing.

5. Mrs Attley was very skilful... directing the table talk away from her daughter.
6. I don't say I'm proud ... cheating him out of 300 dollars.
7. I saw quite clearly the benefit I was capable ... getting from travel.
8. He is usually fairly careful... making his statements.
9. I'm sick ... doing things for you.
10. But he was slow ... replying.
11. He is quite excited ... being among us again.
12. It was five minutes later than my usual bedtime and I felt guilty ... being still up.
13. She was quick ... finding out things.
14. Dolly seemed relieved ... not having to make a scene.
15. I tried to be as nice as possible ... refusing.
16. He selected a dingy little place where he felt sure ... not meeting any acquaintances.

Ex. 9. Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Я с нетерпением жду, что она снова придет.
2. Он, бывало, выкуривал двадцать сигарет в день, а в этом году он бросил курить из-за рака легких.
3. Вор отрицал, что украл ее бесценное бриллиантовое кольцо.
4. Продащицу упрекали (обвиняли) в том, что она грубила и пренебрегала своими обязанностями.
5. Его отец не одобрял использования грязного языка на радио и телевидении.
6. Мой сын не хотел оставаться менеджером на всю жизнь, поэтому он вернулся в университет в городе Петербурге.
7. Она настаивала на том, чтобы позвонить в полицию.
8. Когда у меня простуда, мне и есть не хочется (я не расположен к еде).
9. Мне доставляет удовольствие (Я люблю) слушать классическую музыку.
10. Кто мешает нам исполнять (выполнять) свои обязанности должным образом?
11. Мишин дядя одобряет то, что он учит иностранные языки.
12. Цена картины была так высока, что он и мечтать (думать) не мог купить ее.
13. Он отрицал, что совершил несколько преступлений, включая кражу денег и два убийства.
14. Учитель по английскому языку не мог не спросить меня об этом.
15. Водитель боялся, что ситуация ухудшится.
16. Я не мог согласиться, чтобы помочь ему и в этот раз.
17. Они не могут не надеяться, что он все еще жив.
18. Родители Джона дали свое согласие на его брак с этой девушкой.

19. Пожалуйста, извини меня, что я не съел весь обед.
20. Его подозревали в нарушении закона и в том, что он брал взятки.
21. Очень трудно бросить пить, играть в азартные игры и принимать наркотики.
22. Она простила его за то, что он не писал ей.
23. Управляющий возражает против того, чтобы нанять (взять) ее консультантом по связям с общественностью.
24. Он должен «благодарить» только самого себя за то, что он неудачник.

12. THE GERUND AND THE INFINITIVE COMPARED

If we compare the gerund and the infinitive, we can come to such conclusions:

- 1) The gerund and the infinitive have much in common as they both have some verbal and some nominal features.
- 2) In the infinitive the verbal nature is more prominent, whereas in the gerund the nominal one.
- 3) The basic difference in their meaning is that the gerund is more general, whereas the infinitive is more specific and more bound to some particular occasion.

Some verbs can be used with both the infinitive and the gerund.

1) The verbs *to begin*, *to start*, *to continue*, *to intend*, *can't bear*, *to love*, *to like*, *to prefer*, *to hate* can be followed by both forms with little or no difference of meaning.

- *She began singing / to sing at age 4.*
- *He started talking / to talk about golf, but everybody went out of the room.*
- *I don't get up on Sundays. I prefer staying / to stay in bed.*
- *What do you intend doing / to do?*
- *Emily can't bear being / to be alone.*
- *The members continued debating / to debate until midnight.*
- *I love making / to make new friends.*
- *I hate cooking / to cook.*
- *I like climbing / to climb mountains.*

But:

Like to do can also mean “*think that something is good or right to do*”:

- *I like to go to the dentist twice a year.*

Hate to do can mean “I’m sorry, but I have to do it”:

- *I hate to break up the party, but I’ve got to go home.*

After *to prefer* comparison is expressed by the gerund in the structure **prefer + gerund + to + gerund**;
by the infinitive in the structure **prefer + full infinitive + rather than + bare infinitive**:

- *I prefer eating cakes to baking them.*
- *Valerie prefers to cycle to work rather than drive.*

After *would like, would love, would hate, would prefer* only the infinitive is used:

- *It’s so hot today. I’d love to swim in this lake.*
- *I’d hate to lose you.*

After *to start* and *to begin* only the infinitive is possible:

a) when the finite verb is in the continuous form.

- *It’s beginning to get dark.*
- *It’s beginning to rain.*

b) with the verbs *to understand, to realise, to know* and *to see* (meaning *to understand*).

- *She began to understand how it was done.*

c) when the subject denotes a thing, not a living being.

- *The door began to creak.*
- *The clock began to strike.*

2) The verbs *to allow, to advise, to recommend, to permit, to encourage, to forbid* are followed by an object + the infinitive. If there is no object, the gerund is used.

They don’t allow smoking here.

They allowed us to smoke.

We advise booking in advance.

We advise them to book in advance.

He recommends spending holidays at the seaside.

He recommends us to spend holidays at the seaside.

The headmistress has forbidden singing in the corridors.

The headmistress has forbidden the children to sing.

The infinitive is also used when the verb is in the passive form:

- *We aren’t allowed to smoke here.*

3) The verbs *to need, to want, to require, to deserve* can be followed by an active or a passive infinitive depending on the meaning of the sentence.

- *I need to clean my shoes.*
- *My shoes need to be cleaned.*

Instead of a passive infinitive we can use an active gerund:

- *My shoes need cleaning.*

4) After some verbs the infinitive and the gerund can be used with a difference in the meanings.

1. forget + infinitive (= fail to remember to do something)

- *He forgot to turn off the radio. – Он забыл выключить радио.*

forget + gerund (= not recall a past event)

• *I'll never forget seeing the Eiffel Tower for the first time. – Никогда не забуду, как впервые увидел Эйфелеву башню.*

2. remember + infinitive (= not forget to do something)

• *Please, remember to feed the dog before leaving. – Пожалуйста, не забудь покормить собаку перед уходом.*

remember + gerund (= recall a past event)

• *I remember seeing him last night. – Я помню, что видел его прошлым вечером.*

3. stop + infinitive (=pause temporarily in order to do something)

• *Can we stop here to admire the view? – Давай остановимся тут, чтобы насладиться видом.*

stop+ gerund (=finish)

• *He stopped reading and switched on the TV. – Он перестал читать и включил телевизор.*

4. regret + infinitive (= be sorry to announce bad news)

• *I regret to inform you that there are no seats on the 12:30 flight. – Сожалею (с сожалением сообщаю), но на рейс в 12:30 мест больше нет.*

regret + gerund (= feel sorry about something already done)

• *I regret following his advice. – Я сожалею, что последовал его совету.*

5. be sorry + infinitive (= apologise for a present action; feel unhappy)

• *I'm sorry to interrupt, but can I ask you a question? – Извините, что прерываю, но можно мне задать вопрос?*

• *I was sorry to hear he had failed his exam. – Было жаль слышать, что он не сдал экзамен.*

be sorry for + gerund (= apologise for an earlier action)

- *I'm sorry for yelling at you.* – Извини, что накричал на тебя.

6. go on + infinitive (= move on to another activity)

• *He pruned the hedges, then went on to mow the lawn.* – Он подстриг изгородь и начал косить лужайку.

• *She stopped talking about her illnesses and went on to describe her other problems.* – Она перестала говорить о своих болезнях и перешла к описанию других проблем.

go on + gerund (= continue)

• *We went on dancing until we got tired.* – Мы все танцевали, пока не устали.

• *She went on talking about her illness until we all went to sleep.* – Она продолжала говорить о своей болезни, пока мы все не пошли спать.

7. want + infinitive (= wish)

- *I want to go home.* – Я хочу пойти домой.

want + gerund (= something needs to be done)

- *These windows want cleaning.* – Эти окна нужно помыть.

8. mean + infinitive (= intend)

• *She means to study art in Paris this summer.* – Она собирается этим летом изучать в Париже искусство.

mean + gerund (= involve)

• *I won't go if it means driving during rush hour.* – Я не пойду, если нужно будет ехать (если это означает, подразумевает поездку) на машине в час пик.

9. try+ infinitive (= do one's best; attempt)

• *Try to throw the ball into the basket.* – Постарайся забросить мяч в корзину.

try+ gerund (= do something as an experiment)

• *If the photocopier isn't working, try pressing the green button. Or try kicking it.* – Если ксерокс не работает, попробуй нажать зеленую кнопку. Или попробуй его пнуть.

10. be afraid + infinitive (= unwilling to do something)

- *She was afraid to jump into the pool.* – Она боялась прыгать в бассейн.

be afraid of + gerund (= be afraid of a bad result)

• *When driving in the rain, I'm afraid of skidding on the wet road.* – Когда веду машину во время дождя, боюсь, что ее занесет на мокрой дороге.

• *I was afraid to go near the dog because I was afraid of being bitten.* – Я боялась идти мимо собаки, так как боялась, что она меня укусит.

11. be interested + infinitive (= a reaction to what someone hears, sees, learns)

• *I was interested to read that scientists have found gold on the moon. – Было интересно прочитать, что ученые нашли золото на Луне.*

be interested in + gerund (= would like to do)

• *Chloe was interested in working in Switzerland. – Хлоэ было бы интересно (хотелось) поработать в Швейцарии.*

Practice

Ex. 1. Answer the questions using the gerund or the infinitive of the verbs in brackets.

1. Why do you always wear a hat? (like)
2. Why does Ann watch TV so often? (enjoy)
3. Why do you never go to the cinema? (not/like)
4. Why do you never fly? (hate)
5. Why does Jack take so many photographs? (like)
6. Why don't you work on Saturdays? (would hate)

Ex. 2. Put the verb into the correct form: the gerund or the infinitive.

1. Do you mind (travel) such a long way to work every day?
2. Ann loves (cook) but she hates (wash) up.
3. I can't stand people (tell) me what to do when I'm driving.
4. I don't like that house. I would hate (live) there.
5. Do you like (drive)?
6. When I have to catch a train, I'm always worried about missing it. So I like (get) to the station in plenty of time.
7. I very much enjoy (listen) to classical music.
8. I would love (come) to your wedding but it just isn't possible.
9. Sometimes I'd like (learn) to play the guitar.

Ex. 3. Your friend has some problems and you have to be helpful. Write questions with TRY.

MODEL: *I can't find anywhere to live. (put an advertisement in the newspaper)*

Have you tried putting an advertisement in the newspaper?

1. My electric shaver is not working. (change the batteries)
2. I can't contact Fred. He is not at home. (phone/at work)
3. I can't sleep at night. (take sleeping pills)
4. The television picture is not very good. (move the aerial)

Ex. 4. Say whether the phrases in bold mean “attempt” or “experiment”.

1. I **tried to dial** your number ten times this morning, but couldn't get through.
2. Why don't you **try dialling** again, using the new code number?
3. **Try turning** the router on and see if the computer comes on.
4. Even if you **try to turn** the power on, the computer is still dead.
5. The salesman **tried to convince** me that I need a life insurance policy.
6. You **try convincing** an unwilling customer to buy life insurance!
7. You really must **try to overcome** your shyness.
8. **Try holding** your breath to stop sneezing.

Ex. 5. Read each situation and use the words in brackets to write your sentence.

MODEL: *The streets are unsafe at night. (I/afraid/go out/alone)*

I am afraid to go out alone.

1. I don't usually carry my passport with me. (I / afraid / lose / it)
2. The sea is very rough. (we / afraid / go / swimming)
3. We rushed to the station. (we / afraid / miss / our train)
4. I didn't tell Tom that I thought he behaved foolishly. (I / afraid / hurt / his feelings)
5. In the middle of the film there was a horrifying scene. (we / afraid / look)
6. The glasses were very full, so Ann carried them very carefully. (she / afraid / spill / the drinks)
7. I didn't like the look of the food in my plate. a) (I / afraid / eat / it);
b) (I / afraid / make / myself / ill)

Ex. 6. Paraphrase the sentences using the verb “to remember” followed by either the gerund or the infinitive.

1. I didn't forget to post your letters.
2. I met him years ago.
3. You mustn't forget to give him my message.
4. They had one of the first television sets.
5. I took that photograph on your birthday.
6. I won't forget to lock the door next time.
7. I was given a prize for sewing at school.

Ex. 7. Use gerunds or infinitives in place of the verbs in brackets.

a.

1. We saw this film last month. Do you remember (see) it?
2. He was very forgetful. He never remembered (lock) the garage door when he put the car away.

3. Don't ask me to pay the bill again. I clearly remember (pay) it a month ago.
4. Did you remember (buy) bread for dinner? – Yes, I have the bread here.
5. Do you remember (post) the letter? – Yes, I remember quite clearly; I posted it in the letter-box near my gate.
6. Did you remember (air) the room? – No, I didn't. I'll go back and do it now.
7. She remembers part of her childhood quite clearly. She remembers (go) to school for the first time and (play) with Dick in the garden.
8. Did you remember (give) him the message? – No, I didn't. I'll go and do it now.

b.

1. She forgot (bring) the sugar; she left it on the kitchen table.
2. Where is my dictionary? Have you forgotten (borrow) it a fortnight ago?
3. She often told her little boy, "You must never forget (say) "please" and "thank you"."
4. Why are you late again? Have you forgotten (promise) me that you would never be late again?

c.

1. Do stop (talk); I am trying to finish a letter.
2. I didn't know how to get to your house so I stopped (ask) the way.
3. We stopped once (buy) petrol and then we stopped again (ask) someone the way.

Ex. 8. Use the infinitive or the gerund.

1. A: I'll never forget ... (travel) across America.
B: Yes, but you forgot ... (send) me a postcard, didn't you?
2. A: I hate ... (ask) you, but can you help me with the housework?
B: Sure, but remember I hate ... (do) the vacuuming.
3. A: The door wants ... (fix).
B: I know. I wanted ... (ask) the carpenter to come and have a look but I forgot.
4. A: I'm sorry ... (put) you in such a difficult position.
B: It's OK. I'm sorry for ... (shout) at you.
5. A: I'd prefer ... (spend) this weekend at home.
B: Really? I prefer ... (go out) whenever I've got free time.
6. A: Did he go on ... (talk) about the same boring topics all night?
B: No, he went on ... (show) us his holiday photos.

7. A: Don't be afraid ... (talk) to her in French.

B: I can't. I'm afraid of ... (make) mistakes.

8. A: I meant ... (tell) you there's a job vacancy at the chemist's.

B: Well, I won't apply if it means ... (work) at the weekend.

9. A: Why don't you try ... (take) a different medicine if you're still ill?

B: I think I'll just try ... (get) some more sleep.

10. A: Let's stop ... (have) something to eat.

B: Again? I wish you'd stop ... (eat) so much!

11. A: The notice says the gallery regrets ... (inform) us that the Picasso exhibition has finished.

B: Oh, no! Now I regret ... (not/go) last week.

12. A: Did you remember ... (post) the letters?

B: I remember ... (take) them but I think I've left them on my desk.

Ex. 9. Use the infinitive or the gerund.

1. I advise you (take) some money in case the banks are shut.

2. My mother used (encourage) us to eat lots of vegetables.

3. Don't forget (lock) the door when you leave the office.

4. Do you remember (swim) in Lake Langaron last summer?

5. When you finish this exercise go on (do) the composition on page 11.

6. Would you mind (turn) the radio down? I've got a headache.

7. Why don't we try (eat) some Thai food for a change?

8. They stopped running (have) a rest.

9. He put off (tell) her the bad news.

10. I really regret (spend) so much money at the weekend.

11. I suggest (look) this word up in a dictionary.

12. David was too afraid (swim) in the rough sea.

13. He doesn't look old enough (be/married).

14. I couldn't stop (wonder) whether I had done the right thing.

15. In general I prefer (watch) films on the big screen rather than on TV.

16. I'm sorry, I didn't mean (hurt) you.

17. Don't you dare (be) late again.

18. I need to get a job. I'm tired of (have) to rely on my parents for money.

19. Have you considered (learn) another language?

20. I can't stand (listen) to you complaining all the time.

Ex. 10. Fill in the blanks using the correct form of the infinitive or the gerund.

a.

1. I wished ... quite fair. (be)
2. I expected ... him in the drawing room. (find)
3. I enjoyed ... to her talk of her youth. (listen)
4. Roger promised ... in. (look)
5. I wanted ...him up. (cheer)
6. She didn't mind ... the problem again. (discuss)
7. He didn't hesitate ... such methods. (employ)
8. We arranged (meet)
9. She couldn't resist ... such a lovely hat. (buy)
10. Last week you mentioned ... him in the park. (meet)
11. We can't afford ... our time. (waste)
12. He sat there sullenly and refused (answer)
13. He stopped ... and went into the bathroom. (whistle)
14. You certainly mustn't miss ...this wonderful film. (see)

b.

1. He enjoyed (to need)
2. Willy began ... softly. (to whistle)
3. In my experience most people mind ... at. (to laugh)
4. I don't suppose your wife wants ... with me now. (to bother)
5. I knew that Charles had regretted ... me. (to invite)
6. He pretended ... when his mother came into his room to look at him.
(to sleep)
7. He pretended not... as if the compliment were purely formal. (to hear)
8. He prefers ... by the name of John Brown. (to know)
9. I don't like ...with. (to interfere)
10. I set about... all the names from the diary. (to erase)
11. Bob asked ... to a room where he could wash and change his clothes. (to show)
12. I disliked ... Harry. (to call)
13. We stopped in front of the dance hall and pretended ... inside. (to look)
14. Maurice sat on the bench, with the picture on his knee, as though he would not risk ... from it. (to part)
15. I didn't want ... his feelings. (to hurt)

Ex. 11. Translate into English.

1. Перестаньте разговаривать.
2. Мы уже закончили чтение этой книги.
3. Продолжайте петь.

4. Вы не против того, чтобы открыть окно?
5. Он отрицал, что совершил преступление.
6. Я очень люблю рисовать.
7. Мы получили удовольствие от плавания.
8. Я не могла не согласиться с ним.
9. Он рассмеялся.
10. Она бросила курить.
11. Она избегала встречи с ним.
12. Мы отложим обсуждение доклада.
13. Наконец, они перестали смеяться.
14. Она отрицала, что украла деньги.
15. Нам пришлось отложить поездку на дачу до следующей субботы.
16. Простите, что я потерял вашу ручку.
17. Когда она закончит писать сочинение?
18. Я не возражаю против того, чтобы остаться дома и поработать над моей новой книгой.
19. Перестаньте дрожать. Избегайте показывать этим людям, что вы их боитесь.
20. Я не могу не беспокоиться о них: они перестали писать.
21. Я не отрицаю, что видел их в тот вечер.
22. Он не возражал против того, чтобы его осмотрели: он перестал притворяться, что здоров.
23. Он не может меня простить за то, что я порвал его сумку.
24. Она отрицала, что взяла мои часы.
25. Мальчик любит командовать своей сестрой.
26. Лучше отложить принятие решения.
27. Не могли ли бы вы дать мне книгу, когда закончите ее читать?
28. Ее сын пытался избежать ответа на ее вопросы, так как ему было стыдно, что он солгал ей прежде.
29. Он не мог не думать, что его сын совершил большую ошибку.
30. Простите меня, пожалуйста, что я открыла ваше письмо по ошибке.
31. Я перестала есть мясо и каждый день получаю удовольствие от более здоровой пищи.

Ex. 12. Translate the following into English using infinitives or gerunds.

1. Вам повезло, что вы живете в таком красивом месте. (lucky)
2. Ее нижняя губа дрожала, словно она готова была разрыдаться. (ready)
3. Мама была занята приготовлением еды на кухне. (busy)
4. Он попросился со мной за руку: “Мне жаль, что приходится уходить”. (sorry)
5. Песню стоило записать на пленку (worth)
6. Он быстро сообразил, что случилось. (quick)

7. Об этой новости стоило написать его отцу. (worth)
8. Он был очень доволен, что застал брата дома. (delighted)
9. Мне было неинтересно (не был заинтересован в том, чтобы) продолжать спор. (interested)
10. Работу все еще было трудно найти, и мне не очень-то везло первые несколько дней. (hard)
11. Его жена была в Лондоне. Она была занята тем, что искала для них новое жилье. (busy)
12. Я удивился, когда мне позвонил Чарльз. (surprised)
13. Я глубоко уважал ее и гордился знакомством с нею. (proud)
14. Я был волен уходить и приходить, когда хотел. (free)
15. Я очень огорчился, найдя его таким больным. (distressed)
16. Этого человека легко было понять. (easy)
17. Он был теперь полон решимости остаться там. (determined)
18. Это предложение не так легко было принять. (easy)

Ex. 13. Fill in the blanks with a suitable word.

1. I wish you _____ earlier; we could have gone to the theatre then.
2. You'd _____ wind that clock up. It hasn't worked for a week now.
3. I'm sorry _____ not coming on time to see the first half of the match.
4. If only I _____ the bill before the electricity was cut off!
5. I'd rather you _____ at Mary's party. We had a lovely time there!
6. Why _____ take a holiday? I think you need a rest.
7. It's time you _____ in bed. It's almost midnight.
8. I'd rather you _____ anyone else about this. It's a secret.
9. He regrets _____ much time to finish the exercise.
10. She wishes her neighbours _____ when she's trying to sleep.

Ex. 14. Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning.

1. Please, stop whispering! I wish _____
2. I want to see your stamp collection. I wish _____
3. It's a pity I can't be more helpful. Sorry, I wish _____
4. If only you could join us! I would _____
5. He'd better start working. It's time _____
6. "I wish the course wasn't so demanding," she said.
She complained _____
7. I wish you would leave me alone. I'd rather _____
8. If only I hadn't committed myself to this project.
I regret _____
9. We would love to spend more time with our family.
If only _____

10. He regrets not taking her threats seriously.
He wishes _____
11. I am sorry I neglected my responsibilities.
If only _____
12. She complained that she had to work too hard.
She wished _____

13. THE GERUND AND THE VERBAL NOUN COMPARED

The gerund can be easily confused with the verbal noun. In some cases it is impossible to tell whether you are dealing with a gerund or with a verbal noun, and only the person speaking knows in this case what he / she means.

I like singing	Я люблю <i>петь</i> (if it is a gerund)
	Я люблю <i>пение</i> (if it is a noun)

But in most cases we can distinguish between the gerund and the verbal noun in the following way:

THE GERUND:

1. has voice and perfect distinctions; so the forms *being done, having done, having been done* cannot be nouns;
2. can take a direct object; so an “-ing” form followed by a direct object (*reading a letter*) cannot be a noun;
3. can be modified by an adverb; so an “-ing” form modified by an adverb (*reading fast*) cannot be a noun;
4. can be part of a phasal verbal predicate; so “-ing” forms following the verbs to *begin, to stop, to go on, to keep, to continue* are mostly gerunds.

THE VERBAL NOUN:

1. can be used in the plural:
 - *Memorize the proverbs and sayings.*
2. can have an article:
 - *the banging of the door;*
3. can be followed by a prepositional phrase in an attributive function:
 - *the clicking of the clock;*
4. can be modified by an adjective, a demonstrative pronoun or an indefinite pronoun:
 - *the regular doing of morning exercises.*

Practice

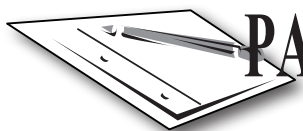
Ex. 1. Find the sentences in which: a) “-ing” form is a gerund, b) a verbal noun.

1. You should think before *speaking*.
2. After *finding* the new word in the dictionary, I wrote it down and went on *reading*.
3. He spent much time on *the copying* of his literature lectures.
4. What do you mean by *saying* that?
5. The students found the *reading* of English newspapers rather difficult at first.
6. Instead of *going* home after school, the girls went for a walk.
7. Chalk is used for *writing* on the blackboard.
8. We sat by the river-side listening to the *running* of the water.
9. *The cleaning* of the room was done by the girls.
10. *Working* in the garden is very good for the health of people.
11. I stopped *knocking* at the door and began *waiting* for my father to come.
12. She praised herself for *having come*.
13. The child stopped *crying* and quieted down.
14. The old clock kept *ticking* on the mantelpiece, as if counting the seconds left before *the coming* of daylight.

Ex. 2. Analyze the “-ing” forms in the sentences below. State which of them are gerunds and which verbal nouns. Motivate your decision.

1. She read the first act between a fitting and a rehearsal, made up her mind to play Kate and there was no persuading her that the part was too young for her.
2. The whirring and banging of the lift kept her awake most of the night.
3. She kept repeating the bright sayings of her children to bored friends and relations.
4. She insisted on my showing her the letter and explaining who Pat was.
5. On getting home she felt so faint and exhausted that she went to bed without taking off her make up and creaming her face.
6. On being told to her face that she was a liar and a schemer Polly felt like giggling and restrained herself with difficulty.
7. She broke the fastening of the purse in her hurry to get the papers out.
8. She looked with distaste at the toilet table. Dust, spilt powder and hair combings everywhere.

9. You have never learned the way of treating children kindly but without undue familiarity.
10. She promised to send me the cutting the moment she found it.
11. I could just see a faint glimmering of light in the distance.
12. For some time she said nothing and we could only hear the clicking of her false teeth - a certain sign of growing irritation.
13. On being asked what her plans were she gave a most evasive answer.
14. She lost this job through falling ill at the wrong time.
15. Her first big part was Catherine in "The Taming of the Shrew".



PART IV

The Participle

14. FEATURES AND FORMS OF THE PARTICIPLE

14.1. The participle is a non-finite form of the verb that combines verbal features with adjectival and adverbial ones.

There are two participles in English: Participle I and Participle II (also called the Present Participle and the Past Participle).

Participle I is formed by adding **-ing** to the stem of the verb.

Participle II is formed by adding **-ed** to the stem of the verb. But if the verb is irregular, its form of Participle II is to be found in the third column of the table of irregular verbs.

The Verbal Features of the Participle

14.2. Participle I has the category of perfect and the category of voice. In Modern English Participle I has the following forms:

Perfect	Voice	
	Active	Passive
Simple	reading	being read
Perfect	having read	having been read

So, there are four forms of Participle I:

Participle I Simple Active – reading

Participle I Simple Passive – being read

Participle I Perfect Active – having read

Participle I Perfect Passive – having been read

Participle II has only one form and, consequently, possesses no categories. But there is a difference between the meanings of Participle II of transitive and intransitive verbs.

Participle II of a transitive verb is passive in meaning.

- *invited guests* – *приглашенные гости*

- *broken glass* – разбитое стекло
- *a closed window* – закрытое окно
- *a caged bird* – посаженная в клетку птица

Participle II of an intransitive verb is active in meaning.

- *a faded flower* – увядший цветок
- *a retired captain* – отставной (вышедший в отставку) капитан
- *the risen sun* – возшедшее солнце
- *a fallen star* – упавшая звезда

Other verbal features of the Participle are observed in its combinability:

Participle I of a transitive verb can take a direct object.

- *Opening the door, he went out on to the terrace.*

Participle I can take a predicative.

- *Feeling tired, Emily decided to go to bed.*

Participle I and Participle II can be modified by an adverb.

- *Leaving the room hurriedly, he ran out.*
- *Deeply surprised, Michael couldn't utter a word.*

14.3. The adjectival and adverbial features of Participles are manifested in their syntactical functions as an attribute and an adverbial modifier.

- *I love the noise of falling rain.*
- *She says she's got a broken heart.*
- *Looking out of the window, we saw mountains.*
- *When opened, the tin must be kept in the refrigerator.*

Forms of Participle I

14.4. Participle I Simple Active and Passive usually denotes an action simultaneous with the action expressed by the finite verb. Depending on the tense-form of the verb it may refer to the present, past or future.

- *Looking out of the window, I can always see what is going on in the street.*
- *Looking out of the window, I saw a suspicious person.*
- *Looking out of the window, you'll see some clouds in the sky.*
- *Being left alone, Pauline and I kept silence for some time.*

Participle I **Perfect** Active and Passive denotes an action prior to the action expressed by the finite verb.

- *Having finished the work, he left the laboratory. – Окончив работу, он вышел из лаборатории.*

• *Having questioned the woman, the inspector no longer doubted that she was the murderer.* – *Допросив женщину, инспектор больше не сомневался, что убийцей является она.*

• *Having been questioned a second time, the woman realized that she was suspected of the murder.* – *После того, как женщину допросили еще раз, она поняла, что ее подозревают в совершении этого убийства.*

Note: A prior action is not always expressed by Participle I Perfect. With some verbs of sense perception and motion, such as *to see, to hear, to find, to come, to enter, to arrive, to leave, to look out, to put, to turn, to pass, to cross, to seize* and some others, Participle I Simple is used even when priority is meant.

- *Hearing the news, I called him up at once.*
- *Arriving at the station, she called me up at once.*
- *Seeing Jane, I rushed to greet her.*

But: If there is a lapse of time between two actions, we use Participle I Perfect:

- *Not having seen her for a long time, I didn't recognize her.*

Practice

Ex. 1. Find participles and define their forms.

1. While correcting the students' test-papers, the teacher underlined the mistakes with a red pencil.

2. Being corrected by the teacher regularly, the exercises are very useful to the students.

3. A cold wind swept the pavement, bearing a scrap of silver paper from a chocolate box across the lamplight.

4. Having been corrected by the teacher yesterday, the students' test-papers will be returned to them today.

5. He looked at her for a moment as though amazed at her friendliness.

6. There was sunlight coming in through the shutters.

7. Having received a letter, I usually answer it at once.

8. Watches and cameras made in Japan are very popular all over the world.

9. The taxi could be seen waiting outside.

10. While preparing for an examination, he always studies in the reading-hall.

Ex. 2. Use the appropriate form of Participle I of the verbs in brackets.

1. (to look) out of the window, she saw there was a man working in the garden.
2. That night, (to go) up to his room Shelton thought of his unpleasant duty.
3. (to descend) to the hall, he came on Mr. Dennant (to cross) to his study, with a handful of official-looking papers.
4. The carriage was almost full, and (to put) his bag up in the rack, he took his seat.
5. (to know) that she couldn't trust Jim, she sent Peter instead.
6. (to do) all that was required, he was the last to leave the office.
7. (to return) home in the afternoon, she became conscious of her mistake.
8. He couldn't join his friends (to be) still busy in the laboratory.
9. (to finish) his work, he seemed more pleased than usual.
10. (to step) inside, he found himself in what had once been a sort of office.
11. He left the room again, (to close) the door behind him with a bang.
12. I spent about two minutes (to turn) over the sixteen pages of "The Times" before I found the chief news and articles.
13. (to turn) to the main street, he ran into Donald and Mary (to return) from school.
14. (to return) from the expedition he wrote a book about Central Africa.
15. (to get) out of the bed she ran to the window and drew the curtain aside.
16. (to confuse) by his joke, she blushed.
17. (to inform) of their arrival the day before, he was better prepared to meet them than anyone of us.
18. Sir Henry paused and then said, (to glance) down at his watch, "Edward's arriving by the 12.15."

Ex. 3. Replace the infinitives in brackets by the correct form of Participle I.

1. (to reject) by the editorial board, the story was returned to the author for revision.
2. (to reject) by publishers several times, the story was accepted by a weekly magazine.
3. (to wait) for some time in the reception room, he was asked into the office.
4. (to wait) in the reception room, he thought over what he would say when he was asked into the office.

5. They reached the peak at dusk, (to leave) their camp with the first light.

6. They put up for the night at a temporary camp, (to leave) it at dawn.

7. The friends went out into the city (to leave) their cases at the left luggage department.

8. (to write) and (to leave) a note with the porter, he said he would be back in a half-hour.

9. (to write) in an archaic language, the book was difficult to read.

10. (to write) his first book, he couldn't go far beyond his own experience.

11. (to be) away so long he was happy to be coming back.

12. (to be) so far away he still felt himself part of his community.

13. The children looked wonderingly at the elephant, never (to see) such a huge animal.

14. Not (to want) to go deeper into the matter, he abruptly changed the conversation.

Ex. 4. Insert the appropriate form of Participle I.

1. Derek, who had slept the sleep of the dead, ___ (to have) none for two nights, woke ___ (to think) of Nedda.

2. The street was full of people, ___ (to laugh) and ___ (to go) home.

3. The gipsy smiled, ___ (to show) his teeth.

4. While ___ (to obey) my directions, he glanced at me now and then, suspiciously, from under his frost-white eye-lashes.

5. ___ (to watch) them, he raised his coffee cup.

6. He went upstairs again, ___ (to tiptoe) past the door, and, ___ (to enter) his room, switched on the light.

7. ___ (to turn) my back on him I started down the steps.

8. At that moment he was plunged in the depth of an easy chair, ___ (to talk) to by Mr Vandernoodt.

9. ___ (To wash) his hands and ___ (to pass) a towel over his face, he followed her down the stairs of the hushed house.

10. She had not brought him money or position, ___ (to be) no more than the daughter of a doctor.

11. Then swiftly ___ (to look) neither to left nor right, she returned to Adrian.

12. And ___ (to say) this in her official and impersonal tone of voice, the chambermaid then grinned, winked and vanished.

13. The campaign progressed uneventfully, from day to day, no longer ___ (to mention) in news broadcasts.

14. ___ (to finish) dinner, Tom lighted the second of his two daily cigars, and took up the earpieces of the wireless.

Ex. 5. Replace the infinitive in brackets by the appropriate form of the participle.

1. ___ (to write) in very bad handwriting, the letter was difficult to read.
2. ___ (to write) his first book, he could not help worrying about the reaction of the critics.
3. ___ (to spend) twenty years abroad, he was happy to be coming home.
4. ___ (to be) so far away from home, he still felt himself part of the family.
5. She looked at the enormous bunch of roses with a happy smile, never ___ (to give) such a wonderful present before.
6. ___ (not to wish) to discuss that difficult and painful problem, he changed the subject.
7. ___ (to translate) by a good specialist, the story preserved all the sparkling humour of the original.
8. ___ (to approve) by the critics, the young author's story was accepted by a thick magazine.
9. ___ (to wait) for some time in the hall, he was invited into the drawing room.
10. ___ (to wait) in the hall, he thought over the problem he was planning to discuss with the old lady.
11. They reached the oasis at last, ___ (to walk) across the endless desert the whole day.
12. ___ (to lie) down on the sofa couch, the exhausted child fell asleep at once.
13. She went to work, ___ (to leave) the child with the nurse.
14. ___ (to phone) the agency, he left ___ (to say) he would be back in two hours.

15. THE SYNTACTICAL FUNCTIONS OF THE PARTICIPLE

15.1. The Participle as Attribute

Participle I Simple and **Participle II** can be used as an attribute.

• *The rising sun was hidden by the clouds.* – *Восходящее солнце было закрыто тучами.*

• *Let sleeping dogs lie.* – *Не буди лихо, пока тихо.*

• *Look at the girl standing at the window.* – *Посмотри на девушку, стоящую возле окна.*

• *The quality of goods being advertised leaves much to be desired.* – *Качество рекламируемых товаров оставляет желать лучшего.*

- *He answered through the locked door.* – Он ответил через запертую дверь.
- *They are reconstructing the house built in the 18th century.* – Они реставрируют здание, построенное в XVII веке.
- *Things seen are mightier than things heard.* – Лучше один раз увидеть, чем сто раз услышать.
- *The dictionary referred to is to be found in our library.* – Словарь, на который была сделана ссылка, можно найти в нашей библиотеке.

Participle I Perfect is not used as an attribute. When a prior action is meant, only an attributive clause is used.

- *Я только что поговорил со студентами, вернувшимися с практики.* – I've just talked to the students who have come back from their teaching practice.
- *Женщина, стоявшая на крыльце, вошла в дом.* – The woman who had been standing on the porch went into the house.

Practice

Ex. 1. Translate what is given in brackets, using Participle I as an attribute where possible.

1. We came up to the man (стоявший на углу) and asked him the way.
2. Go to the corner and ask the militiaman (стоящий там) to show you the way.
3. The man (стоящий у расписания) was our teacher last year.
4. Did you see in what direction the man (стоявший здесь) went?
5. He wants to write a book (которая бы подытожила) his impressions of the trip.
6. A new power plant (которая будет снабжать электричеством три района) is to be built here in two years' time.
7. The people (ожидаящие доктора) have been sitting here for a long time.
8. The people (ожидавшие вас) have just gone.

Ex. 2. Translate the sentences into English, using Participle I as an attribute where possible.

1. Старик, работавший в саду, не сразу заметил меня.
2. Высокий человек оказался инженером, работавшим на этом заводе несколько лет тому назад.
3. Мальчика, продававшего газеты, уже не было видно.
4. Девушка, продававшая неподалеку фиалки, казалось, чем-то напоминала Элизу Дулитл. Очевидно, я был склонен увидеть в Англии то, что когда-то читал о ней.

5. Жители деревни, видевшие девочку в то утро, говорили, что она шла в дальний конец деревни, где была речка.

6. Все, читавшие юмористические рассказы этого писателя, не могут не восхищаться ими.

7. Студенты, читавшие этот очерк, говорят, что он труден для перевода.

8. Мой друг, посетивший Панамский канал, рассказывает много интересного о своем путешествии.

9. Туристы, посетившие Музей Изобразительных Искусств одновременно со мной, выражали вслух свое восхищение.

10. Наконец молодой человек, читавший иллюстрированный журнал, поднял голову и взглянул на меня.

11. Человек, спрашивавший дорогу к мосту Ватерлоо, вдруг куда-то исчез.

12. Молодой рабочий, спрашивавший меня, откуда я приехал, казался мне знакомым, я определенно его где-то видел. Но где?

13. Он заметил, что пожилой джентльмен, пристально смотревший на него, делает ему таинственные знаки.

14. Человек, принесший письмо от Артура, хотел поговорить с ней наедине.

15. Они часто думали о своих друзьях, работавших на Дальнем Востоке.

16. Наши друзья, работавшие на Дальнем Востоке, вернулись в Москву.

17. Мики, переведивший трудную статью, даже не взглянул на меня.

18. Мики, переведивший эту статью, говорит, что мы должны непременно прочесть ее в оригинале.

19. Шофер, медленно вылезший из машины, выглядел очень усталым.

Ex. 3. Translate the following word-groups into English. Pay attention to the place of Participle II.

Иллюстрированный журнал; журнал, иллюстрированный известным художником; разбитое стекло; стекло, разбитое накануне; сломанный карандаш; ветка, сломанная ветром; взволнованные голоса; дети, взволнованные произошедшим; потерянный ключ; ключ, потерянный вчера; газеты, полученные из Лондона; письмо, написанное незнакомым почерком; закрытая дверь; дверь, запечатая изнутри; девушка, приглашенная на вечер; упавшее дерево; книга, упавшая со стола; украденные документы; документы, украденные на прошлой неделе.

Ex. 4. Replace the attributive clauses in the following sentences by phrases with Participle II where possible.

1. The animals that were caught in the snare struggled furiously.
2. There was a peculiar silence in the room, which was broken only by the crackle on paper.
3. The melancholy tune which is being played by the band brings back all the sweet memories of my youth.
4. The long-playing records that are produced by the local factory are of exceptionally fine quality.
5. He specialized in treating occupationally lung diseased, which are mainly caused by dust.
6. And the answer that had so long been expected came at last.
7. The newspapers carried reports of a storm that had devastated several villages.
8. The machinery which has been ordered from abroad will be delivered by ship.
9. The opinions that were (are) expressed by the critics greatly differ.

Ex. 5. Replace the attributive clauses in the following sentences by phrases with Participle II where possible.

1. By a residential college we mean a college with a hostel which is usually situated on the same grounds as the principal building.
2. The slogan which was made by Mike's brother attracted everybody's attention.
3. The child that was left alone in the large room began to scream.
4. I have a letter for you which was received two days ago.
5. They were all pleased with the results which were achieved by the end of the month.
6. His words, which he uttered in an under-tone, reached my ears.
7. The boy who had broken the windowpane ran away and did not appear till the evening.
8. The storm that caused a lot of harm to the crops abated late at night.
9. He said that the book which I had chosen belonged to his grandfather.
10. I asked the librarian to show me the magazines which were sent from Germany.
11. Everybody felt that in the farewell dinner there was sadness which was mingled with festivity.
12. We were all looking at his smiling face which was framed in the window of the railway-carriage.
13. There was another pause which was broken by a fit of laughing of one of the old men sitting in the first row.
14. There lay a loaf of brown bread which was divided into two halves.

15. The English people love their green hedges which are covered with leaf and flower in summer, and a blaze of gold and red in autumn.

16. From his essay we learn about various goods which are produced in Birmingham and the adjoining manufacturing towns.

17. The teacher told us that the centre of the cotton industry is Manchester, which is connected with Liverpool by a canal.

18. In the South of England we find fertile valleys which are divided by numerous hedges.

19. Tennis is one of the most popular games in England which is played all the year round.

20. They say that in their college, as well as in ours, the students have lots of exams which are held at the end of each term.

Ex. 6. Translate the Russian participles in brackets by the English Participle II where possible.

1. The number of apartment houses (строящихся) for the population of Moscow is rapidly growing.

2. What is the number of apartment houses (построенных) in the past few years?

3. The houses (строившиеся) many years ago are not as convenient as the modern ones.

4. The workers (строившие) this house used new construction methods.

5. At the conference they discussed new methods (применяемые) in building.

6. The new methods (примененные) in the building of houses proved more effective.

7. They decided to abandon some of the methods (применявшихся) formerly in building.

8. The bricklayer (применивший) a new method in building made a report at the conference.

9. Here are some samples of the products of this plant (посылаемые) to different parts of the country.

10. These are the samples of products (посланных) last month.

11. Here are the samples of products of the plants (пославших) us machinery.

12. These are the samples of products (пославшихся) before the restoration of the plant.

Ex. 7. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate participle.

Carla has been 1) ___ (interest) in dancing since she was a little girl. When she put on her own “performances” at home for her relatives, they were all 2) ___ (entertain) by the sight of the young girl twirling around

in her home-made costumes. No one guessed, however, that by the age of eighteen she would be an 3) ___ (entertain) spectacle for a much larger audience. Carla's family were 4) ___ (thrill) to attend a Royal Performance and to witness their little girl's 5) ___ (excite) debut. Carla herself was more 6) ___ (excite) and 7) ___ (frighten) than she'd ever been in her life. Her climb to fame had been extremely 8) ___ (reward). And now, here she was, dancing for the Queen. How 9) ___ (please) she felt! But the 10) ___ (amaze) reviews she received the next day were even more 11) ___ (thrill).

15.2. The Participle as Adverbial Modifier

Participle II and all the four forms of Participle I can function as adverbial modifiers of different types:

1) an adverbial modifier of **time**

- *(When / While) Working on my report, I read a number of interesting articles.* – *Работая над докладом, я прочел ряд интересных статей.*

- *Being asked,*

Having been asked, he couldn't answer anything.

- *When asked,*

– Когда его спросили, он не смог ничего ответить.

- *Turning slowly, she went to her room.* – *Медленно повернувшись, она пошла в свою комнату.*

- *Don't forget articles when speaking English.* – *Не забывайте про артиклях, говоря по-английски.*

- *In my day you didn't speak until spoken to.* – *В наше время надо было молчать, пока с тобой не заговорят.*

2) an adverbial modifier of **reason**

- *Knowing English well, he translated the article without a dictionary.* – *Хорошо зная английский язык (Так как он хорошо знал английский язык), он перевел статью без словаря.*

- *Not knowing his address, we could not write him.* – *Не зная его адреса, мы не могли написать ему.*

- *Having lived in Glasgow for some time, I knew the local traditions.* – *Прожив некоторое время в Глазго, я знал местные традиции.*

- *Deprived of his wife and son, Jolyon found the solitude at Robin Hill intolerable.* – *Лишившись жены и сына, Джозлион находил уединение в Робин Хилле невыносимым.*

3) an adverbial modifier of **manner** or **attendant circumstances** (the difference is that an adverbial modifier of manner characterizes the action of the finite verb, but that of attendant circumstances denotes a parallel action or event)

• *He walked down the road limping.* – *Он шел по дороге прихрамывая.*

• *He ran up to me breathing heavily.* – *Он подбежал ко мне тяжело дыша.*

• *He sat in the armchair reading a newspaper.* – *Он сидел в кресле, читая газету.*

• *He lay on the sofa smoking.* – *Он лежал на диване и курил.*

4) an adverbial modifier of **comparison**

• *This was said as if thinking aloud.* – *Это было сказано так, как будто он думал вслух.*

• *As if torn with inner conflict, she cried.* – *Она плакала, словно разрываемая внутренним противоречием.*

5) an adverbial modifier of **condition**

• *Well, we'll be in Scotland, going at this speed.* – *Мы будем в Шотландии, если будем двигаться с такой скоростью.*

• *John will speak for hours, unless interrupted.* – *Джон будет говорить часами, если его не прервать.*

6) an adverbial modifier of **concession**

• *Although understanding no Japanese, she was able to communicate with the inhabitants of the island.* – *Хотя она не понимала японского, но смогла общаться с жителями острова.*

• *Her spirit, though crashed, was not broken.* – *Хотя она и была подавлена, она не была сломлена.*

15.3. The Participle as Predicative

In this function Participle I and Participle II are used after a link verb:

• *Your answer is surprising.*

• *The effect of her words was terrifying.*

• *The Fada road is finished, the great idea is realized.*

• *You seem surprised.*

• *He felt thoroughly disappointed.*

• *The door remained locked.*

15.4. Participle I as Parenthesis

Participle I as parenthesis forms the headword of a participial phrase, the meaning of which is a comment upon the contents of the whole sentence or sometimes part of it.

Here we find such participial phrases as:

taking everything into consideration

considering everything

judging by (from)

putting it mildly

generally speaking

legally speaking

strictly speaking

roughly speaking

broadly speaking

- *Judging from what you say, he ought to succeed.* – Судя по тому, что ты говоришь, его ждет успех.
- *Strictly speaking, this is illegal.* – Строго говоря, это незаконно.

Practice

Ex. 1. Comment on the form and the function of Participle I. Translate the sentences into Russian or Ukrainian.

1. Having traversed seven hundred miles he was now traveling toward the border of the United States.

2. There was a tiny smile playing about the corners of his mouth.

3. He had a beautiful old house in Queen Anne Street, and being a man of taste he had furnished it admirably.

4. Donna Carlotta covered her face with her hand, as if swooning.

5. Turning in anger, she gave John a shove, spilling his tea.

6. To Maggie, the new protective gentleness of her son was sweet, and also very frightening.

7. Judging him by his figure and his movements, he was still young.

8. Placing his drink upon the mantelpiece the ex-convict stood for a moment observing the young man out of the corner of his eye.

9. Being very tired with his walk however, he soon fell asleep and forgot his troubles.

10. He raised his eyes, looked at her as though peering over the top of spectacles.

11. There were four girls sitting on the wooden benches of the agency's front room.

12. Having shaken hands with them, he brought his own hands together with a sharp slap.

13. Manuel went in, carrying his suitcase.
14. While pondering this problem, I sat in the dormitory window-seat.
15. I am going to Rome, having friends there.
16. There was sunlight coming in through the shutters.
17. Timmy appeared at noon the next day, bringing with him two hundred dollars in cash.
18. Much of the afternoon I looked out of the window, as though thinking, but not really thinking.
19. He was thoughtful for a moment while leaning perilously close to the fire.
20. He looked at his father listening with a kind of painful desperation.

Ex. 2. Point out Participle II and state its functions in the sentence.

1. His name was well-known among the younger writers of France.
2. London, like most cities which have a long history behind them, is not really one single city, but rather a collection of once separated towns and villages which in the course of time have grown together.
3. The door opened. A little frightened girl stood in the light that fell from the passage.
4. The broad thoroughfare which runs between Trafalgar Square and the Houses of Parliament is known as Whitehall.
5. The child kept silent and looked frightened.
6. Finella glanced up at the top of the hill. High in the air, a little figure, his hands thrust in his short jacket pockets, stood staring out to sea.
7. He lived in a little village situated at the foot of a hill.
8. He fell asleep exhausted by his journey.
9. If you hadn't caught sight of him at the door he might have slipped out unnoticed.
10. In the coppice they sat down on a fallen tree.
11. Seen from the Vorobyev Hills the city looks magnificent, and especially at night in the electric light.
12. She entered the drawing-room accompanied by her husband and her father.
13. The house in which Denby lives is little more than a cottage, looked at from outside, but there are more rooms in it than one would think.
14. Presently she grew tired and went to bed.
15. Locked in her room, she flung herself on the bed and cried bitterly.
16. She sat for a while with her eyes shut.

Ex. 3. State the function of Participle II and translate the sentences.

1. Stirred by the beauty of the twilight, he strolled away from the hotel.
2. All the country near him was broken and wooded.
3. For the moment the trio stood as if turned to stone.

4. Through the dark hall, guarded by a large black stove I followed her into the saloon.

5. If left to myself, I should infallibly have let this chance slip.

6. He spoke when spoken to, politely and without much relevance.

7. He cast upon her one more look, and was gone.

8. Miss Brown, though not personally well known in the county, had been spoken well of by all men.

9. Prepared then for any consequences, I formed a project.

10. Thus absorbed, he would sit for hours defying interruption.

11. As directed, I took the lead, almost happily.

12. He looked at her for a moment as though amazed at her friendliness.

13. Fancy a married woman doomed to live on from day to day without one single quarrel with her husband.

14. He bowed low when presented to Dinny.

15. Displeased and uncertain Brande gazed from his son to the Spanish gardener.

Ex. 4. Paraphrase the sentences according to the models.

– *The boy who is speaking to the teacher is my best friend.* – *The boy speaking to the teacher is my best friend.*

– *While they were travelling in America they visited New York and Chicago.* *While travelling in America they visited New York and Chicago.*

– *As Nick was very tired he couldn't finish the work in time.* – *Being very tired Nick couldn't finish the work in time.*

1. The little girl who is playing with the cat is my sister.

2. While the pupils of our group were passing the exam in English they had to answer many questions.

3. As he felt homesick he decided to return home.

4. While she was preparing dinner she listened to the music.

5. As she did so she went out.

6. The woman who is waiting there is our neighbour.

7. While they were watching TV they knew the latest news.

8. As I knew them well I didn't tell them the truth.

9. The man who is speaking over the telephone is our new teacher.

10. While they were driving to the railway station they got into a traffic jam.

11. As she was a well educated woman she published a lot of books.

Ex. 5. Paraphrase the sentences using participles.

– *When the shop assistant discovered that he had a talent for music, he gave up his job to become a professional singer.* – *Discovering that he had a talent for music, the shop assistant gave up his job to become a professional singer.*

– *They found the treasure. They began quarrelling about how to divide it.* – *Having found the treasure, they began quarrelling how to divide it.*

1. As he had witnessed the crime, he was expected to give evidence in court.

2. When the editor learned that his newspaper had been taken over by another publisher, he resigned from his position.

3. I declined his offer of a loan and said that I didn't like owing people money.

4. The demonstrator who protested violently was led away by the police.

5. When I visit a strange city, I like to have a guide-book with me.

6. Motorists who intend to take their cars with them to the Continent are advised to make early reservations.

7. Now that I have heard your side of the question, I am more inclined to agree with you.

8. As he had been warned that bad weather lay ahead, the ship's captain changed the course.

9. He got off the bus and helped his grandmother.

10. He was exhausted by his work so he threw himself on the bed.

11. He realized that he had missed the last train so he began to walk.

12. She didn't want to hear the story again because she had heard it all before.

13. She entered the room suddenly and she found them smoking.

14. I turned on the light and I was astonished at what I saw.

15. He offered to show us the way home because he thought we had got lost.

Ex. 6. Translate the words in brackets.

1. We came up to the man (стоявшему на углу) and asked him the way.

2. Go to the shop and ask the man (стоящего там) to show you the way.

3. The man (стоящий у окна) was our teacher last year.

4. Did you see in what direction the man (стоявший здесь) went?

5. He wants to write a book (которая бы подытожила) his impressions of the trip.

6. The people (ожидающие вас) have been sitting here since 3 o'clock.

7. The people (ожидавшие вас) have just gone.

8. (Рассказав все, что он знал) the man left the room.

9. (Постучав дважды и не получив ответа) he came in.

10. (Толкнув дверь) he felt that it was not locked.

11. (Тихо закрыв дверь) he tiptoed into the room.

12. Each time (рассказывая об этом случае) she could not help crying.
13. (Приехав в гостиницу) she found a telegram awaiting for her.
14. (Приехав сюда) many years before he knew those parts perfectly.
15. We took a trip in a boat down the river (и вернулись) when it was dark.
16. I felt very tired (проработав целый день) in the sun.
17. (Уронив монету на пол) he did not care to look for it in the darkness.
18. The conference (проходящая сейчас) in our city is devoted to the problems of environment protection.
19. Unable to attend the conference (проходившую тогда) at the university, we asked to inform us about its decision.
20. They are now at a conference (которая проходит) at the university.
21. Suddenly I heard a sound of a key (поворачиваемого) in the lock.
22. (Когда их поставили в воду) the flowers opened their petals.
23. The flowers faded (так как их долгое время держали без воды).

Ex. 7. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Получив телеграмму, моя сестра немедленно выехала в Киев.
2. Войдя в класс, учительница сразу обратила внимание на надпись на доске.
3. Мать улыбалась, глядя на детей, играющих в саду.
4. Взяв перо и бумагу, мальчик стал писать письмо отцу, уехавшему на Дальний Восток.
5. Услышав голос друга, я вышел из комнаты, чтобы встретить его.
6. Увидев незнакомого человека, я извинился и вернулся в свою комнату.
7. Будьте осторожны, переходя улицу.
8. Приехав в город, мы прежде всего сдали вещи в камеру хранения.
9. Прожив много лет в Англии, он хорошо говорит по-английски.
10. Читая эту книгу, я встретил много интересных выражений.
11. Прочитав книгу, мальчик вернул ее в библиотеку.
12. Проведя лето в деревне, больной совершенно поправился.
13. Студенты, читающие английские книги в оригинале, легко овладевают языком.
14. Увидев своих друзей, пришедших проводить его, он подошел к ним.
15. Законы, существовавшие в Америке, позволяли покупать и продавать негров.

Ex. 8. Translate the sentences into English, define the functions of Participle II.

1. На листе бумаги было несколько строк, написанных карандашом.
2. Если меня спросят, я скажу правду.
3. В вазе было несколько увядших роз.
4. Я не люблю смотреть на посаженных в клетку животных.
5. Книга будет здесь, пока ее не спросят.
6. Муж ее был отставным полковником.
7. Хотя он был очень удивлен, он не сказал ни слова.
8. Вот новые учебники, присланные для нашей школы.
9. Оставленный один в темноте, ребенок заплакал.
10. Студенты писали сочинение о системе образования в Англии, как она описана Диккенсом.
11. Солнце село, и деревья казались темными, как будто высеченными из черного мрамора.

16. PREDICATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH THE PARTICIPLE

16.1. The Objective Participial Construction

The Objective Participial Construction is a construction in which the participle is in predicate relation to a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case.

In the sentence this construction has the function of a complex object. It often corresponds to a subordinate object clause in Russian or Ukrainian.

The OPC may be found:

a) after verbs denoting **sense perception** (*to see, to hear, to feel, to find, to watch, to notice, to observe, to perceive, to smell, to catch, to look at, to listen to*)

• *He looked out of the window and saw clouds gathering.* – Он выглянул из окна и увидел, что собираются тучи.

• *I heard my wife coming.* – Я услышал, что идет моя жена.

• *We found him working in the garden.* – Мы нашли его работающим в саду.

• *Do you smell something burning?* – Ты чувствуешь, что что-то горит?

• *I saw him photographing the monument.* – Я видел, как он фотографировал этот памятник.

• *I saw the monument being photographed.* – Я видел, как фотографовали этот памятник.

• *I saw Jane addressed by a stranger.* – Я видел, как к Джейн обратился незнакомец.

• *Have you ever heard the writer's name mentioned before?* – Вы когда-нибудь раньше слышали, чтобы упоминалось имя этого писателя?

• *We found the door locked.* – Мы обнаружили, что дверь закрыта.

b) after verbs of **inducement** (*to have, to leave, to get, to start, to keep, to set*)

• *I won't have you smoking at your age!* – Я не потерплю, чтобы ты курил в таком возрасте!

• *They soon got things going.* – Они вскоре добились, чтобы дело пошло.

• *Don't keep me waiting. I'm in a hurry.* – Не задерживайте меня. Я спешу.

• *Your words set me thinking.* – Ваши слова заставили меня задуматься.

• *Can you start that engine going?* – Ты можешь завести этот двигатель?

• *You must have your photo taken.* – Вам нужно сфотографироваться.

• *Where did you have your hair done?* – Где вам сделали прическу?

• *I won't have my best friend laughed at.* – Я не допущу, чтобы над моим лучшим другом смеялись.

• *We must get our tickets registered.* – Нам нужно, чтобы наши билеты зарегистрировали.

c) after verbs expressing **wish** (*to wish, to want, to like*)

• *I don't want you talking back to me.*

• *They didn't like me leaving so early.*

• *I want the answer sent at once.* – Я хочу, чтобы ответ прислали сразу же.

16.2. The Subjective Participial Construction

The Subjective Participial Construction is a construction in which the participle (mostly Participle I) is in predicate relation to a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the nominative case, which is the subject of the sentence.

The peculiarity of this construction is that it does not serve as one part of the sentence: one of its component parts has the function of the subject, the other forms part of a compound verbal predicate.

• *The horse was seen descending the hill.* – Видно было, как лошадь спускалась с холма.

• *He was heard crossing the room.* – Было слышно, как он прошел через комнату.

• *Jane was heard playing the piano.* – Слышали (слышно было), как Джейн играет на рояле.

• *A minute ago he was seen engaged in a lively conversation.* – Минуту назад было видно, что он занят оживленной беседой.

Practice

Ex. 1. Point out the Complex Object with Participle I. Translate the sentences into Russian or Ukrainian.

1. I heard the visitor walking restlessly backwards and forwards. I also heard him talking to himself.

2. She turned and saw Shelton standing down there.

3. He felt his irritation mounting.

4. He found Dora reading a novel in their bedroom.

5. With amusement they watched them going.

6. We heard her walking on the stairs by the cellar.

7. At the moment I noticed Charles sitting a little farther in the hall.

8. For the first time she found herself wondering about him.

9. The moon came fully through a cloud, and he was startled as he suddenly saw her face looking at him.

10. You can always find him handing round bread and butter at a tea party.

11. He felt the bridge shaking under his feet.

12. Then in the complete silence of the night he heard somebody opening the door quietly.

13. He looked at groups of young girls walking arm in arm.

14. Soames raised his hand to his forehead, where suddenly she saw moisture shining.

15. As I was looking this over I heard the doors which led on to the main corridor being opened.

Ex. 2. Use the Infinitive or Participle I of the verbs in brackets to form a Complex Object.

1. A moment later they heard her bedroom door (to shut) with a bang.

2. I've never heard your canary (to sing). Is there anything the matter with the bird?

3. Would you like me (to make) you lunch, or have you had some?

4. I want you (to explain) the disappointment we had this morning.

5. She watched him (to pass) the gate and (to walk) down the street.

6. Through the chink in the shutters she watched Emma (to pick) cherries in the orchard.

7. The captain said something which made them (to laugh), he did not hear what it was.
8. They had their own pattern of life and expected me (to fit) in.
9. You can see him (to work) in his little garden every day.
10. She had never heard philosophy (to pass) those lips before.
11. I saw him (to put) his suitcase right here.
12. During that moment Miss Pembroke told a lie, and made Rickie (to believe) it was the truth.
13. Together they watched the old oak (to drop) its leaves.
14. He found them (to sit) together and (to talk) peacefully. They did not notice him (to approach).
15. He felt the water (to reach) his knees.
16. She felt her voice (to tremble) and tried to control herself.
17. We saw him (to open) the envelope and (to read) something hastily.
18. I saw him (to unfold) the telegram slowly and hesitatingly as though he expected it (to contain) some bad news.
19. He heard the young people (to sing) and (to shout) from the opposite bank.
20. She watched him (to work) for a long time.

Ex. 3. Translate the sentences into English, using Participle I.

1. Она слышала, как ее отец ходит взад и вперед по террасе.
2. Строго говоря, это не совсем то, что я хотела сказать.
3. Том увидел, что в воде что-то быстро движется.
4. Приехав домой, он увидел, что его совсем не ждали.
5. Холодные лучи заходящего солнца освещали вершины деревьев.
6. Он заметил, что за ним кто-то следит и, поняв это, решил изменить свой путь.
7. Было слышно, как где-то вдалеке играла музыка.
8. Судя по тому, как ласково она на него смотрит, он ей нравится.
9. Видя, что собираются тучи, мы решили отложить прогулку.
10. Дойдя до середины, я почувствовала, что мост дрожит.
11. Было слышно, как больной стонет от боли.
12. Услышав шаги на пустынной улице, она насторожилась.
13. Стараясь скрыть свое смущение, она начала торопливо что-то рассказывать, обращаясь к своему спутнику.
14. Выйдя в сад, я увидела, что дети мирно играют, как будто ничего не случилось.
15. Я наблюдала за тем, как внимательно он читал письмо.

16. Вообще говоря, у меня нет времени, чтобы выслушивать ее нелепые истории.

Ex. 4. A) Point out the Objective Participial Construction with Participle II and translate into Ukrainian or Russian.

1. I have this suit cleaned every month.
2. I've just had a new coat made.
3. He said he had not had the visa renewed.
4. Why did you have your dress shortened?
5. Have them brought here immediately.
6. I've just had the knives sharpened. Don't cut yourself.

B) Make sentences using these parts:

Where can I When will you Could I Why didn't you When did you	have	my blood pressure checked? this parcel delivered to the airport? a dress cleaned? the visa extended? your tooth filled? your tooth pulled out? these things taken away?
---	------	---

C) Translate the sentences.

1. Где я могу измерить давление?
2. Почему вы не продлили визу?
3. Не могли бы мне доставить этот пакет в аэропорт?
4. Запломбируйте зуб. – Я его уже вырвал.
5. Почините телефон (вызвав мастера).
6. Нам уже починили телефон.
7. Нам починили телефон неделю назад.
8. Мне сейчас устанавливают спутниковую антенну.

Ex. 5. Translate the sentences into Russian or Ukrainian and point out the OPC with Participle II.

1. The chief wants the job done by tomorrow morning.
2. She wants this name remembered.
3. He wanted the incident forgotten.
4. They wanted the man found.
5. We want them punished.
6. The children wanted their toy repaired.
7. The manager wants the cases counted and weighed.
8. The passenger wanted his lost luggage found immediately.
9. He did not wish it mentioned.

Ex. 6. Translate the sentences into Russian or Ukrainian and point out the OPC with Participle I and Participle II.

1. We saw the fire being put out.
2. The passers-by watched the house being pulled down.
3. I've never heard that name mentioned.
4. Both of them saw the plane shot down.
5. Neither of us saw the plane being shot down.
6. All of them watched the sunken ship being raised.
7. They said nothing of the kind. I heard the news being announced.
8. Have you ever seen a film being shot?
9. None of us noticed the papers thrown away.
10. She watched the piano being carried up the staircase.
11. We heard the dam being blown up.
12. Some of us heard the question repeated.

Ex. 7. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Он хочет, чтобы документы были отосланы воздушной почтой.
2. Они хотят, чтобы товары были отгружены в понедельник.
3. Я хочу отослать эти документы сейчас же.
4. Почему вам покрасили стены в такой темный цвет?
5. Я слышал, как это было сказано несколько раз.
6. Кто вам клал кафель в ванной?
7. Кто вам исправил ошибки?
8. Ученые хотят, чтобы их изобретение использовалось в различных отраслях науки.
9. Он не мог допустить, чтобы его единственного сына исключили из колледжа.
10. Было тяжело видеть его побежденным.
11. Они хотели, чтобы комитет созвали в понедельник.
12. В нашем доме невозможно добиться, чтобы что-нибудь было сделано.

Ex. 8. Fill in the correct form of the infinitive or the -ing form.

Eli Bilston always enjoyed 1) ...*telling*... (tell) us about his life, and we were always afraid 2) ... (interrupt) him because he had a very hot temper. He had left school at thirteen, and he had managed to avoid 3) ... (look for) a real job by 4) ... (work) for his father in the family scrapyards. He was supposed 5) ... (check) the weight of scrap metal leaving the yard, but he always preferred 6) ... (sit) around and 7) ... (make) cups of tea for the other workers instead. You won't be surprised 8) ... (hear) that eventually Eli's father noticed him 9) ... (waste) time 10) ... (do) nothing, and asked him 11) ... (find) another job. Eli never regretted 12) ... (have) to leave the scra-

pyard, because his next job was even easier! He was employed at Dudley Zoo as a nightwatchman, where he found it a pleasure just 13) ... (sit) and 14) ... (watch) the monkeys 15) ... (play) in their cages. His only duty was 16) ... (feed) the jaguars at dawn – something which he claims he only forgot 17) ... (do) once in his time there. He said that he would never forget 18) ... (see) the zookeeper's face after the poor man had tried 19) ... (give) them their lunch – they had nearly eaten him alive! After 20) ... (work) in the zoo for six years, war broke out in Europe and Eli went on 21) ... (join) the army in the hope of finding some adventure.

Ex. 9. Use the infinitive or the -ing form.

1. I suggest (call) the cinema to find out what time the film begins.
2. It's no use (try) to make excuses. She won't believe you.
3. I look forward to (see) the artwork in the museum's latest exhibition.
4. She spent a long time (talk) on the telephone so she didn't finish her chores.
5. Fred enjoys (listen) to classical music as it helps him relax.
6. We were happy (hear) that Mary is coming to visit us.
7. The couple plan (announce) their engagement later today.
8. Will you let me (read) you some parts to tell me if you like them?
9. We saw him (paint) the fence as we walked past his house.
10. I would have preferred (change) my clothes before we went out to dinner.
11. It was so nice of him (send) me flowers.
12. Sandra was the last (perform) at the dance recital.
13. For Bob (retire) at such a young age was unexpected.
14. It's raining. There's no point in (go) out now.
15. Would you be so helpful as(carry) this heavy bag for me?
16. You should (speak) to her when you saw her.
17. He seems (work) hard on a solution to the problem. Don't interrupt him.
18. He was the first runner(finish) the marathon.

16.3. The Nominative Absolute Participial Construction

This construction consists of two interdependent elements, nominal and verbal, which are in a predicative relation. The nominal element is a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the nominative case. The nominal and the verbal elements make a syntactical complex functioning as a detached adverbial modifier.

Compare the sentences:

- *All the delegates objecting to the resolution voted for our proposal.* – Все делегаты, возражавшие против этой резолюции, проголосовали за наше предложение. (a participial phrase)

- *All the delegates objecting, the resolution was changed.* – Так как все делегаты возражали, резолюция была изменена. (the Nominative Absolute Participial Construction)

In a participial phrase the subject of the sentence is as a rule related both to the verb which functions as predicate and to the participle.

In the NAPC the subject of the sentence is related only to the verb which functions as predicate, and the nominal element is related to the participle.

This construction is used in the function of an adverbial modifier:

1. Of time.

- *The conference being over, the delegates made a tour of the country.* – Когда конференция закончилась, делегаты совершили поездку по стране.

- *This said, he turned and fixed his eyes on Mrs. Bretton.* – Когда это было сказано, он повернулся и уставился на Миссис Бреттон.

- *The preparation completed, we started off.* – Когда подготовка окончилась, мы отправились в путь.

2. Of reason.

- *The situation being favorable, they bought the shares.* – Так как ситуация была благоприятной, они купили акции.

- *We began to talk, but my attention distracted by my surroundings, I took small notice of him.* – Мы начали разговаривать, но так как мое внимание отвлекло происходящее вокруг (было отвлечено происходящим), я мало обращал на него внимание.

3. Of attendant circumstances. In this function the NAPC is mostly placed at the end of the sentence.

- *We were both standing leaning against the mantelpiece, she admiring her fan of blotting paper, I staring at her.* – Мы оба стояли у камина; она любовалась веером из промокательной бумаги, а я глядел на нее.

- *One morning he stood in front of the tank, his nose almost pressed to the glass.* – Однажды утром он стоял перед витриной, почти прижавшись носом к стеклу.

4. Of condition.

• *Weather (time, circumstances) permitting, we will start tomorrow.* – Если погода (время, обстоятельства) позволят, мы поедем завтра.

• *Conciliation failing, force remains.* – Если не удастся достигнуть примирения, приходится применить силу.

• *He was a gentleman, but he was passionate, the cup once sipped, would he consent to put it down?*

16.4. The Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction

The Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction is introduced by the preposition *with*. It is in most cases used in the function of an adverbial modifier of manner or attendant circumstances.

• *Andrew went into the house with his heart beating fast.* – (Когда) Эндрю вошел в дом, сердце его сильно билось (с бьющимся сердцем).

• *They were walking on again, with Hugh calmly drawing at his pipe.* – Они снова шли вперед; Хью спокойно покуривал свою трубку.

• *She went on reading with her eyes fixed on the pages of the book.*

• *It is unhealthy to sleep with the windows shut.*

16.5. Absolute Constructions without a Participle

The Nominative Absolute Construction

It is used in the function of an adverbial modifier of time or attendant circumstances.

• *Breakfast over, he went to his counting house.* – Когда кончили завтракать, он пошел в свою контору.

• *He went home alone, his heart full of strange emotion.* – Он отправился домой один; душа его была переполнена странными чувствами.

The Prepositional Absolute Construction

It is mostly used in the function of an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.

• *I found him reading, and waiting for me, with his stick in his hand.* – Он был готов и ждал меня; в руке у него была палка.

Practice

Ex. 1. Point of the “Nominative Absolute” construction and translate the sentences into Russian or Ukrainian.

1. She had sunk into a chair and was sitting there, her small fingers curling and uncurling themselves nervously.

2. The door being opened, and Bunter having produced an electric torch, the party stepped into a wide stone passage.

3. ... Mrs. Baddle made the round of the room, candle in hand, to point out all its beauties.

4. “You don’t respect me,” said Dora, her voice trembling.

5. Together they ran back down the road, Mor still gripping her arm in a tight grip.

6. Men, their caps pulled down, their collars turned up, passed by.

7. Before he moved himself Bertrand said, his eyes on Dixon: “That’s quite clear, is it?”

8. Constantia lay like a statue, her hands by her sides, the sheet up to her chin. She stared at the ceiling.

9. The strain of his indecision over, he felt like a man recovering from an illness.

10. Four seconds later Dixon was on the way out of the hotel into the sunlight, his shilling in his pocket.

11. Another time when we were going through Ferne Bay on our way back from a long excursion, it being a hot day and all of us thirsty, she suggested that we should go into the Dolphin and have a glass of beer.

12. Dinner over, Carrie went into the bathroom where they could not disturb her, and wrote a little note.

13. The patient’s leg having been amputated, there was no doubt of his recovering soon.

14. The voices had receded; and James was left alone; his ears standing up like a hare’s; and fear creeping about his inwards.

Ex. 2. Translate the sentences into Russian and Ukrainian.

1. The proposal being unconstitutional, the committee rejected it.

2. England being a constitutional monarchy, the Queen of England is only a formal ruler.

3. The final round of the negotiations over, a joint communiqué was signed.

4. London is not only the centre of commerce and finance but also a great port, with many of the imported and exported goods passing through it.

5. It being Sunday, the shops were closed.

6. There being a lot of things to discuss, the conference lasted long.

7. There are ten executive departments under the US President, the heads of these departments forming a council known as the President's Cabinet. Besides these ten executive departments, there are many independent offices, the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) being one of them.

Ex. 3. Translate the sentences, point out participles and participial constructions and comment on their function.

A.

1. Explained again, the rule became quite clear to everybody.
2. The rule explained, we started doing exercises.
3. The rule being explained is not easy.
4. The rule explained is difficult.
5. We would like it explained again.
6. If explained the rule will not seem difficult.

B.

1. The man saved was a Norwegian sailor.
2. The man saved a Norwegian sailor.
3. All the children having been saved, everybody felt relieved.
4. Having saved the boy's life, the doctor felt relieved.
5. I want him saved.
6. The passengers are being saved.

Revision Exercises on Participles

Ex. 1. Translate the sentences stating the function of the participle.

1. The boy playing in the garden is my sister's son.
2. You can get the recommended book in the library.
3. He asked her to go on with her story, promising not to interrupt her again.
4. Receiving no letters from her father, she called him.
5. He left the office at three o'clock, saying he would be back at five.
6. She showed the travelers into the room reserved for them.
7. She stood leaning against the wall.
8. He lay on the sofa reading a newspaper.
9. A person bringing good news is always welcome.
10. Books read in the childhood seem like old friends.
11. Having lived in that town all his life, he knew it very well.
12. The figures mentioned in his article were published in all the newspapers.

13. Having been advised by the doctor to go to the south, she decided to spend her leave in Sochi.

14. There are many wonderful books describing the life of people in the North.

15. Having been three times seriously wounded, he was no longer fit for active service.

Ex. 2. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate forms from the given ones.
Building, being built, built, used, using, sent, sending, being sent

1. The houses ___ many years ago are not as convenient as the modern ones.

2. What is the number of apartment houses ___ in the past few years?

3. The number of apartment houses ___ for the population of Moscow is rapidly growing.

4. The workers ___ this house used new construction methods.

5. At the conference they discussed new methods ___ in building.

6. The new methods ___ in the building of houses proved more effective.

7. Here are some samples of the products of this plant ___ to different parts of the country.

8. These are the samples of products ___ last month.

Ex. 3. Open the brackets using the correct form of the participle.

1. A crowd of ___ (excite) people were watching the firemen trying to save the ___ (burn) building.

2. "During my vacation I came across several extremely ___ (interest) books," said he. "Which ones?" she asked in an ___ (interest) voice.

3. Why do you look so ___ (worry)? – I've had a number of ___ (worry) telephone calls lately.

4. I don't know what was in the ___ (burn) letter, I didn't read it.

5. Nothing can save the ___ (sink) ship now, all we can do is to try and save the passengers.

6. It was an ___ (excite) incident. No wonder she spoke about it in an ___ (excite) voice.

7. After hearing the ___ (frighten) tale, the ___ (frighten) children wouldn't go to sleep.

8. The doctor did his best to convince her that there was nothing seriously wrong with the boy, but the ___ (worry) mother wouldn't calm down.

9. Changes in prices of the products ___ (produce) with the same resources will change the supply.

10. The economist is interested in factors ___ (affect) the allocation of resources for producing particular goods.

Ex. 4. Translate the sentences into English.

Приносящий, принесенный, принося, принеся, переводящий, переведенный, переводя, переведа, давая, написав, читающий, берущий, данный, прочитав, сделанный, пьющий, сказанный, будучи потерян-ным, нарисовав, написавший, взятый, рисуя, выпитый, сделав, пишу-щий, прочитанный, говорящий, идущий, сказав, сидевший, посмотрев, будучи забыт, строящий, строящийся, поиграв, рассказанный, расска-завший, принесший, будучи принесенным, построенный, продав.

Ex. 5. Insert Participle I or II.

1. It was a windy day, and the air ___ (to stir) on her face soon brightened it.

2. He took a ___ (to fold) strip of paper from his vest and gave it to the reporter.

3. There was one bright star ___ (to shine) in the sky.

4. He reminded you of a ___ (to frighten) ship ___ (to run) aimlessly hither and thither.

5. At one end was a group of beautiful women exquisitely ___ (to gown), ___ (to wear) diamonds on their heads and bosoms.

6. Maxim stooped, and picked up a ___ (to fall) petal and gave it to me.

7. They came to the quiet little station ___ (to light) by a single bulb, almost ___ (to hide) in a mass of oleander and vines.

8. She remained silent but her silence was like a question ___ (to hang) in the dark between them.

9. With ___ (to close) eyes he leaned back on the bench.

10. We walked down the hall and down the wide thickly ___ (to carpet) stairs.

11. There were ___ (to light) candles on the table.

12. There was a long line of ___ (to abandon) trucks and carts on the road ___ (to lead) up the bridge.

13. A tall, thin man with a sharp pointed face sat at a table ___ (to lay) for dinner.

14. The voice had something ___ (to appeal) in it.

15. There was a balcony along the second floor ___ (to hold up) by the columns.

Ex. 6. Rephrase the sentences using participles.

1. While we were crossing the bridge, we saw Dan, who was talking with an old lady.

2. As we were very tired, we refused to go for a walk.

3. As the boys had had climbed the mountains the summer before, they understood the difficulties.

4. A large branch, which had been broken by the wind, lay across the road.

5. At a conference of the Academy of Sciences, which is now being held in Moscow, a number of important scientific problems are being discussed.

6. When he crossed the bridge, he saw a small village, which was situated at the foot of a hill.

7. I'll show you the article which has been written by my brother.

8. As he had been taught English by a good teacher, he knew the English language well.

9. The moon was invisible as it was hidden by a cloud.

10. As they had been warned that the river was rising rapidly, they turned back.

Ex. 7. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Я еще не просмотрела все журналы, присланные из Москвы.

2. Машины, заказанные на Львовском заводе, придут через несколько дней.

3. Я уже проверила все сочинения, написанные студентами моей группы.

4. Покажите мне список студентов, изучающих английский язык.

5. Все студенты, принимающие участие в этой работе, должны прийти в университет к девяти.

6. Имея такой хороший словарь, вы легко сможете перевести эту статью.

7. Переходя через мост, я встретил своих друзей.

8. Вы должны быть очень внимательными, играя в шахматы.

9. Будучи очень усталым, я решил остаться дома.

10. Капитан стоял на палубе, давая распоряжения команде.

11. Мы долго сидели в саду, разговаривая о нашей поездке на юг.

12. Прожив несколько лет в Польше, он знал польский язык очень хорошо.

13. Получив весь материал, который был ему нужен, он начал писать статью.

14. Сдав все экзамены, он поехал в деревню, чтобы отдохнуть.

15. Он показал нам список товаров, экспортируемых этой компанией.

16. Вернувшись из экспедиции, он сделал очень интересный доклад.

17. Товары, осмотренные на таможне, были отвезены на склад.

18. Железная дорога, соединяющая эту деревню с городом, была построена в прошлом году.

Ex. 8. Rephrase the sentences using participles.

1. I was away at the time of the disastrous floods. I could, therefore, do nothing to help with salvage work.

2. The world disappointed him. He became a monk.

3. The rescue party decided that it would be hopeless to carry out a search while the fog persisted. They put off their rescue bid until the next day.

4. He was brought up in the belief that pleasures were sinful. As a result, he now leads an ascetic life.

5. This letter was addressed to the wrong house. It never reached my friend.

6. One can allow for the fact that the orchestra was under-rehearsed. Even so, last night's concert was extremely disappointed.

7. He was very angry when his car broke down. He had had it serviced only a week before.

8. A new conception has been developed in theoretic linguistics. The conception is useful in language teaching.

9. The man lost interest in his work. He had been passed over in favour of an outsider when a senior position became vacant.

10. He had to put off buying a house. He was unable to borrow the money from any bank.

Ex. 9. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Гордясь своим отцом, он часто говорит о нем.

2. Выступая на собрании, я забыл упомянуть об этом факте.

3. Как зовут человека, говорящего сейчас по телефону?

4. Наконец, она увидела человека, спасшего ее сына.

5. Некоторые вопросы, которые затрагиваются в докладе, заслуживают особого внимания.

6. Они усыновили мальчика, потерявшего родителей в авиационной катастрофе.

7. Не найдя нужной книги дома, я отправился в библиотеку.

8. Не выполнив работу вовремя, я вынужден был извиниться перед ними.

9. Пробыв в Лондоне около недели, я мог рассказать им много интересного.

10. Путешествуя по стране, мы познакомились со многими достопримечательностями.

11. Поняв, что не сможет выполнить всю работу одна, она попросила меня о помощи.

12. Зная, что у меня достаточно времени, чтобы дойти до кинотеатра, я не спешил.

13. Приїхав в той вечір к своєму другу, я узнав, что его еще нет дома, но что он придет с минуты на минуту.

14. Увидев, что такси подъехало к дому, он взял вещи и быстро спустился вниз.

Ex. 10. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Це була одна з тих історій, які нам часто розповідала мати.
2. Він не міг забути ту сумну історію, що розповіла стара.
3. Він дуже уважно слухав історію, яку розповідала одна з дівчат.
4. Обіцяна допомога не надходила.
5. Дівчина, що розмовляла по телефону, нарешті закінчила розмову.
6. Це один зі студентів, що брав участь у конференції.
7. Ми йшли дорогою, що вела до столиці.
8. Він показав нам фотографію палацу, збудованого в минулому сторіччі.
9. Він приніс мені декілька ілюстрованих журналів.
10. Побачивши мене, вона посміхнулась і сказала, що рада мене бачити.
11. Зробивши цю помилку, він не зміг розв'язати задачу.
12. Ніколи не намагайся допомагати людині, яка цього не бажає.
13. Усі люди, що були присутні на зборах, намагалися висловити свою думку.
14. Принцеса з посмішкою дивилася на дітей, що гралися в садочку.
15. Ти не повинен був читати листа, що надійшов позавчора.

Ex. 11. Translate the sentences into Russian or Ukrainian and state the function of the participle.

1. While walking with Tom we discussed many questions.
2. Being in Kiev I wasn't able to take part in our conference.
3. The work done by you is very interesting.
4. When he was young he fought on the front during the Second World War.
5. The people invited to the conference have already come.
6. In this shop you can buy things made abroad.
7. I like to read books dealing with the lives of great travellers.
8. We must speak to the people who sent us the letters.
9. The guests sitting at the table were laughing and joking much.
10. He lay on the sofa trying to go to sleep.
11. Being very tired he was listening to the teacher's questions badly.
12. A man who worked with your son abroad has rung me up today.
13. Not knowing this rule I can't do my lessons.

Ex. 12. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Ученики, занимающиеся английским, смогут говорить по-английски довольно хорошо уже через два года.
2. Газеты и журналы, полученные вчера, лежали на столе.
3. Выполняя десятое упражнение, я допустила несколько ошибок.
4. Как фамилия студента, выступающего сейчас с докладом?
5. Будучи в Киеве, я посмотрела новую пьесу этого писателя.
6. Он говорил так тихо, потому что боялся разбудить детей, спящих в соседней комнате.
7. Работая с этими людьми, я узнала много интересного.
8. Будучи молодым, он сменил несколько профессий, прежде чем стал капитаном корабля.
9. Так как я не знал людей, разговаривавших друг с другом, я попросил Анну представить меня им.
10. Здание, построенный недалеко от нашего дома, – новый супермаркет.
11. Не зная многих слов этого урока, я пользовался словарем, когда делал упражнения.
12. Девушка, поющая сейчас украинские песни, – моя старая подруга.
13. Будучи школьником, я каждое лето отдыхал в спортивном лагере.
14. Не зная языка, на котором они говорили, я не мог ничего понять.
15. Будучи способным ребенком, он хорошо учился по всем предметам.
16. Вы знаете человека, приезжавшего к нам на прошлой неделе?
17. Слушая лекцию профессора, я записал несколько вопросов, которые собирался ему задать.

Ex. 13. Replace the infinitive in brackets by the appropriate form of the participle.

1. She stayed ___ (to lock) in her room, ___ (to refuse) to come downstairs.
2. He had a good practical knowledge of the language, ___ (to work) as an interpreter for many years.
3. They went out as they had come, ___ (to see) nobody and ___ (to see) by no one on their way.
4. Except for the grand piano and the pianist ___ (to sit) before it, the stage was empty.
5. He looked so beautiful and peaceful, ___ (to sit) in that chair under the tree.

6. He looked at the scene ___ (to shake) to the depth of his heart.
7. The boy came out of the water, all blue and ___ (to shake) from head to foot.
8. ___ (To arrive) at the airport where he was to change, he had to wait for three hours for the connection.
9. ___ (to arrive) in the town about twenty years before, he had succeeded thereafter beyond his wildest expectations.
10. ___ (to support) by her elbow, Mary listened to their talk.
11. ___ (to support) her by his arm, he helped her out of the carriage.
12. The girl was fascinated by the dark surface of the water ___ (to reflect) the stars.
13. The young foliage of the trees, ___ (to reflect) in the river, looked like lace.
14. I saw the figure of an old woman ___ (to come) towards me.
15. My brother is a soldier just ___ (to come) back home on leave.
16. He retired ___ (to leave) the laboratory in the hands of a talented successor.
17. He retired ___ (to turn) the laboratory into a big research centre.
18. ___ (to finish) their meal, they went for a stroll in the park.
19. ___ (to look) through the paper, he gave it to the secretary to be typed.
20. The room had a musty smell as though ___ (not to live) in for quite a time.
21. My father hates being disturbed when ___ (to engage) in some kind of work.
22. He always keeps a diary while ___ (to travel).

Ex. 14. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Актор, що розповідає казки дітям по радіо, відомий на всю країну.
2. Дитина завжди з великою зацікавленістю слухала казки, що розповідала її мати.
3. Розповідаючи казки, вона завжди розмовляла різними голосами, імітуючи різних героїв.
4. Після того, як вона розповіла дітям цю захоплюючу історію, вона побажала їм доброї ночі.
5. Хлопчик, що пробігав повз наш будинок, раптово зупинився.
6. Він був дуже зайнятий і не почув, що я увійшов до кімнати.
7. Почувши щось на вулиці, вона підняла голову.
8. Вона відчула, що їй стає краще після того, як випила чаю.
9. Дівчина, що плакала в кімнаті, дуже зголодніла.
10. Граючись у своїй кімнаті, діти не помітили, що вже досить темно.

11. Підійшовши до дверей, він уважно слухав, що відбувається на вулиці.

12. Він вийняв з кишені зім'ятий лист.

13. Бабуся з посмішкою дивилася на онуків, що гралися на подвір'ї.

14. Зробивши домашнє завдання, діти пішли до парку.

15. Прочитавши багато книжок Діккенса, він добре знав творчість цього письменника.

Ex. 15. Rephrase the sentences using participles.

1. When he arrived at the railway station, he bought a ticket, walked to the platform and boarded the train.

2. As he was promised help, he felt calmer.

3. After he was shown in, he was told to take off his coat and wait for a while.

4. Robin started the building of the house at once and finished it before the season of rains set in.

5. He poured out a cup of coffee, sat down in an armchair and looked at the woman who was sitting opposite him.

6. When he had left the house and was crossing the street, he suddenly stopped as he remembered that he had forgotten to phone his friend.

7. He looked at me and hesitated, he did not know what to say.

8. As he had long lived in those parts and knew the place very well, he easily found his way to the marketplace.

9. He has no language problems, because he has been studying English for a long time.

10. After I had written this exercise, I began to doubt whether it was correct.

11. Take care when you cross the street.

12. Students should always be attentive when they are listening to the lecturer.

13. There are many students who study music.

14. Don't you feel tired after you have walked so much?

Ex. 16. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Читаючи англійські книжки, я завжди виписую нові слова.

2. Студенти, що працюють у нашій школі, прибули з Києва.

3. Сказавши це, вона припинила розмову, тому що більш не мала, що сказати.

4. Оскільки її запросили на вечір, вона не могла піти в театр.

5. Ми із жахом дивилися на зруйнований міст.

6. Після того, як посылку запакували, її віднесли на пошту.

7. Центральний кут – це кут, утворений двома радіусами.
8. Дівчина показала на групу жінок, що сиділи в кутку кімнати.
9. Злякавшись собаки, дитина почала голосно плакати.
10. Оскільки лист був написаний олівцем, його було важко читати.

Ex. 17. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Выпив воду, она поставила стакан перед тарелкой, рядом с чашкой.

2. Через минуту она обратилась через широкий овальный стол к Маркусу, сидящему прямо напротив нее.

3. С тех пор у старухи, единственной во всей деревне, есть колодец, новый, крашенный синей краской забор вокруг участка и асфальтированная дорожка, ведущая через весь двор к колодцу.

4. Том, который был старше Адама на пять лет, терпеть его не мог и во время коротких посещений матери не пытался скрыть своего отношения, даже зная, как этим ее огорчает.

5. Улыбающийся, радостный и довольный, он воспринимал эти приезды как возвращение в мир самых прекрасных воспоминаний.

6. Сразу после таких дискуссий он, хлопнув дверью, выходил вместе с женой и дочкой в машину и катил через всю Польшу к себе в деревню.

7. Он, инженер, закончивший университет, перешел на должность директора музея в родном городе.

8. Красный от смущения, он выглядел словно подросток, которого поймали, когда он подглядывал через замочную скважину.

9. Их ждала элегантная, высокая, стройная женщина в невероятной шляпе, огромных солнечных очках и с шелковым платком, повязанным под воротником жакета.

10. Всякий раз, проезжая мимо нее, он останавливался, выходил из машины и покупал цветы для своей матери.

11. Не представляя свою жизнь без полетов, он скрывал свою болезнь от всего мира.

12. Не желая, чтобы жена отвозила его, как какого-нибудь калеку, на своей машине, он до конца сам ездил на аэродром.

13. Пустота, возникшая после отъезда матери, все еще появлялась, но уже не так болезненно.

14. Количество школ, построенных в стране за последние годы, очень велико.

15. Девушка поставила в вазу цветы, присланные ей в день рождения.

16. Имя человека, написавшего эту рукопись, неизвестно.

17. Люди, проводящие много времени на свежем воздухе, обычно очень сильные и здоровые.

18. Она держала в руках огромную корзину, наполненную прекрасными цветами.

19. Это была просторная, высокая комната, меблированная довольно роскошно.

20. Держа Оливера за руку, Сайкс подошел к разрушенному, заброшенному дому.

21. Одетая в легкое белое платье, она сама казалась белее и легче.

Ex. 18. Rewrite the sentences using participles.

1. He was lying on the bed and he was reading a book.

2. Lisa took a deep breath and dived into the water.

3. Jack burnt his finger while he was lighting the fire.

4. After Ann had ironed the clothes, she put them away.

5. Because he was cold, James turned on the heater.

6. The photographs, which were taken at the reception, were blurred.

7. Alison washed the paintbrushes before she painted the living room.

8. She was sitting on the sofa and she was knitting a jumper.

9. The girl who is sitting next to Alison is Vicky.

10. Because he had forgotten to do the shopping, he ate out that night.

11. Emma turned the key in the lock and opened the door.

Ex. 19. Replace the infinitive in brackets by the appropriate form of the participle or the gerund.

1. (to read) the telegram twice, he understood that the matter needed immediate attention.

2. When (to fill in) a form, you must write your name and address clearly.

3. (to make) great progress by the end of the school year he was able to start (to read) books in the original.

4. "Don't lose your things, little boy," said a man, (to pick up) the gloves (to drop) by the boy.

5. (to be) fond of music, my brother never misses the opportunity (to go) to a good concert.

6. (to walk) about the town for some time, he went up to a man and asked to be directed to the main square.

7. I thought I had lost my bag and was therefore grateful to the man (to bring) it back to me.

8. I had never realized what a talented writer he was until I saw his play (to stage) in a Moscow theatre.

9. The man (to make) the opening speech at the exhibition is a well-known painter.

Ex. 20. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Взяв лист бумаги, он начал писать письмо товарищу, уехавшему в отпуск.
2. Письмо состояло из нескольких строк, написанных карандашом.
3. Женщина, открывшая нам дверь, была служанкой.
4. Путешественники увидели одинокую фигуру, стоящую на берегу.
5. Вот новые книги, присланные для нашей библиотеки.
6. Увидев друзей, пришедших проводить его, он подошел к ним.
7. Она открыла книгу, подаренную ей в день рождения.
8. Держа ребенка за руку, женщина вошла в дверь.
9. Имя человека, написавшего это стихотворение, неизвестно.
10. Услышав шум, хозяин, спавший наверху, начал стрелять.
11. Проходя мимо витрины, он обратил внимание на картину, выставленную там.
12. Пьеса, которая сейчас исполняется, очень популярна.
13. Ребенок, напуганный шумом, заплакал.
14. Письмо, лежащее на столе, было адресовано хозяину дома.
15. Я собираюсь встретиться с человеком, позвонившим мне вчера и пригласившим на концерт.

Ex. 21. Rewrite the sentences replacing underlined parts by Participles.

Example: *Resources can be a serious factor that limits production.* – *Resources can be a serious factor limiting production.*

Consumers typically buy a smaller quantity of the good that is sold at a higher price. – *Consumers typically buy a smaller quantity of the good sold at a higher price.*

When societies act through their governments, they can make decisions on allocation of scarce resources. – *Acting through their governments, societies can make decisions on allocation of scarce resources.*

1. Firms that produce computers act as buyers in the markets for the services of computer programmers.
2. A nation's income is the sum of the incomes of all the people who live in that country.
3. There are several factors that determine a consumer's demand.
4. Individuals, families and governments that consume goods and services are called consumers in economics.
5. Supply restrictions that are imposed by cartels are as characteristic of industrialized economies as of developing economies.
6. Excess supply is a situation in which the quantity of one good that is produced at one time typically reduces the quantity of another good that is produced at the same time.

7. Some of the inputs that an individual uses are food, chairs and tables, but another input of great importance is time. The consumer's time is limited, and this time limitation as well as his or her limited income influence the decisions that are made in day-to-day life.

8. When we put demand and supply together, we can determine prices and quantities in different markets.

9. When it increases the quantity of one good produced at one time, the society reduces the produced quantity of another good as its resources are scarce.

10. When people consume goods and services, they provide a basis for further production.

11. As they make up a major portion of the national income, US high technology industries dominate and influence almost all other industries in the country.

Revision Exercises on Participial Constructions

Ex. 1. Point out the Objective and the Subjective Participial Construction. Translate the sentences.

1. In the midday quiet of the bush she heard a small bird singing.
2. The taxi could be seen waiting outside.
3. His face clouded when he heard his name spoken.
4. All the while she felt her heart beating with a vague fear.
5. She had the drawing-room redecorated.
6. The darkness found him occupied with these thoughts.
7. Somewhere a long way off a telephone bell rang and a voice could be heard speaking.
8. For their New Year's Eve party she had all the furniture moved out of the parlor and sitting-room.
9. Temple heard the woman fumbling at the wall.
10. She had her bed moved to the corner of the porch.
11. She heard the musicians tuning up in the back parlour.
12. She averted her eyes each time she found herself being stared at.

Ex. 2. Translate into English using the Objective or the Subjective Participial Construction.

1. Вам надо отутюжить и почистить костюм.
2. У него украли документы в прошлом году.
3. Было видно, как крохотные снежинки кружили в воздухе и мягко опускались на одежду людей.
4. Было хорошо слышно, как дети пели в соседней комнате, а их родители громко аплодировали после каждой песни.

5. Мы считаем себя обманутыми этими людьми.
6. Тимми вышел на балкон и увидел, как люди начинают собираться у церкви.
7. Учитель хотел, чтобы все было сделано быстро и правильно.
8. Я не могла заснуть, потому что в моей комнате было слышно, как соседи громко веселятся.
9. Девушка громко плакала, потому что считала себя покинутой всеми друзьями.
10. Вам не починят кран до понедельника, поэтому можете пока пользоваться моим.

Ex. 3. Translate the sentences, point out the Nominative Absolute Construction and the Prepositional Absolute Construction.

1. There being no chance of escape, the thief was arrested on the spot.
2. Oliver knocked weakly at the door and, all his strength failing him, sank near the door.
3. The bridge having been swept away by the flood, the train was late.
4. There being little time left, they hired a cab to get to the theater in time.
5. It being pretty late, they decided to postpone their visit.
6. The weather being cold, he put on his overcoat.
7. The weather being very warm, the closet window was left open.
8. Our horses being weary, it was agreed that we should come to a halt.
9. Electrons moving through a wire, electrical energy is generated.
10. All the necessary preparations being made, the army launched an attack.
11. They continued their way, the boy sobbing quietly, the man ashamed.
12. She danced light as a feather, eyes shining, feet flying, her body bent a little forward.
13. She rose from the bed and removed her coat and stood motionless, her head bent, her hands clasped before her.
14. Jack sat silent, his long legs stretched out.
15. He sat down quickly, his face buried in his hands.
16. Little Paul sat, with his chin resting on his hand.
17. He stood, with his arms folded.
18. She stood there, with her brows frowning, her blue eyes looking before her.
19. The girl wandered away, with tears rolling down her cheeks.
20. Then, with her heart beating fast, she went up and rang the bell.

Ex. 4. Rephrase the sentences with the help of the Absolute Constructions.

1. Little Paul sat, his chin was resting on his hand.
2. Then they heard the noise of the plane, its shadow was passing over the open glade.
3. His directions to the porter were finished and he came up to his niece.
4. As the dinner was over, we assembled in the drawing room.
5. The fifth of June arrived so they departed.
6. After everything was understood, the conference was over.
7. As the weather was very cold, he put on his overcoat.
8. When the weather changed we decided to stay where we were.
9. He stood still and his arms were folded.
10. Lanny stood looking at the lorry rolling away and his cheek was burning and his fists were clenched.
11. As the rain had ruined my hat, I had to buy a new one.
12. After this was done, they set off with light hearts.
13. As few people were buying his pencils, he could hardly earn a living.
14. As there was a severe storm at sea, the steamer couldn't leave the port.
15. As it was Sunday, the library was closed.

Ex. 5. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Після того, як лекція закінчилася, всі студенти пішли до читально-го залу.
2. Оскільки настала сприятлива погода, ми почали готуватися до експедиції.
3. Хоч температура повітря була – 15 С⁰, чимало людей купалося в Дніпрі.
4. Він заснув, а світло в кімнаті залишилося горіти до ранку.
5. Усі студенти групи склали успішно всі екзамени, причому жоден з них не отримав посередньої оцінки.
6. Студентів було завчасно попереджено, і ніхто з них не запізнився на заняття.
7. У нього вдома не було словника, і він змушений був поїхати до бібліотеки.
8. Оскільки час на контрольну роботу закінчився, студенти почали складати свої переклади на стіл викладача.
9. Мільйони українців змушені жити за кордоном, причому найбільше їх у Канаді.
10. Гелікоптер зазнав катастрофи в горах. Ніхто не залишився в живих.
11. Не маючи іншого виходу, я звернувся до нього за допомогою.
12. Не було жодних заперечень. Рішення було прийнято.

13. Вона взяла його за руку, її очі були вологі.

14. Оскільки ніякого прогресу на переговорах не було, 16 жовтня він пішов на пенсію.

Ex. 6. Translate into English.

1. Она сидела на ступеньках, ее скрещенные руки лежали на коленях.
2. Катерина смотрела на меня все время счастливыми глазами.
3. Они жили жизнью нормальных городских детей, их школьные дни и праздники проходили в обычном ритме.
4. Так как дверь комнаты напротив была открыта, я услышал голоса.
5. Так как ключи были у них, войти было невозможно.
6. Все еще с закрытыми глазами он сказал, что он любит ее.
7. Налив молока, Эндрю сел за стол.
8. Так как был вечер субботы, я нашел Анну в библиотеке.
9. Когда обед был закончен, Том попросил Анну спеть для него.
10. Петр выглядел хорошо, его глаза горели от радости.

Ex. 7. Rephrase the sentences with the help of the Absolute Constructions.

1. As our work was finished, we went home.
2. If the letter is posted today, the news will reach them tomorrow.
3. If mother permits us, we shall go to the cinema.
4. When the working day was over, she went straight home.
5. As a storm was arising, the ship entered the harbour.
6. When the packing had been done, the girls left for the station.
7. As a stop was a long one, the girls got off the train.
8. As the weather was perfect, Anna played tennis every day.
9. As the last month was a very busy one, she could not answer her friend's letter.
10. If time permits, we will come a few days earlier.
11. When the third bell had gone, the curtain slowly rose.
12. Bill could not sleep the whole night, as there was something wrong with his eye.
13. We sat off, the rain was still coming down heavily.
14. As the weather was fine, they went for a walk.
15. As the professor was ill, the lecture was put off.

Ex. 8. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Была тихая летняя ночь. Мы сидели в саду и наблюдали, как луна медленно поднимается из-за деревьев.
2. Мы слышали, как кто-то поет вдали.
3. В детстве я часто слышал, как моя мать пела эту песню.

4. Мы увидели, что по дорожке идет сын нашего соседа.
5. Мы не видели его уже много лет, но часто слышали, как его имя упоминалось в доме его родителей.
6. Мы не раз слышали, как его мать говорила о нем и его работе.
7. Я переделала свое зимнее пальто.
8. Я не починил вчера часы, так как мастерские были закрыты.
9. Когда вы покрасили комнату?
10. Где вы починили свой велосипед?
11. Где вы сделали это фото?
12. Так как было очень тепло, дети спали на открытом воздухе.
13. Когда все приготовления были закончены, дети отправились в лес.
14. Корабль медленно плыл вдоль берегов; сотни птиц кружились над ним.
15. Было очень темно, так как на небе не было ни одной звездочки.
16. Когда солнце село, туристы развели костер.
17. Когда он был мальчиком, он часто ездил с родителями в горы.
18. Покинув в возрасте 18 лет родную деревню, он поехал в Москву учиться.
19. Так как он был одним из лучших студентов, его послали за границу продолжать обучение.
20. Окруженный грубыми и жестокими людьми, Давид очень страдал и, наконец, решил бежать к своей тетушке.

Ex. 9. Rephrase the sentences replacing the Absolute Constructions with subordinate clauses.

1. She sat staring into the fire, the sock forgotten on her knee.
2. He heard the bathers coming up the sandy road, their voices ringing through the quiet.
3. We walked very slowly home, Agnes and I admiring the moonlight, and Mr. Wickfield scarcely rising his eyes from the ground.
4. And then came the final moment, with the guards coming for him.
5. Little Oliver twist was lying on the ground, with his shirt unbuttoned and his head thrown back.
6. The hour being late, she hastened home.
7. The next morning, it being Sunday, they all went to the church.
8. He being no more heard of, it was natural to forget everything.
9. The wind stirring among trees and bushes, we could hear nothing.
10. This material being a dielectric, no current can flow through it.
11. Many men preceded Newton in the field of mechanics, perhaps the most outstanding being Galileo.
12. The fuel exhausted, the engine stopped.

13. Probably the first metals used by man were gold, silver, and copper, these metals being found in nature in the native or metallic state.

14. A magnet being broken in two, each piece becomes a magnet with its own pair of poles.

15. Many technical and scientific problems having been solved, the first space flight could be realized.

Ex. 10. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Если погода позволит, мы пойдём на каток.

2. Так как все было готово, она решила отдохнуть.

3. Так как было уже поздно, они никуда не пошли.

4. Так как погода была холодная, Джек спрятал руки в карманы пальто.

5. Так как уже довольно быстро темнело, она поспешила домой.

6. Когда солнце зашло, сразу стало темно.

7. Так как наш разговор был закончен, я пошел домой, чтобы все хорошо обдумать.

8. Когда письмо было написано, она быстро побежала на почту, чтобы отправить его.

9. Так как оставалось еще полчаса до отхода поезда, мы решили поужинать на вокзале.

10. Если погода будет благоприятной, спортсмены могут показать хорошие результаты.

11. Мы долго разговаривали: он задавал мне вопросы, а я охотно на них отвечал.

12. Если условия позволят, я приеду к вам на лето.

REVISION OF NON-FINITE FORMS

Ex. 1. Choose between the infinitive and the ing-form as a second action accompanying the action of the predicate verb.

1. I returned to my room one afternoon . . . Rex waiting for me. (*to find*)

2. That evening they sat on the back porch, . . . the twilight filter down through the leaves of the trees. (*to watch*)

3. I looked at her for a minute, not (*to understand*)

4. Michael went home . . . that his little son was taken ill. (*to hear*)

5. And so I spent three years . . . an immense amount of very dull stuff, not one-tenth of which I ever used. (*to learn*)

6. She was approaching slowly, . . . her feet. (*to drag*)

7. He arrived on the door step . . . Peter fumbling with the lock, and they entered together. (*to find*)

8. I spent the rest of the day . . . whether I was annoyed or not. (*to wonder*)

9. They went off, . . . us to face the situation. (*to leave*)

Ex. 2. Choose between the infinitive and the ing-form.

1. He was left . . . a couple of hours. (*to sleep*)
2. When the car was heard . . . the people fled anywhere to avoid the police. (*to approach*)
3. He was understood . . . the new teacher. (*to be*)
4. Her brother was reported . . . alive in Europe. (*to be*)
5. I don't see how anyone can be expected . . . a case like this. (*to tackle*)
6. His book was found . . . a fine piece of writing. (*to be*)
7. In your story he is shown . . . a lot for other people. (*to do*)
8. I was made . . . at the gate. (*to stand*)
9. She may have found the note because she was seen . . . through the book. (*to look*)
10. He has never been known . . . his temper at rehearsals. (*to lose*)
11. I think you'd like to know, sir, that the train has been heard . . . (*to whistle*)
12. People can feel satisfaction if they are made . . . they are doing a useful service. (*to feel*)
13. When they were getting into the car he was heard . . . good luck to the girl. (*to wish*)
14. From the hill a man could be seen . . . half a mile away. (*to run*)
15. He was instructed . . . for a special grant. (*to apply*)
16. It was a two-storey grey building with a porch that no one was meant . . . on. (*to sit*)
17. The strong currents were thought . . . bathing dangerous. (*to make*)
18. She was found . . . herself by the fire. (*to warm*)
19. He was forced . . . out of his present job. (*to get*)
20. She was understood as . . . any interviews. (*to refuse*)
21. Renny was heard . . . gaily in his room. (*to whistle*)
22. The game was intended . . . time until about nine o'clock. (*to kill*)
23. She was heard . . . the light on. (*to turn*)
24. He has been known . . . his temper occasionally. (*to show*)
25. Meg was called upon . . . her opinion. (*to express*)
26. Two constables were left . . . his arrival. (*to await*)
27. He was found . . . a well-read man. (*to be*)
28. His clothes were left . . . wherever they happened to fall. (*to lie*)
29. "You were seen . . . the ring." "I took it but I didn't steal it." (*to take*)
30. The car belonged to the firm, and I wasn't supposed . . . it for my own pleasure. (*to use*)
31. The invitation was treated as . . . a good sign. (*to be*)
32. He is in hospital. And his condition is reported as . . . serious. (*to be*)

Ex. 3. Translate the following into English using infinitives or -ing forms.

1. Слышали, как посетитель в разговоре с моим отцом упомянул какой-то несчастный случай. (*to hear*)
2. Ему посоветовали не рассказывать им о своей жизни. (*to advise*)
3. Девочке велели разлить в чашки чай. (*to tell*)
4. Слышали, как несколько минут тому назад они спорили на террасе. (*to hear*)
5. «Я имел обыкновение украдкой уходить из дома вечером, – сказал он, – когда предполагалось, что я занимаюсь, в церковь, чтобы поиграть на органе». (*to suppose*)
6. Полагают, что он глубоко привязан к семье. (*to believe*)
7. Было известно, что он пишет книгу о войне. (*to know*)
8. Через окно можно было видеть, что водитель ждет у машины. (*to see*)
9. На этот раз меня попросили зайти к нему домой. (*to ask*)
10. Говорили, что он изменил свое решение. (*to report*)
11. Когда я позвонил в дверь, было слышно, как в холле лает собака. (*to hear*)
12. Было известно, что он никогда не отказывался принять пациента в любое время. (*to know*)
13. Ему разрешили оставить у них свою фамилию и адрес. (*to allow*)
14. Симон и Дик остались разговаривать в гостиной. (*to leave*)
15. Ей дали понять, что она должна выехать из этой квартиры. (*to make*)
16. Кое-кто полагал, что у него есть связи с лондонским отделением фирмы. (*to believe*)
17. Нас оставили посмотреть фильм. (*to leave*)
18. Его не видно целую неделю. Говорят, что он в отпуске. (*to say*)
19. Ему велели прийти сюда к мистеру Эбботу. (*to tell*)
20. Фокса нашли ожидающим нас на террасе. (*to find*)
21. Билла провели в гостиную и оставили там рассматривать картины. (*to leave*)
22. От нас не требуют, чтобы мы сказали, что для него хорошо, а что нет. (*to require*)
23. Его присутствие было неожиданным, потому что говорили, что он путешествует на Востоке. (*to say*)
24. Я подумал, что спички не оставляют лежать в саду просто так. (*to leave*)
25. Я был болен в то время, и миссис Барнаби оставили ухаживать за мной. (*to leave*)
26. Считалось, что она ушла от мужа. (*to believe*)
27. Настроение Хью не позволило мне обратиться к нему с просьбой. (*to make impossible*)

Ex. 4. Choose between the infinitive and the ing-form.

1. My will was weakened. I wanted someone . . . on. (*to lean*)
2. We stood for a while watching a man . . . an Alsatian puppy. (*to train*)
3. I can imagine people not . . . him. (*to like*)
4. Although he was very tired he made himself . . . up and . . . into the bedroom. (*to stand, to move*)
5. He ordered a bottle of beer and some cheese . . . up to his room. (*to send*)
6. There was a lot of noise all around now, and amongst it you could hear a plane . . . unusually low. (*to fly*)
7. I heard Arthur . . . a slight noise which may have been a sigh or a chuckle. (*to make*)
8. “Why do you always have him . . . around?” “He likes it.” (*to hang*)
9. I don’t like girls It takes away the fragrance of youth. (*to smoke*)
10. After supper Willy switched on the wireless and John left him . . . round the drawing-room to the sound of Mozart’s piano concerto in C minor. (*to dance*)
11. We left him . . . the afternoon with his family. (*to spend*)
12. I can’t imagine you . . . anything but what you are. (*to be*)

Ex. 5. Translate the following into English using verbals.

1. Издали виден был грузовик, поднимающийся в гору.
2. Я часто видел, как это делается.
3. Меня не пригласили пойти с ними.
4. Очень важно, чтобы это было сделано быстро.
5. Интересно, почему она не хотела, чтобы я с ними познакомился.
6. Считалось, что они прожили очень счастливую жизнь.
7. Он приказал оседлать ему лошадь и поехал в деревню.
8. Я наблюдал из окна, как Диана разговаривала с соседкой.
9. Она заставила меня переодеться к обеду.
10. Он не хотел, чтобы я соглашался.
11. Я слышал, как говорили, что Лиз могла бы стать замечательной пианисткой.
12. Сколько времени, ты полагаешь, я буду здесь стоять?
13. Видели, как она вошла в лес.
14. Мы оставили детей играть на полу.
15. Мальчиков поймали, когда они крали вишню.
16. Мы оставили детей смотреть телевизор.
17. Мне не нравится, когда девушки курят.
18. Я не допущу, чтобы ты так разговаривал со мной.
19. Она улыбнулась, когда услышала, что ее описывают как женщину среднего возраста.
20. Мне велели приготовить чай.

21. Его рассказ продолжал смешить людей.
22. Она застала всю семью в сборе.
23. Они очень давно делали эту работу и не могли себе представить, что кто-то не знает об этом.
24. Он хотел, чтобы проложили дорогу к деревне.
25. Я позволила ему сводить меня в театр.
26. Она не желает, чтобы ее местонахождение стало известным.

Ex. 6. Translate the following into English using ing-complexes.

1. Он жаловался на то, что у него в комнате очень холодно.
2. Он часто говорил о том, что ему необходимо найти хорошо оплачиваемую работу, но ничего для этого не делал.
3. В письме упоминалось, что миссис Брейн заболела.
4. Она позвала на помощь. Но у нее не было никакой надежды, что помощь придет.
5. Ей не нравилась мысль о том, что ее сын будет жить в одной комнате с каким-нибудь грубым мальчишкой.
6. Он рассказал ей, что для их сына есть возможность получить работу получше.
7. Она терзалась мыслью о том, что за ее ребенком присматривают какие-то чужие люди.
8. Когда он объявил о дне своего отплытия, она не могла сдержать радости.
9. Джулия убрала сигарету так, что он этого не заметил.
10. Твой отец настаивает на том, чтобы ты получил образование в Оксфорде.
11. Он обещал написать ей письмо, и она с нетерпением ждала, когда получит его.

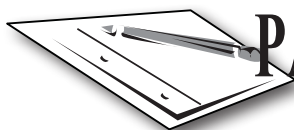
Ex. 7. Translate the following into English using absolute constructions.

1. Я увидел, что он сидел у окна и одна его рука лежала полужатой на столе.
2. Это единственный дом там, и во всей округе некому выслеживать его.
3. Она глубоко дышала, губы ее были приоткрыты, щеки разругались.
4. Она плакала, не таясь и не сводя с него глаз.
5. С Мери в качестве учительницы он очень быстро научился говорить на хорошем английском языке.
6. Я не могу спать, когда не выключено радио.
7. На третьем этаже загорелось окно: кто-то работал допоздна.

8. Я ушел от них поздно вечером с чувством облегчения от груза забот.
9. Он лежал на спине с закрытыми глазами.
10. Джулия от нечего делать посещала лекции.
11. Она увидела Пэт сидящей на полу среди фотографий, разбросанных вокруг нее.

Ex. 8. Translate the following into English using the proper forms of verbals.

1. Написав на конверте адрес, она выбросила открытку в корзину для бумаг.
2. Это была любовная связь, которая, как полагали, продолжалась так давно, что о ней перестали говорить.
3. Так случилось, что они обедали у Долли в тот день.
4. Очень мило с его стороны, что он предложил это.
5. Кажется, он не написал никаких новых пьес.
6. Уплатив шоферу, он взглянул на жену, которая стояла в дверях освещенная заходящим солнцем.
7. Чувство времени – это одна из вещей, которым я, кажется, научился у Джимми.
8. Было похоже, что он получал удовольствие от нашей компании.
9. Говорили, что она еще не приняла никакого решения.
10. Ходят слухи, что ей посоветовали не выходить замуж за Теда.
11. Известно, что он был трижды ранен во время войны.
12. У меня появилось ощущение, что за мной наблюдают.
13. Я не помню, чтобы я когда-либо была около их дома.
14. Крису как-то не хотелось, чтобы над ним смеялись.
15. Так как он никогда раньше не занимал денег, он нашел целый ряд людей, которые были готовы одолжить ему небольшие суммы.
16. Я терпеть не мог, когда мне желали удачи.



PART V

Modal Verbs

17. DEFINITION AND GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF MODAL VERBS

Modal verbs are used to show the speaker's attitude toward the action or state indicated by the infinitive. They show that the action is considered as possible, impossible, probable, improbable, obligatory, necessary, advisable, doubtful or uncertain.

Modal verbs are called **defective** because all of them lack verbals and analytical forms (compound tenses, Passive Voice, Subjunctive Mood etc.). Besides they don't take *-s* in the third person singular. They also have the following peculiarities:

a) All of them (except ought and sometimes dare and need) are followed by the infinitive without the particle TO.

b) All of them (except dare and need) form the negative and the interrogative form without the auxiliary DO.

c) All the modal verbs have two negative forms – a full one and a contracted one:

Should not – shouldn't

May not – mayn't

Note the peculiar contracted form of some modals:

Cannot – can't

Shall not – shan't

Will not – won't

18. CAN

The verb CAN has two forms: CAN for the present tense and COULD for the past and as the subjunctive mood form. The expression TO BE ABLE can be used to supply the missing forms of the verb CAN.

Meanings:

1. Physical and mental ability.

• *Mary can speak English quite well but she can't write it at all. – Мэри довольно хорошо говорит по-английски, но совершенно не умеет писать.*

For **past** actions, **COULD** is used to express general ability, **TO BE ABLE** – ability on a specific occasion, the achievement of something in the past. However, both forms are possible when we say that something did not happen on a specific occasion.

• *When I was younger I could run 10 km in under 40 minutes. – Когда я был моложе, то мог пробежать 10 км за менее, чем 40 минут.*

• *I was able to run 10 km yesterday in 55 minutes. – Я смог вчера пробежать 10 км за 55 минут.*

• *I wasn't able to / couldn't do that new job; it was too difficult.*

• *I looked everywhere but I wasn't able to / couldn't find my wallet.*

Besides, **CAN / COULD** are often used with the verbs *see, hear, smell, taste, feel, remember, understand, believe, guess*.

• *Can you understand why Alice left so suddenly?*

• *As soon as I walked into the room, I could smell gas.*

2. Possibility.

a) General possibility:

CAN / COULD+ simple infinitive – what is / was typically or normally possible

• *Anybody can make a mistake. – Ошибиться может каждый.*

• *In old days a man could be sentenced to death for a small crime. – В старые времена можно было приговорить человека к смерти за небольшое преступление.*

b) Specific possibility:

CAN+ simple infinitive – it is really possible

COULD+ simple infinitive – it is less likely, there is some doubt

• *We can stay with Jim in Oslo (we will be able to stay).*

• *We could stay with Jim in Oslo (may be).*

• *We can go to Paris this weekend, because I don't have to work. – Можем поехать на выходных в Париж, потому что мне не надо работать.*

• *It could rain later, but I don't think it will. – Дождь возможен, но не думаю, что он будет.*

COULD+ perfect infinitive – it was possible, but it didn't happen

• *Dave could have hurt himself when he fell, but he's OK.* – Дейв мог удариться, когда упал, но с ним все в порядке.

3. Asking for and giving permission.

- *Can we go home?* – Можно идти домой?
- *Could I borrow your dictionary?* – Yes, you can.

4. Prohibition (it is found only with the negative form)

- *You can't cross the street here.* – Здесь нельзя переходить улицу.

5. Request, offer, suggestion.

- *Can/could I have some water?* – Можно мне воды?
- *Can/could I give you a hand with the preparations?* – Вам помочь с подготовкой?
- *We can/could go to the cinema.* – Можем сходить в кино.

6. Strong doubt, certainty (negative).

CAN'T/COULDN'T+ any form of the infinitive

COULD expresses greater doubt, so the time-reference is indicated not by the modal verb but by the infinitive.

• *He can't/couldn't be at work now. It's Sunday.* – Не может быть, чтобы он сейчас был на работе (Он не может быть сейчас на работе / Вряд ли он сейчас на работе). Сегодня воскресенье.

• *He can't/couldn't be working now.* – Не может быть, чтобы он сейчас работал.

• *He can't/couldn't have seen it.* – Не может быть, чтобы он это видел.

• *He can't/couldn't have been working for so long.* – Не может быть, чтобы он так долго работал.

7. Surprise.

In this meaning CAN/COULD+ any form of the infinitive is used in questions, but not in the negative form.

- *Can it be so late as all that?* – Неужели уже так поздно?
- *Could he have known her before?* – Неужели он знал ее раньше?

8. Reproach (only with COULD).

• *You could at least have met me at the station.* – По крайней мере, ты мог бы встретить меня на вокзале!

• *You could wipe your feet when you come in!* – Мог бы и вытирать ноги при входе!

9. Sometimes the use of CAN/COULD is conditioned by the type of the clause. So, this modal verb is found **in clauses of purpose**.

• *I'll leave the newspaper on the table so that he can see it at once.* –
Оставлю газету на столе, чтобы он сразу ее увидел.

• *I wrote down the telephone number so that I could remember it.* – *Я записал номер телефона, чтобы запомнить.*

Note some set expressions with the modal verb CAN:

Can't help doing something. – Не могу не делать что-то.

Can't but do something. – Не могу не...

One cannot but wonder. – Нельзя не задуматься.

Practice

Ex. 1. Comment on the use of the verb CAN and translate into Russian or Ukrainian.

1. She can take her examinations next June.
2. He can't be in the street now, it's pouring!
3. A new-born puppy cannot see.
4. I'm sure no harm can be found in such an innocent question.
5. "I mean," she answered firmly, "that I cannot marry you."
6. "She can't have heard of her father's death," said Jim.
7. I suppose she got fed up with Paris after five years. She couldn't have had much fun.
8. They can't understand English anyway.
9. You can't please everyone.
10. A man can do no more than he can.
11. The story could be true, but I don't think it is.
12. The situation was bad, but it could have been worse.
13. Could I have the salt, please?
14. Hello, can I speak to Steve, please?
15. I can't exactly express my meaning.
16. He could not take his eyes off her.
17. She can play the piano quite beautifully.
18. We'll go away today, if you like. We can easily catch the 3.40.
19. It is quite fine, Clara, the rain has stopped. We can walk to a motor bus.
20. You can't take the knowledge you gave me.
21. I will let you know, so you can be there.
22. He was so weak that he could not lift his head.
23. He is much better and can walk without my help now.
24. Oh! It can't be true!

25. Oh! Freddy, there must be one (a cab). You can't have tried.
 26. He can't have taken it (the box) upstairs this morning.
 27. Anne can't mean that, it's not like her.
 28. He couldn't have done it all by himself. Somebody helped him,
 I'm sure.
 29. Can you believe the girl? Can it be true?
 30. "Can he be my son?" she thought.
 31. Could she have done it without consulting me?
 32. Can it really be as bad as that?
 33. There's such a smell of burning, Daddy. Can I go down and see?
 34. You can keep the change.
 35. What is done cannot be undone.
 36. Nothing can be done, it's too late.
 37. I don't believe a single word of his; he can't have failed to learn
 the news before us.

Ex. 2. Use the modal verb CAN/COULD with the necessary form of the infinitive instead of the italicized parts of the sentences.

MODEL: *It's impossible for Ann to know what's wrong with me. – Ann can't (couldn't) know what's wrong with me.*

1. *I'm sure* that Nick *didn't see* to the matter himself. He was engaged at the conference the whole day.

2. *I'm quite sure that* your friend *was kept* at the office. Something unexpected must have happened.

3. *I doubt whether* he's *persuaded* her to give up her hobby. I tried to do so myself several times but couldn't.

4. *It is possible that* Dr. Brown *is still attending* to your father? I heard that he'd retired and a new doctor had taken over.

5. *It's hardly possible that* they *are still making* preparations for the experiment. The preparatory work must have been under way for a fortnight already.

6. *I don't believe that* the work *is still under way*. They started it a week ago and promised to get through it in two days.

7. *I don't believe* he *took over* the job. He is quite unskilled in this field.

8. *I can't believe* she *is* just an ordinary singer. Her concerts attract large audiences.

Ex. 3. Complete each sentence using COULD or WAS/WERE ABLE TO.

1. It was a fine day yesterday, so we ___ have a picnic, and we enjoyed it very much.

2. He suddenly felt ill, but he ___ finish his speech, although at the end he could hardly stand.

3. He spoke very little French when he left school, but he ___ understand the language.

4. I got to the station at 9.50 and I ___ catch the 9.55 train. I was very pleased I didn't have to wait for the next train.

5. He has always been good at Maths. But even he ___ solve this difficult problem.

6. The town was full of visitors, and we didn't know where we would spend the night, but at last we ___ find two vacant rooms.

7. Before his illness, he ___ work fourteen hours a day if he had to.

8. He was very strong, he ___ ski all day and dance all night.

9. I was a long way from the stage. I ___ see all right but I ___ not hear very well.

10. We ___ borrow umbrellas, so we didn't get wet.

11. When the garage had repaired our car we ___ continue our journey.

12. When I arrived everyone was asleep. Fortunately I ___ wake my sister and she let me in.

Ex. 4. Express strong doubt or surprise. Use the appropriate form of the infinitive.

1. Can it ___ (be) so late now?

2. Can he ___ (tell) the truth then?

3. Surely it can't ___ (be) Jim. I know him quite well.

4. But she can't ___ (say) it. I am sure she didn't mean it.

5. I'll try to do it myself. It can't ___ (be) so difficult after all.

6. Who told you about it? You can't ___ (know) about it before.

7. It seems strange. Can somebody ___ (work) against us?

8. I can't believe it. Can he ___ (resent) it?

9. Could it ___ (be) a joke? She felt rather hurt.

10. You can't ___ (see) him at the meeting. He was ill then.

11. He can't ___ (forget) your address, he has visited you several times.

12. Could they ___ (win) the game? They are just an amateur team.

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. Не может быть, чтобы вы это сделали!

2. Не все маленькие дети умеют завязывать шнурки.

3. Все студенты могут пользоваться библиотекой, чтобы найти необходимую информацию.

4. Белки могут прыгать с дерева на дерево, и кажется, будто это птицы перелетают с ветки на ветку.

5. Не может быть, чтобы она прочла эту книгу за два дня!

6. Можно попросить вас передать ему сообщение?

7. Не может быть, чтобы он тебя об этом спросил.

8. Неужели она забыла мой адрес?
9. Я не смог ответить на его вопрос.
10. Не может быть, чтобы вы потеряли билет, вы могли положить его в карман.
11. Не может быть, чтобы он уже приехал, я получила телеграмму только вчера.
12. Неужели он уже получил мое письмо?
13. Неужели он не получил мое письмо?
14. Ваши часы, возможно, спешат, не может быть, чтобы сейчас было уже десять часов.
15. Он не мог получить книгу, потому что библиотека была закрыта.
16. Не могли ли бы вы дать мне эту книгу на два дня?
17. Наконец-то вы пришли! Вы могли бы прийти раньше, ведь вы же знали, что я больна!
18. Я останусь дома, она, возможно, будет мне звонить.
19. Можно мне спросить ее об этом?
20. Нет, я не верю этому. Не может быть, что она меня обманула!

Ex. 6. Say whether could is the form of the Indicative or of the Subjunctive. Translate the sentences.

1. He took up a position from which he could see what was going around.
2. Oh! If I only could go back to my flower basket!
3. If I thought like you, I couldn't stay another day in India.
4. I don't believe I could utter one of the old sounds if I tried.
5. Oh, Gustave, we're so thirsty. Could you bring us some ginger-ale?
6. I can't tell stories, never could.
7. Shelton could not help a smile; Lady Bonington in the place of the poor!
8. But he could not, did not know how to turn and go away.
9. How could you be so silly, Henry?
10. Do you think you could complete it by the evening?
11. If she had said "He's gone to Mars", she could not have dealt James a more stunning blow.
12. What could he do to help her? If only his father were alive! He could have done so much!
13. He could neither move nor speak.
14. What could you know of such things?
15. Could you believe that?
16. Could it be that he is lying?
17. I wonder what that could have meant?
18. He couldn't be so sure if he didn't know it for certain.
19. Do you think you could command an army?
20. The mountains were a long way away and you could see snow on their tops.

Ex. 7. Use the verb can in the correct form followed by the appropriate infinitive.

1. Do you have a friend whom you ... (to trust)?
2. What ... Freddy (to do) all this time? He has been gone for twenty minutes.
3. He ... not (to see) me. I came when he had gone.
4. I am not a person who ... (to tell) a lie.
5. How ... you (to make) such a mistake as to suppose that I was younger than you?
6. Surely you ... (to do) it before. What have you been doing all the morning?
7. Say what you like, but the work ... not (to do) in two days.
8. Mr. Fenwill's house was built on the top of the hill and ... (to see) from afar.
9. I ... not (to sleep) two hours, I still feel tired.
10. He ... not (to be) her father: he is too young.
11. They ... not (to hear) us. Knock again.
12. If you had asked me for money I ... (to lend) you some.
13. He ... (to tell) me the answer but he refused to.
14. ... he still (to sleep)? It seems to me they simply don't want us to see him.
15. I ... not (to swim) – I wish I
16. She has a university education and ... (to make) a career for herself if she hadn't married.
17. You ... not (to forget). I don't believe you.

Ex. 8. Translate Into English, using the verb CAN.

1. Не может быть, чтобы он солгал. Это на него не похоже.
2. Неужели это правда, что он стал известным актером?
3. Не может быть, чтобы они были брат и сестра. Они совсем не похожи друг на друга.
4. Вряд ли это так. Во всяком случае, мы не можем это доказать.
5. Интересно, что вы могли бы предложить при подобных обстоятельствах?
6. Вряд ли он мог допустить такую ошибку. Он опытный инженер.
7. Неужели все это лишь его фантазия?
8. Если бы не он, мы могли бы заблудиться. Уже темно.
9. На вашем месте я бы ему не доверял, он может обмануть вас.
10. Вряд ли он так молод. Я заметил у него седые волосы на висках.
11. Вы его легко можете узнать по благородному орлиному профилю.

12. Не может быть, чтобы они нас заметили. Мы были довольно далеко.

13. Не может быть, чтобы они нас не заметили. Мы были совсем близко.

14. Нельзя судить о человеке по внешности. Наружность обманчива.

15. Неужели это маленькая Лиззи? Как она выросла!

16. Могу я видеть управляющего? – К сожалению, нет. Он будет сегодня в 12.

17. Не мог бы ты дать мне конспекты при условии, что я верну их послезавтра?

18. Она надеется, что можно избежать операции.

19. Можно было видеть, что он был взволнован, хотя и старался выглядеть беззаботным.

20. Можно тебя на несколько слов? – Ну, в чем дело?

21. Это нельзя сделать так быстро. Вам придется подождать.

22. Он не умел читать по-латыни и не мог понять, что ему прописал врач.

23. Неужели ты не можешь объяснить родителям, что ты не в состоянии поехать туда?

24. Поначалу он не мог нащупать пульса и решил, что его сердце перестало биться.

25. Не мог он этого сказать. Он не так глуп, как ты думаешь.

26. Я бы давно мог это сделать, если бы знал, что это так срочно.

27. Я не верю, что есть болезни, которые нельзя излечить. Мы просто не знаем, как их лечить.

28. Не может быть, чтобы это была правда.

19. MAY

This modal verb has two forms: MAY for the present tense and MIGHT for the past and as the subjunctive mood form.

Meanings:

1. Permission.

a) giving permission (MAY and CAN are both possible).

• *You may / can go now.* – *Можете идти.*

b) asking for permission (MAY / MIGHT / CAN / COULD).

• *Might I use your telephone, please?* – *Могу я воспользоваться вашим телефоном?*

2. Possibility.

a) General possibility:

MAY / MIGHT + simple infinitive – what is / was typically or normally possible (CAN / COULD are used in a similar way, but are less formal).

- *You may find all the books you want in the National Library.* – *Вы можете найти все нужные книги в Национальной библиотеке.*
- *In those days, a man might be hanged for stealing a sheep.* – *В те времена человека могли повесить за кражу овец.*

b) Specific possibility (some doubt is expressed):

MAY / MIGHT / COULD + any form of the infinitive
(COULD and MIGHT show that the chance is smaller)

- *This news is so strange that you may not believe it.* – *Эти новости такие странные, что вы, возможно, не поверите.*
- *He may come or he may not.* – *Может быть, он придет, а может, и нет.*
- *They might arrive tonight or tomorrow.* – *Возможно, они приедут завтра или послезавтра.*
- *Ellie might be visiting a friend now.* – *Возможно, Элли сейчас в гостях у друга.*
- *He may have been hurt.* – *Ему, может быть, причинили боль.*
- *She may have been lying.* – *Возможно, она лгала.*

MIGHT+ perfect infinitive – it was possible, but it didn't happen
(COULD is also used in this meaning)

- *You were stupid to drive without a seat belt. You might have been killed in the accident.* – *Глупо было вести машину не пристегнувшись. Ты мог погибнуть в той аварии.*

3. Prohibition (MAY NOT is more formal than CAN NOT).

- *You may not go swimming here.* – *Здесь запрещено купаться.*

4. Reproach (only with the form MIGHT).

(COULD is also used in this meaning)

- *You might at least offer to help.* – *Ты мог предложить свою помощь.*
- *You might have opened the door for me.* – *Ты мог хотя бы открыть мне дверь.*

5. Sometimes the use of MAY/MIGHT is conditioned by the type of the clause. This modal verb is found:

a) in clauses of purpose:

- *Sit here so that I may see your face more clearly.* – *Садитесь сюда, чтобы я мог лучше видеть ваше лицо.*

b) in clauses of concession:

• *However hard he might try, he never managed it. – Как бы он ни старался, у него ничего не получалось.*

c) in object, predicative and appositive clauses after verbs or nouns expressing *hope, wish, fear*:

• *The prisoner had hopes that he might be set free. – Заключенный надеялся, что его могут отпустить.*

Practice

Ex. 1. Comment on the use of the verb *MAY* and translate the sentences.

1. We may spend this week in their camp.
2. The pupils of our group may work at the laboratory twice a week.
3. May I hand in my report, sir?
4. I may have seemed so drunk yesterday, but it wasn't so.
5. They might have left the institute already, I saw them in the street.
6. The young man may have been working all this time.
7. You may take any book you like.
8. This may be true, but who knows?
9. The telegram may have been sent yesterday.
10. You at least might have thought more about your family!
11. It may be so or it may be not... I don't know, and what's more, I don't care.
12. "The old actor was drunk," thought he. "Still there may be truth in what he said."
13. This may be the reason of their refusal to join us.
14. They may not have come back yet. Let's ring them up and find out.
15. I suppose she might be glad to see him, though I am not sure.
16. If he had brought a weapon Soames might have used it at that moment.
17. If he weren't ill he might be in much greater danger.
18. He had known before he looked, but a vague hope that he might have been mistaken had encouraged him.
19. May I ask whether you complain of your treatment here?
20. He might be seen in the club any night of the year.
21. I suffered most from the thought that people might guess my state.
22. Let's go a little farther, I'm afraid they may hear us from the house.
23. It is possible that he may leave it as it is.
24. I hope your dream may come true.

25. However hard he may work he won't catch up with the group after being so seriously ill for a long time.

26. May I talk to you sometimes? I know I'm not a bit clever but I'll try not to be a bore.

Ex. 2. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Разве мог кто-нибудь подумать, что эта команда займет первое место?

2. Не может быть, чтобы он был дома сейчас.

3. Неужели он так хорошо знает китайский язык?

4. Не может быть, чтобы они уехали, не попрощавшись с детьми!

5. Вы не можете идти домой, вы не закончили работу. – Я старалась, но не смогла ее закончить.

6. Он сможет говорить по-французски, когда вернется из Парижа.

7. Я хорошо знал эту страну, поэтому я смог посоветовать ей, какие достопримечательности посмотреть.

8. Морис был настолько безграмотным, что он просто не мог написать ни одного слова этого доклада.

9. Почему ты не можешь признать, что был неправ?

10. Вы можете доказать его невиновность?

Ex. 3. Find and correct eight mistakes in expressing possibility.

Every few years, the ocean near Peru becomes warmer. Called El Nino, this variation in temperature maybe cause weather changes all over the world. The west coasts of North and South America might to have heavy rains. On the other side of the Pacific, New Guinea might becomes very dry. Northern areas could have warmer, wetter winters and southern areas could become much colder. These weather changes affect plants and animals. Some fish mayn't survive in warmer waters. Droughts could causing crops to die and food may get very expensive. El Nino may happen every two years or it could not come for seven years. Will El Nino get worse in the future? They could be. Pollution holds heat in the air and it will increase the effects of El Nino but no one is sure yet.

Ex. 4. Translate these sentences into English, using the verb MAY.

1. Давайте подождем немного. Он, возможно, еще придет.

2. Она, может быть, ничего об этом не знает.

3. Многое может показаться нам необычным в чужой стране.

4. Мой вопрос, возможно, озадачит вас, но все же я хочу задать его. Можно?

5. «Тетушка, можно мне взять еще кусок сахара?» – спросил Том.

6. Может, это всех вас удивит, но я получил приглашение к ним на вечер.

7. Можно остаться дома, а можно и сходить в кино.
8. Позвони Нику, он, возможно, уже видел новый фильм. Спроси, стоит ли его смотреть.
9. В самом деле, Джон, ты мог бы объяснить мне с самого начала, насколько это было важно.
10. Если вы бывали в Лондоне, вы, возможно, заметили, что это город контрастов.
11. Я не знаю, где она, может быть, в саду, а может быть, ушла в библиотеку.
12. Никто не отвечает. Может быть, он еще не вернулся с работы.
13. Я думаю, он, возможно, не знает всех деталей, но основная идея ему ясна.
14. Может быть, это невежливо, но я скажу ему, чтобы он больше не приходил.
15. Если бы он не столкнулся с нами случайно в метро, мы бы, возможно, никогда его больше не встретили.
16. Мне тоже можно прийти, не правда ли?
17. Вполне возможно, что они ждут нас внизу.
18. Боюсь, мы можем опоздать.
19. Надеюсь, мы встретим там вашу сестру.
20. Они боялись, что их, возможно, спросят, почему Том не пришел с ними.
21. Как бы поздно вы ни вернулись, я буду ждать вас.
22. Я принес вам большой ящик, чтобы вы могли упаковать ваши книги.

Ex. 5. Translate the sentences and comment on the meanings of CAN and MAY.

1. – Will you be coming again this year, Mr. Welch?
– I might manage it, I suppose.
2. It might never have happened if you'd sent him to a real doctor when he first got sick.
3. "That wouldn't surprise me in the least," Bertrand said, standing aside so that Margaret could pass him.
4. She glanced up quickly as if she had been expecting to be asked this, but he couldn't tell whether she was glad or sorry when it came.
5. – Can you stop talking about it?
– I wish I hadn't said what I did say. I was a fool. I acted like a perfect fool.
6. I think they got back before us. They might have got a taxi.
7. – Why didn't you tell me?
– I couldn't. It wouldn't have done me any good.

8. But for your kindness and understanding I couldn't have done it all in so short a time.

9. I wish I had my car here so that I might drive you home.

10. Had she been a man, she might have been described as a bright young man of business.

Ex. 6. Fill in the blanks with the verbs CAN or MAY in the correct form.

1. When you get there tell them to wait. I ... be a little late.
2. You ... come at six. I'll be free by that time.
3. ... this old man be Tom Brown? He ... not have changed so much!
4. None of us know what ... happen before it is finished.
5. This ... be a great idea. It ... also be a trap in which England will perish.
6. I'm not sure, but she ... have gone to the village shop.
7. I told them he ... be in the garden.
8. Sh! She ... hear you.
9. How strange! ... you believe that?
10. I haven't seen her for ages. She ... be quite middle-aged by now.
11. Don't send him away. We ... need his advice.
12. I fear they ... miss the train. They left rather late.
13. It ... be seen that he was puzzled.
14. Why do what ... never be needed?
15. People ... chatter about her, but they don't know anything definite against her.
16. He ... not have thought of this himself. Who suggested it to him?
17. He ... be a medical student though I'm not sure.
18. But what more he ... have said I don't know for I left.
19. You ... tell me what he said! I have a right to know.
20. Miss Carter ... have gone to the school to call on Mr. Everhard.
21. Then he found that he ... not stay in bed.
22. I ... not swim. I expect you Everyone ... except me.
23. You ... have warned me beforehand!
24. He ... not have said that. I don't believe you.
25. It was a year or two ago, or it... be three years ago.
26. She came to ask her mother if she ... stay and dance a little longer.

Ex. 7. Translate these sentences into English, using CAN or MAY.

1. Неужели это Джим Стирфорс? Он совсем старик, седой и сутулый!

2. Я думаю, она не захотела со мной разговаривать. – Я бы так не думала. Может быть, она вас не заметила.

3. Не может быть, чтобы он обманул их, он честный человек.
4. И ты не мог догадаться, куда я положила деньги?
5. Может, он и знает об этом, а не хочет сказать нам.
6. Не может быть, чтобы она не нашла вашего дома. Я сама дала ей ваш адрес.
7. Неужели ребенок все еще спит? Вам давно пора его разбудить.
8. Вы могли бы сказать мне об этом вчера!
9. Я бы с удовольствием пришел, но, возможно, я буду занят.
10. Может быть, это правда, а может, нет.
11. Не могли бы вы одолжить мне немного денег до завтра?
12. Я позволю ему, возможно, он не знает, что случилось.
13. Вам придется поторопиться, или вы можете опоздать.
14. Я сделаю все, что могу, чтобы помочь вам.
15. Куда бы это он мог уйти?
16. Вы могли бы сделать это сами, вы просто не попытались.
17. Подойди поближе, чтобы я мог лучше тебя рассмотреть.
18. Вы можете его узнать по фотографии?
19. Не могу себе представить, что из этого может получиться.
20. Возможно, новость уже всем известна.
21. Не может быть, чтобы он знал об этом. Он вел бы себя иначе.
22. Кто бы это мог сказать такую вещь?
23. Он, возможно, им все уже рассказал.
24. Подожди, пока он придет. Может быть, он разъяснит нам, в чем дело.

20. MUST

The modal verb **MUST** has only one form for the present tense. It may also be used in reported speech, after the verb in the past tense in the principle clause.

- *I knew I must go there.*

Meanings:

1. Obligation, necessity (from the speaker's viewpoint – in affirmative sentences, from the hearer's – in questions; or because of the rules).

- *We must begin before five, or we won't finish in time for our supper.* – Мы должны начать до пяти, или не успеем к ужину.

- *Must I do the dishes?* – Мне нужно мыть посуду (ты настаиваешь)?

- *Exam instructions: You must write your answers in ink.* – Инструкции по выполнению экзаменационной работы: Пишите ответ ручкой.

2. Prohibition (CAN'T is also possible, MAY NOT is formal).

- *The girl mustn't go home alone.* – Девочке нельзя идти домой одной.
- *You mustn't do it!* – Не делайте этого!

3. Invitations.

• *You must come and see me sometime.* – Вы обязательно должны навестить меня как-нибудь.

4. Certainty (positive).

- *He must be mad.* – Он, должно быть, сошел с ума.
- *He must be working in the garden.* – Он, вероятно, работает в саду.
- *She must have left.* – Она, по-видимому, уже ушла.
- *They must have been working all the time.* – Видимо, они все время работали.

Practice

Ex. 1. Comment on the meaning of the verb MUST and translate the sentences.

1. Old age must lean on something.
2. A man must stand up for his rights.
3. You mustn't think it's so very easy.
4. Must it be done before tomorrow?
5. She must work from morning till night to earn her living.
6. One must have a rest after a day of hard work.
7. The only thing he knew for certain was that he must not meet Antonia.
8. You are right, I mustn't stay here.
9. You must be reasonable, Mr. Higgins; really you must.
10. Give him something to eat. He must be hungry.
11. That fellow must be made of steel. He's never tired.
12. It's quite a charming letter. Must have taken the poor young man an hour to write it.
13. He must be quite old by now.
14. You must have frightened her.
15. That fellow has seen and felt ten times as much as I, although he must be ten years younger.
16. I felt that before long my secret must be known.
17. I hear somebody's steps on the stairs. She must be coming!
18. Judging from the books and papers on his writing-table he must have been working for several hours.

Ex. 2. Paraphrase the sentences using MUST.

1. Probably that building in the distance is the station.
2. The boy was evidently reading something funny. He was smiling all the time.
3. They have most likely not realized what opportunity they were losing.
4. I won't bother you any longer; no doubt you are tired of my talking.
5. I see something is eating him. He looks worried.
6. It was clear the family were expecting some guests: the mother was bustling about the house tidying up the rooms.
7. He surely did not find out the real reason for their silence.
8. I am sure he has got all he needed.

Ex. 3. Combine the verb MUST with the proper form of the infinitive in brackets.

1. I feel I must ____ (to do) something before it is too late.
2. You must ____ (to follow) my advice. There is no other way out for you.
3. He saw an old woman sleeping soundly in Green Park. A shower was falling all the time. She must ____ (to get) drenched to the skin.
4. "The hotels must ____ (to do) a tremendous business", old Jolion thought. "A few years ago there had been none of these big hotels."
5. She must ____ (to be) angry with you. She does not even look in your direction.
6. She must ____ (to get) angry with me. She left without saying good-bye.
7. Mary must ____ (to be) ill, otherwise she would have come.
8. She turned pale. She must ____ (to get) frightened.

Ex. 4. Translate the sentences into English and comment on the idea which MUST expresses.

1. Це, напевно, дуже важкий випадок, лікар зайнятий цим пацієнтом вже годину.
2. Ймовірно, в таких випадках люди завжди відчувають незручність.
3. Не турбуйтеся, дитина, напевно, видужує, їй навіть дозволили прогулянки.
4. Цілком ймовірно, що потяг відправляється своєчасно.
5. Конференція, напевно, проходить вже протягом двох тижнів.
6. Ймовірно, у них буде достатньо часу, щоб подивитися всі визначні пам'ятки.
7. У випадку необхідності вони, напевно, звернуться до вас за допомогою.
8. Вони, мабуть, можуть розподіляти свій час між навчанням та працею.
9. У нього, напевно, не вистачило терпіння, щоб дочекатися вас.

Ex. 5. Translate into English using the verbs CAN, MAY, and MUST.

1. Уже пять часов. Собрание могло окончиться; подождем немного, он может скоро прийти.

2. Петя, должно быть, заболел, иначе он был бы уже в театре, он никогда не опаздывает.

3. Не может быть, чтобы она забыла о концерте, это совсем на нее не похоже.

4. Я его сегодня не жду, но, кто знает, может быть, он сегодня и приедет.

5. Не может быть, чтобы она здесь была вчера. Если бы она была здесь, она оставила бы мне записку.

6. Не возвращайте пока книгу в библиотеку, она может вам понадобиться для доклада.

7. Можно употребить здесь настоящее продолженное время?

8. Можно мне взять вашу книгу?

9. Он сказал, что доклад у него уже готов, и он может прочесть его завтра на собрании.

10. «Он, должно быть, уже ушел». – «Не может быть, чтобы он ушел, не повидав меня».

11. Вы, должно быть, ошибаетесь, на пятой странице нет таких слов.

12. Чтобы могла изображать эта картина? Они могли бы, по крайней мере, сделать надпись!

13. Судя по каталогу, это, должно быть, картина, изображающая «Город будущего».

14. В глазах его, должно быть, отразилась ироничная улыбка, потому что гости замолчали.

15. Не могла же она забыть о своем обещании и уйти домой без него!

Ex. 6. Find and correct six mistakes in expressing assumptions.

The main character, Molly Smith, is a university professor. She is trying to find her dead grandparents' first home in Scotland. It may be in a nearby town. The villagers there seem scared. They could be have a secret or they must just hate strangers. Molly has some old letters that might lead to the place. They are in Gaelic but one of her students might translate them for her. They got to be important because the author mentions them at the beginning of the novel. The letter must contain family secrets. Who is the bad guy? It could be the student because he wants to help. It might to be the newspaper editor in the town.

Ex. 7. Translate the following sentences into English.

Note: Remember that **must** expressing certainty is not used in the negative.

1. Там, должно быть, никого нет.
2. Он, должно быть, ничего не понял и обиделся.
3. Она, наверное, не помнит, что обещала принести нам карту Москвы.
4. Вы, по всей вероятности, не знали, что они переехали в один из пригородов Лондона.
5. Она, наверное, оставила дверь незапертой.
6. Вы, наверное, не встречали такого забавного мальчишки, как наш Тим.
7. Вам, должно быть, нелегко этому поверить.
8. Дети, должно быть, не заметили, что уже стемнело.
9. Он, наверняка, ничего об этом не знает.
10. Она, наверное, совсем неопытна в переводе медицинских статей с английского на русский.
11. Это, должно быть, кажется вам невероятным, но это факт.
12. Он, должно быть, не узнал вас в толпе.

Ex. 8. Fill in the blanks with the verbs CAN, MAY or MUST.

1. I have forgotten my own language and ... speak nothing but yours.
2. We ... go somewhere. We ... not wander about for ever.
3. But I think you ... have told us this half an hour ago!
4. You ... see much of interest there.
5. I did not hear him return to the room. I ... have been asleep.
6. You ... have mistaken him, my dear. He ... not have intended to say that.
7. It seemed possible they ... return.
8. It ... not have happened at Ainswick.
9. No good looking back; things happen as they
10. To be ashamed of his own father is perhaps the bitterest experience a young man ... go through.
11. How ... you let things slide like that, Dick?
12. I think you ... be glad of some coffee before you start back to your hotel. It's such a cold night.
13. It was known – whispered among the old, discussed among the young – that the family pride ... soon receive a blow.
14. And though he undressed and got into bed he ... not sleep.
15. You ... not go out so late at night.
16. I think it... happen sooner or later.

17. I ... come tonight, ... I not?
18. Somebody is knocking at the door. It ... be John. – It ... not be John. It's too early for him to be back.
19. I don't know for certain, but he ... have been a sailor in his youth.
20. They ... ask me about him. What should I say?

Ex. 9. Translate the sentences into English, using the verbs CAN, MAY, MUST.

1. Если вы так думаете, то вы не правы. Вы не должны так думать.
2. Возможно, что население вашего города больше, но что это доказывает?
3. Теперь ты свободна и можешь делать, что тебе нравится.
4. В этом, должно быть, что-то есть.
5. Он, может быть, ничего не знает о том, что мы собираемся осмотреть достопримечательности города сразу после завтрака.
6. Вряд ли они вернулись из зоопарка. Они там впервые и могут долго пробыть.
7. Если ты будешь проводить так много времени перед телевизором, у тебя может разболеться голова.
8. Мальчик, возможно, вырвал картинку из книги, которую вы оставили на столе.
9. Если это так, то его нужно наказать.
10. Вы можете найти его в саду, я полагаю. Он, должно быть, играет в теннис с Джимом.
11. Она, может быть, ничего не знает об этом. Вы тоже пока не должны ей ничего говорить.
12. Она говорит, что поездка в Лондон произвела на нее незабываемое впечатление. Она никогда не думала, что это может быть так интересно: узнавать места, о которых она знала из книг.
13. Мы могли бы найти дорогу обратно в отель сами, если бы Борис не потерял карту Лондона.
14. Переверни еще одну или две страницы, и ты увидишь фотографию. Скажи мне, если можешь, кто это.
15. Интересно, что он может делать здесь так поздно? – Возможно, он ждет Мэри.
16. Что это за шум? – Это, должно быть, в ванной течет вода. Кто-то моется.
17. Если бы на этот вопрос можно было дать ответ, он был бы дан давным-давно.
18. Кто бы это мог забыть ключ у меня на письменном столе? Неужели Джим?

19. Не может быть, чтобы Джим забыл ключ. Я видел, как он клал его в карман.

20. Не могли бы вы прийти немного раньше? Это было бы удобнее для меня.

21. Он постоял, раздумывая, можно ли ему незаметно уйти, рассердится ли Минин, когда узнает.

22. Я не умею говорить по-французски, никогда не умел.

23. Должно быть, трудно овладеть иностранным языком, не правда ли?

21. HAVE TO

This modal verb has the categories of person and number, as well as all tense forms. It is followed only by the simple form of the full infinitive.

• *We had to look all over town before we found what we wanted.* – *Нам пришлось искать по всему городу, прежде чем мы нашли то, что было нужно.*

HAVE TO builds up its interrogative and negative forms with the help of the auxiliary verb DO.

• *Do you have to work so hard?* – *Тебе нужно так много работать?*

• *I didn't have to answer all the questions.* – *Мне не нужно было отвечать на все вопросы.*

Meanings:

1. Obligation, necessity (because of the circumstances or somebody else's decision).

• *She is usually short of time so she has to go by air.* – *У нее всегда мало времени, поэтому ей приходится лететь самолетом.*

• *We will have to leave next week.* – *Мы будем вынуждены уехать на следующей неделе.*

2. Absence of necessity.

• *You don't have to make another copy of the document.* – *Не нужно делать еще одну копию документа.*

Compare: *You mustn't make copies of the document.* – *Нельзя делать копии этого документа.*

Besides, HAVE TO replaces MUST where MUST cannot be used:

• *We had to do it again.*

• *You'll have to take a taxi if you mean to catch the train.*

Note the expression «I may/might have to»:

- I might have to work late tomorrow evening. – Возможно, завтра вечером мне придется работать допоздна.

Practice

Ex. 1. Comment on the meaning of HAVE TO. Translate the sentences.

1. I'm afraid, I'll have to send him away.
2. Was the fire already laid or did you have to lay it?
3. The rope was so strong that he had to take a knife to cut it.
4. But was it worth while going to bed when he had to be up again at five?
5. I suppose I'll have to go back to London, won't I?
6. Do you have to get up early every morning?
7. He will have to pay me back before Sunday.
8. How long did you have to stay there?
9. "We'll have to wait a long time for our holidays," she said with a sigh.
10. And you have to go there twice a week, don't you?

Ex. 2. Make the sentences negative and interrogative.

1. He will have to come again.
2. My sister has to go to work.
3. They had to go back alone.
4. You have to answer all these questions.
5. I shall have to go out after all.
6. He will have to come on foot.
7. The students had to read the whole book.
8. She has to come every week.
9. He has to stay the night.
10. They had to begin very early.

Ex. 3. Fill in HAVE TO in the correct tense form.

1. The children ___ play in the streets till their mothers get from work.
2. Mr Pitt ___ cook his own meals. His wife is away.
3. I never remember his address, I always ___ look it up.
4. I must warn you, if you go to a dentist with a private practice, you ___ pay him quite a lot of money.
5. Last year I ___ practice the piano for three hours a day before that concert.
6. In my district there is no gas laid on. People ___ use electricity for everything.
7. When the tyre was punctured the driver ___ change the wheel.

8. I got lost and I ___ ask a policeman the way.
9. Farmers ___ get up early.
10. The new rule says that next month waiters ___ pay tax on the tips that they receive.
11. Whenever the dog wants to go out I ___ get up and open the door.

Ex. 4. Comment on the use of MUST and HAVE TO.

1. I must go and lay the table myself.
2. We had to walk all the way to the station because there was no taxi.
3. She had to change her shoes after walking in the garden.
4. The shoes are a size too small. I'll have to go to the shop and have them changed.
5. You mustn't speak to a prisoner in a foreign language.
6. I must write to Ann. I haven't written to her for ages.
7. My boss says I have to make a report at the conference.
8. The girl had to take care of her younger sister and brothers.
9. I don't have to go shopping, I have everything at home.
10. You can't leave now! I must explain it all to you.

Ex. 5. Fill in the spaces by inserting MUST or HAVE TO.

1. She ___ leave home at eight every morning at present.
2. Notice in a picture gallery: Cameras, sticks and umbrellas ___ be left at the desk.
3. He sees very badly, he ___ wear glasses all the time.
4. I ___ do all the typing at my office.
5. You ___ read this book. It's really excellent.
6. She felt ill and ___ leave early.
7. I didn't have enough money and I ___ pay by cheque.
8. Father to his small son: You ___ do what Mummy says.
9. English children ___ stay at school till the age of 16.
10. The buses were all full. I ___ get a taxi.
11. Notice beside escalators: Dogs and push chairs ___ be carried.
12. Tell her that she ___ be here by six. I insist on it.
13. She ___ learn how to drive when her local railway station was closed.
14. If you buy that television set you ___ buy a license for it.
15. When I changed my job I ___ move to another city.

Ex. 6. Fill in the spaces by inserting MUST or HAVE TO.

1. You ___ get a visa when travelling between EU countries.
2. The cabin crew of an airplane ___ check the passengers have their seatbelts fastened before take-off.

3. First class travellers ___ worry about small, uncomfortable seats.
4. If you are travelling to an area with tropical diseases, you ___ have vaccinations.
5. She ___ go to bed early, tomorrow is a holiday so she won't go to school.
6. Everyone knows that polite neighbours ___ make noise after 10 p.m.
7. He feels he ___ spend more time with his family because they miss him so much!
8. He said he ___ go, he had promised to come.
9. You ___ go to the library. I can lend you this book.
10. Every child knows that you ___ cross the road when the lights are red.

Ex. 7. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Я должна прочесть эту книгу.
2. Она, должно быть, читает эту книгу.
3. Мама была больна, и я должна была готовить обед сама.
4. Должно быть, она готовила обед, когда пришел брат.
5. Я должен был зайти в деканат.
6. Должно быть, он заходил в деканат.
7. Вы должны поговорить с ним.
8. Должно быть, он сейчас разговаривает с ней по-английски.
9. Я должен был срочно написать об этом сестре.
10. Она, должно быть, написала своему брату после того, как ушли родители.
11. Она, должно быть, ждет нас в институте.
12. Доктор сказал, что он должен жить на юге, потому что северный климат вреден для его здоровья.
13. Он должен много читать вслух, чтобы исправить свое произношение.
14. Она, должно быть, не смогла поехать к друзьям, потому что я видел ее в офисе недавно.
15. Я должен оставаться здесь до зимы, потому что в большом городе в это время года сложно найти жилье.
16. Никто не мог помочь Джейн передвинуть мебель, так что ей пришлось делать это самой.
17. Не нужно делать этого, если не хочешь.
18. Нельзя быть таким безразличным к собственному здоровью.
19. Если хочешь, давай закончим работу сегодня, но в этом нет необходимости.

22. NEED

The modal verb NEED may be either a defective or a regular verb. As a defective verb NEED has only one form and combines with a bare infinitive. As a regular verb it has the past indefinite form NEEDED and regular negative and interrogative forms.

- *The teacher says that we needn't come.*
- *You don't need to say it every time you see him.*

Meanings:

1. Necessity.

• *Do you need to work so hard? – Нужно ли тебе так много работать?*

2. Absence of necessity.

a) for present:

NEEDN'T / DON'T NEED TO / DON'T HAVE TO + simple infinitive

• *You needn't / don't need to / don't have to work tonight. – Тебе не нужно работать сегодня вечером.*

b) for past:

NEEDN'T + perfect infinitive – the action was unnecessary but was done.

DIDN'T NEED TO / DIDN'T HAVE TO + simple infinitive

– the action wasn't necessary, so was not done.

- *You needn't have spent all the money. – Зря ты потратил все деньги (незачем, ни к чему было).*
- *I didn't need to spend all the money, because I had everything I wanted. – Мне не нужно было тратить все деньги, потому что у меня уже было все, что я хотела.*

Practice

Ex. 1. Comment on the meaning of the verb NEED and translate the sentences.

1. He needs sea air.
2. We don't need anything else.
3. I need not finish my sentence, for you already know what I was going to say.
4. Need it be finished by Saturday?
5. What more do you need?

6. He need say no more to her this evening, and risk giving himself away.

7. You needn't have carried all these parcels yourself. The shop would have delivered them if you had asked them.

8. You needn't take any more pills after next Monday.

9. I must go at once, but you needn't.

10. You needn't have waited for me, I could have found the way all right.

11. Looking back I can see exactly how it happened. It need never have happened.

12. And he was always careful to have money in his pocket, and to be modish in his dress, so that his son need not blush for him.

Ex. 2. Fill in MUSTN'T or NEEDN'T.

Tom,

Thanks for offering to chair tomorrow's meeting for me. Apart from Sally and Dave, the sales staff 1) ___ attend, but the personnel people 2) ___ miss it, as several matters concern them. You 3) ___ mention the new offices – we can deal with that later and you 4) ___ discuss the changes in the computer course timetables since they're not urgent. Don't forget that you 5) ___ mention the visit by the inspectors – we don't want people panicking. You 6) ___ forget to bring up the matter of the Smithson contract, and you also 7) ___ leave out the new manager's appointment. You 8) ___ go into details unless people have questions. But remember you 9) ___ give anyone the idea that their job is at risk because of this. Make it clear that employees 10) ___ speak unless they want to. Last but not least, you 11) ___ mention the staff party – Mr Jones wants to announce that himself. By the way, you 12) ___ take notes, as my secretary will be there to do that.

Thanks,
Laura

Ex 3. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Вам не потрібно робити це прямо зараз, ви можете зробити це пізніше.

2. Не можна брати цю книгу, мій брат зараз готується до іспиту, тому вона може знадобитися йому.

3. Коли я почув новини, я зрозумів, що повинен поїхати до неї вже зараз.

4. Ви маєте дуже поганий вигляд, ви повинні порадитися з лікарем.

5. Як ти гадася, вона потребує моєї допомоги, чи я можу піти?

6. Після загибелі батьків вона змушена була сама виховувати молодшого брата.

7. Нема потреби нагадувати йому про збори, він вже прочитав оголошення.

8. Я повинен піти, бо інакше я можу запізнитися на потяг, а наступний має бути тільки завтра.

9. Я дуже зголоднів, я повинен знайти гроші, щоб поїсти.

10. Вам не потрібно про це думати саме зараз, у нас ще є достатньо часу.

Ex. 4. Fill in the blanks with DIDN'T HAVE TO DO or NEEDN'T HAVE DONE:

1. You ... (to bring) your umbrella, as we are going by car.

2. You ... (to water) the flowers, as it is going to rain.

3. I ... (to translate) it for him, he did it himself, he understands Latin.

4. I ... (to answer) the questions, which saved me a lot of trouble.

5. Now I understand I ... (to lock) the door after me, but how was I to know you wanted to come out too?

6. I ... (to ring) the bell because the door opened before I got to it.

7. I... (to help) them at all, they themselves knew what to do.

8. I ... (to write) him because the news was already known to him. He phoned me shortly afterwards.

9. You ... (to listen) to him. His information was misleading.

10. You ... (to buy) such a lot of flowers. We've already got more than necessary.

11. He ... (to get up) so early every day. It was only on that particular occasion that he did.

12. You ... (to say) if you didn't want to. We could have done without you just as well.

23. BE TO

BE TO as a modal verb is used in the present and past simple tenses.

Meanings:

1. Obligation, necessity (because of an arrangement or a plan).

• *We are to complete this work by tomorrow.* – *Мы должны закончить эту работу до завтра.*

The present simple may signify an arrangement (especially official) for the future, or referring to no particular time.

• *The German Chancellor is to visit France.* – *Канцлер Германии посетит Францию.*

To emphasize that the action did not take place the perfect infinitive is used after the past simple of the verb BE TO.

• *She was to have graduated in June, but unfortunately fell in.* – Она должна была закончить учебу в июне, но, к сожалению, заболела.

2. A strict order or an instruction given either by the speaker or by some official authority.

• *You are to do exactly the way you are told.* – Поступай именно так, как тебе сказали!

• *He is to return to Liverpool tomorrow.* – Он должен завтра вернуться в Ливерпуль. (Ему так сказали)

3. Strict prohibition (only in the negative form)

• *You are not to do that.* – Не делай этого!

4. Something that is destined to happen or is unavoidable.

• *I didn't know at that time that she was to be my wife.* – Я тогда не знал, что ей суждено было стать моей женой.

• *It was not to be.* – Этому не суждено было сбыться.

• *I didn't know we were to meet again, many years later, under very strange circumstances.* – Я не знал, что нам предстояло встретиться снова через много лет при очень странных обстоятельствах.

5. Volition (in if-clauses).

• *If we are to get there on time, we must start at once.* – Если мы хотим прийти вовремя, надо сразу отправляться.

• *He knew he would have to work hard if he was to pass the exam.* – Он знал, что придется сильно потрудиться, если он хочет сдать экзамен.

6. Possibility or impossibility.

• *John was nowhere to be found.* – Джона нигде не было (нигде невозможно было найти).

• *They are not to be trusted.* – Им нельзя доверять.

• *How am I to repay for your kindness?* – Чем я могу отплатить тебе за твою доброту?

SET EXPRESSIONS:

What am I to do? – Что мне делать? Как мне быть?

What is to become of me? – Что со мною будет?

Where am I to go? – Куда же мне деваться?

Practice

Ex. 1. Group the examples according to the meaning of the “be + infinitive” phrase: (1) expressing a previously arranged plan; (2) expressing instructions or commands.

1. I am to see him tomorrow.
2. What am I to do now?
3. You are not to communicate with anybody.
4. She said that I was not to leave the house.
5. She is to return tomorrow.
6. He said that Tom was to apologize.
7. He inquired when the secretary was to come.
8. She says I am not to lay the table before twelve o'clock.
9. At what time am I to come?
10. Something must have happened. He was to have come at eight.
11. Jim reminded me that we were to be at the station not later than seven.
12. Which of you is to bring the magazines and newspapers?

Ex. 2. Translate the sentences into Russian or Ukrainian and comment on the meaning of the verb BE TO.

1. By that time only a few persons were to be seen on the wet streets and most of the shops and stores were dark and closed for the night.
2. “You’re to go now, Blick!” said Hunter, getting up.
3. I distinctly told you to stay with her every minute I was away. You are not to be trusted.
4. It was after breakfast, and we had been summoned in from the playground, when Mr. Sharp entered and said: “David Copperfield is to go into the class.”
5. Demetrius was nowhere to be found.
6. When my wife and I settle down at Willowmere it’s possible that we shall all come together. But if it isn’t to be, for Heaven’s sake, let us recognize that it is simply because it can’t be, and not wear hypocritical faces and suffer.
7. The snow, which had lain so thick and beautiful when I left the country, was scarcely to be seen in the city.
8. Your mother arranged that she was to come down from London and that I was to come over from Dover to be introduced to her.
9. Mrs. Moore, your delightful doctor has decided on a picnic, instead of a party in his house; we are to meet him out there.
10. Eliza, you were to have lived here for six months, learning how to speak beautifully, like a lady, but you learnt nothing.

Ex. 3. Replace the infinitives in brackets by *MUST, HAVE TO* or *BE TO* + the correct form of the infinitive.

1. This is Dora. She ___ (share) your room.
2. I must leave you now. I ___ (do) the cooking.
3. Who ___ (meet) you there?
4. My feet are wet. I ___ (change) my stockings.
5. I'm afraid you ___ (go) there alone, darling. I've such a headache!
6. Two more apartment houses ___ (be built) here.
7. Well, children, who ___ (do) the dishes tonight?
8. Sorry, I've got to rush. I ___ (meet) mother at the metro station at 6 sharp.
9. I ___ (write) a letter to my sister. I'm worried about her.
10. She ___ (wear) glasses as her eyesight is very weak.
11. It is raining. You ___ (put on) your raincoat.
12. It was planned that we should wait for them after the performance. We ___ (wait) for them at the entrance.

Ex. 4. Comment on the use of *MUST, HAVE TO, BE TO* and translate the sentences.

1. I want you to obey her. You must do exactly as she says and make no noise.
2. "Well, what am I to do about dinner?" said Miss Handforth. "Spoil it by over-cooking or let it get cold?"
3. Randall was excited. He thought he must telephone her at once, he must see her, somehow, that very day.
4. Emma must have been very beautiful when she was young. She has a fine face.
5. "We are not to be trifled with," returned the policeman in a threatening voice.
6. You must come and have dinner with me some time.
7. He lost all his money at the races and I had to lend him five pounds.
8. I hope I won't upset or annoy you by speaking frankly. I must have your advice.
9. Wake up, do you hear! You are to wake up at once.
10. So Frank has come? – Oh, yes; quite unexpectedly. He was to have stayed a week longer.
11. You are not to stay so late. You may leave after dinner.
12. The story was still clear in his mind. He knew what had to be done. He took his pen and wrote in his neat, steady hand the title of his new novel.

Ex. 5. Fill in the blanks with MUST, HAVE TO, BE TO or NEED.

1. You ... not (to bring) your books to class tomorrow, we are going to listen to a wireless programme.
2. I'm glad the lessons will begin later now. The children won't ... (to get up) so early.
3. You ... not (to learn) the poem. You ... only (to read) it.
4. Children ... not (to play) with matches.
5. It was late, and they ... (to light) a fire to cook their supper.
6. You ... (to give) it back to me before you go.
7. You ... not (to be) late for the concert.
8. I made a few mistakes, so I ... (to do) the whole exercise again.
9. I ... hardly (to say) how important it is.
10. She ... (to be married) next month.
11. You... not (to miss) that film, it is extraordinary good.
12. You ... not (to strike) a match; I can see well enough.
13. Jim ... (to make) a speech at the meeting, but he had fallen ill, so Tom ... (to speak) instead.
14. You ... not (to bring) any food with you tomorrow. I'll have enough for both of us.
15. We ... (to be) there at 12 sharp.
16. We ... not (to wait) long. A bus came almost at once.
17. You ... (to learn) the whole poem.

Ex. 6. Translate the sentences into English, using MUST, HAVE TO, BE TO or NEED.

1. Зря мы вышли из дому так рано, поезда не будет в течение часа.
2. Мы можем не спешить. Нам не нужно быть там раньше 8:30.
3. Вы не должны следовать их примеру. Это было бы глупо с вашей стороны.
4. Интересно, надо ли приносить с собой учебники?
5. Мне не пришлось запира́ть дверь, кто-то уже запер ее.
6. «Если завтра будет сильный мороз, – сказала мать, – тебе может не ходить в школу».
7. Вам незачем беспокоиться, они скоро вернуться. Наверное, задержались на набережной Темзы у здания Парламента: их всё здесь интересу́ет.
8. Не нужно забывать, что в Ист-Энде живут те, кто своим трудом обеспечивают жизнь этого огромного города.
9. Вам не обязательно продолжать, я знаю, вы скажете, что среди архитектурных памятников Лондона особое внимание привлекает Вестминстерское аббатство, построенное в XIII веке.
10. Они должны были встретиться на мосту Ватерлоо в 6 пополудни.

11. Что мне рассказать нашим гостям о поездке в Лондон? – Опиши им церемонию караула у ворот лондонского Тауэра.

12. Она сказала, в какое время мы должны были прийти, и попросила не опаздывать.

13. Мы решили, что дети не должны идти туда одни.

14. Нет нужды упоминать, что Кремль – выдающийся музей и памятник старины. Это всем известно.

15. Мне пришлось принять это приглашение, хотя я очень неважно себя чувствовал. Я не хотел обидеть своих новых друзей.

16. Он знал, что ему, возможно, придется прожить там больше месяца.

17. Спроси старосту, кто сегодня должен принести наушники на урок фонетики.

18. Вчера мы должны были навестить Аню в больнице и поэтому не могли зайти к тебе.

24. SHOULD, OUGHT

SHOULD and OUGHT can often replace each other.

They are used with reference to the present or future and remain unchanged in reported speech. OUGHT, unlike SHOULD, is followed by a full infinitive.

Meanings:

1. Moral obligation, moral duty.

• *If you see anything strange, you should call the police.* – Если ты увидишь что-то странное, ты должен вызвать полицию.

• *You ought to look after your children better.* – Вам следует больше заботиться о детях.

2. Criticism about the past.

SHOULD / OUGHT TO + the perfect infinitive

• *Your shoes are wet. You should have stayed at home.* – У тебя мокрые туфли. Тебе надо было остаться дома.

• *You shouldn't have done that.* – Вам не следовало этого делать.

• *You ought to have helped him.* – Вам следовало бы помочь ему.

3. Advice.

• *You should stay in bed.* – Вам следует лежать в постели.

• *You ought to see a doctor.* – Вам следует сходить к врачу.

4. **Probability** (because something is logical or normal).

SHOULD and OUGHT express less confidence than MUST.

• *We needn't get ready yet. The guests shouldn't come for another hour.* – Нам еще рано готовиться. Гости вряд ли придут раньше, чем через час.

• *She is away at the moment, but she should be back tomorrow.* – Она сейчас в отъезде, но должна завтра вернуться.

• *You ought to be hungry by now.* – Вы, наверное, уже проголодались.

5. SHOULD (but not OUGHT) can be used for **emotional colouring**.

• *Why should I help them?* – С какой стати мне им помогать?

• *I don't see why we shouldn't make friends.* – Я не понимаю, почему бы нам не стать друзьями.

• *The door opened and who should come in but Tom.* – Дверь открылась, и кто бы вы думали вошел? Не кто иной, как Том.

• *How should I know?* – Почему я знаю! Откуда мне знать!

Practice

Ex. 1. Comment on the meanings of SHOULD and OUGHT. Translate the sentences.

1. Can you show me any English woman who speaks English as it should be spoken?

2. A wife should obey her husband.

3. Besides you shouldn't cut your old friends now that you have risen in the world.

4. They should be taught a lesson.

5. I confess I did not foresee this turn of events. But I should have foreseen it.

6. You have discovered what I intended you should never have known.

7. He should not have said it. The moment the words crossed his lips he knew it was not the right thing to say.

8. Considerable debate took place between the two sisters whether Timothy should or shouldn't be summoned to see Annette.

9. "You should come here often," he said to Shelton... "You ought to come here often," he repeated to Shelton.

10. You ought to finish your work before going out. – I know I should.

11. I think for your wife and children's sake you ought to have a try.

12. There are people who think they ought to be reformed.

13. We all know that things are not always what they ought to be.

14. You ought to do something, you know; it'll be fatal for you to have nothing to do.

15. Have I said anything I oughtn't?

16. "I ought to have told Soames," he thought, "that I think him comic."

17. I suppose she is right. I oughtn't to have tried to speak to her!

18. By the end of the evening I almost felt that I ought to call him "Uncle Jack."

19. It'll be lovely round there today. – Yes, it ought to be quite nice.

20. It is the last of the Madeira I had from Mr. Jolyon when we came in here; it ought to be in prime condition still.

Ex. 2. State whether *SHOULD* is auxiliary or modal.

1. "So you think I should go, then?" said Randall behind him.

2. At breakfast I told Mary that I should be absent at least four days.

3. I shouldn't have believed it if I hadn't seen it with my own eyes.

4. You really shouldn't have said that, Felix. I'll talk to him myself.

5. How about Pinfold? Shouldn't he be here?

6. Thank God for our Gilbert. What should we do without him?

7. No one knew when I was to be back or if I should be back at all.

8. Felix said hastily, "Forgive me. I shouldn't have troubled you".

9. Nell has just told me you wanted to see me or I shouldn't have troubled you.

10. They had not seen – no one should see her distress, not even her grandfather.

Ex. 3. Comment on the meaning of *SHOULD* and translate the sentences.

1. He looked more than ever out of place; he should have stayed at home.

2. The children were out dancing when they should have been learning their lessons.

3. "It is very wicked of you," she said. "You should be ashamed of yourself."

4. "I am having trouble with my leg." – "I see. Well, I think you should go and see the doctor I know."

5. I'll see and speak to Maurice. He should not behave like that.

6. He came out of water, smiling. "You should have come earlier," he said.

7. You should have chosen a more suitable time to tell me that dreadful news.

8. He should have phoned Simkin earlier, knowing his habits.

9. After a hasty breakfast they consulted. To whom should they go? "Not to the police," said Dinny. "I think we should go to Uncle Adrian first."

10. It isn't the sort of thing one should talk of in private.

Ex. 4. Put SHOULD or SHOULDN'T in the spaces.

1. You ___ work more; you ___ miss the lessons.
2. Mothers ___ look after their children.
3. What were you doing here? You ___ be in bed. It is very late.
4. That hat doesn't suit you; you ___ buy another.
5. There are too many accidents. Everyone ___ be much more careful.
6. You ___ have followed the instructions of your coach. Then you would have won the game.
7. Tom was often late and his father told him that he ___ wake up earlier.
8. She told her children that they ___ always say "Please" and "Thank you".
9. It is dark in the room, you ___ switch on the light.
10. The policeman told Tom that he ___ be more careful when crossing the street.

Ex. 5. Paraphrase the following sentences so as to use OUGHT (OUGHTN'T) followed by a correct form of the infinitive.

MODEL: *I felt it would be only proper to follow his advice.
I felt I ought to follow his advice.*

1. I knew it would be improper if I opened the letter.
2. I recommended you to finish your work before going out.
3. I advise you not to eat between meals; it will make you fat.
4. I disapprove of your smoking so much; you are wasting your money and doing harm to your health.
5. It's a pity I didn't take those books back to the library last week.
6. It was wrong of you not to tell our guide that you wanted to go sightseeing all by yourself.
7. You didn't wait till the lights were green before crossing the road, and it was wrong, you know.
8. It was unreasonable of you to have crossed the road when the lights were red.
9. I wish you had been there. The performance was wonderful.
10. If he starts at eight he will probably be there by one o'clock.

Ex. 6. Open the brackets using the correct form of the infinitive.

1. I don't feel well now. I should ___ (remember) to take the medicine yesterday.
2. Children should ___ (obey) their parents.
3. It is three o'clock and I'm feeling very hungry; I should ___ (eat) more for lunch.

4. The little boy was playing with his father's typewriter and of course he broke it; he shouldn't ___ (allow) him to play with it.

5. You have a weak heart. You shouldn't ___ (run).

6. I was very tired last summer and I should ___ (take) a holiday, but there was too much work to do.

7. When he went for a walk he should ___ (take) his umbrella, it looked like rain.

8. The workmen are very slow; the job should ___ (finish) a week ago.

9. You shouldn't ___ (eat) so much bread, now you've gained weight.

10. You shouldn't ___ (go) out yesterday without a coat. No wonder you caught cold.

11. You should ___ (cross) the road by the subway, but you didn't.

12. He should ___ (check) that his brakes were working properly, but he didn't.

13. You should ___ (warn) him that the ice was dangerous, but you didn't.

14. Tom has had another accident. It sounds like Tom's fault. He should ___ (wait) till the main road was clear.

Ex. 7. Fill in the blanks with either SHOULD or MUST. Translate the sentences.

1. You look fresh! You ___ have had a good sleep at night.

2. You look tired! You ___ have a good sleep at night.

3. They ___ have studied the subject more thoroughly; they will regret it later on.

4. They ___ have studied the subject thoroughly; they answered every question.

5. You ___ have ignored the traffic regulations. That's why you were fined.

6. You ___ have followed the traffic regulations, then you would not have been fined.

7. He ___ work at the problem, it hasn't been solved yet.

8. He ___ be working at his problem now.

9. I ___ have taken Grandfather's spectacles. I cannot see anything through them.

10. I ___ have taken my opera-glasses. I don't see anything.

Ex. 8. Translate into English using SHOULD or OUGHT.

1. Вам следует чаще обращать внимание на то, что происходит вокруг. Тогда бы вы, возможно, лучше понимали людей.

2. Тебе не следовало приходить без предупреждения, потому что они могли уехать.

3. Все должны беречь природу, потому что только вместе люди могут уберечь нашу планету.

4. Сергею следовало больше времени и внимания уделять своей семье, в таком случае его дети любили бы его больше.

5. Вам не следовало оставлять маленьких детей одних дома, тогда пожара бы не случилось.

6. Томасу не следовало рассказывать коллеге о своих планах, так как он украл его идею и получил повышение.

7. Тебе следует больше уважать этих людей, потому что они прожили хорошую жизнь и много пользы принесли людям.

8. Мне не следовало рассказывать о своем секрете ей, теперь все об этом знают.

9. Анна, тебе не следует есть фрукты, **не помыв их. Ты же можешь отравиться.**

10. Не следует доверять Ивановым. Вы же совсем не знаете этих людей! Они могут вас обмануть.

Ex. 9. Translate into English using MUST, BE TO, HAVE TO, SHOULD, OUGHT, CAN.

1. Ты, должно быть, пропустил его. Ты должен быть более внимательным.

2. Вы, должно быть, с ним уже поговорили. Я вижу, вы все знаете.

3. Он не должен был так грубо разговаривать. Это могло обидеть его.

4. Она не должна была закрывать окно так быстро, надо было проветрить комнату лучше.

5. Это должно было случиться. Всем известна его рассеянность.

6. Тебе надо было прочесть свое сочинение еще раз, там, должно быть, есть ошибки.

7. Нам не пришлось тащить вещи на себе, нам попалась попутная машина.

8. Вы не должны так расстраиваться по пустякам. Надо держать себя в руках.

9. Простите, что я опоздал. Вам долго пришлось меня ждать?

10. Надеюсь, ты не должна теперь так рано вставать; ты ведь теперь работаешь в десяти минутах ходьбы от дома.

11. Она, очевидно, была очень приятной женщиной. Все говорят о ней с такой любовью.

12. Я никуда не выходил в тот вечер, так как после работы ко мне должен был зайти Джордж.

13. Это лекарство можно получить только по рецепту врача.

14. Там, наверное, идет дождь: смотри, какое темное небо.
15. Тебе не надо сегодня готовить обед, так как мы обедаем в гостях.
16. Они, вероятно, что-то горячо обсуждали; они даже не заметили, как мы вошли.
17. Вам следовало бы найти специалиста, который мог бы дать вам хороший совет.

Ex. 10. Fill in the blanks with *MUST*, *SHOULD* or *NEED*.

1. I'm suggesting that you ... marry me, Midge.
2. She ... be picking cherries in the orchard, tell her to come into the house.
3. "Well," said Emily with calm, "you ... not get into such fusses when we tell you things."
4. Is it necessary, do you think, that the police ... know about it?
5. You ... not be afraid of him. He's a kind old man.
6. It is essential that he ... be prepared for it.
7. Soft music filled the room. "That ... be a gramophone record," thought he.
8. I propose that the prize ... be divided.
9. Oh, I don't know. It's really rather odd that he ... ever have been taking her to the Ball.
10. You ... have seen that film when it was here last week.
11. It is strange that you ... remember the place.
12. Why ... not I talk to Catherine? Do you think I'm not worthy to, or something?
13. Poor boy! He ... have suffered so.
14. You ... not answer-all my questions if you don't want to.
15. Why ... you say such disagreeable things?
16. Go upstairs at once. You ... change your wet clothes.
17. It was only proper that Dora, who was young and healthy, ... give her seat to that old lady.
18. I think I'll come on time, but if I ... be late, please keep a seat for me.
19. He ordered that the gate ... be locked.
20. She confiscated the morning papers so that the children ... not see them.
21. You ... not wake up before seven o'clock. We'll start at half past eight.
22. I was just wondering if my wife was here. – No, she isn't here. Why ... she be?
23. You ... not work so hard after your illness.
24. Henrietta suggested to Gerda that they ... go and look at the kitchen garden.

Ex. 11. Fill in the blanks with OUGHT TO, SHOULD, HAVE TO, BE TO or NEED followed by the appropriate infinitive.

1. Mother always tells me that I ... (to be) more careful.
2. You ... not (to tell) him my telephone number, he knows it.
3. You ... not (to say) that! See how distressed she is.
4. I don't want to do it, but I....
5. All the same, I think you ... (to see) a doctor. There must be something the matter with you.
6. Don't forget that you ... (to get up) at seven!
7. But there was no other way out. I ... (to communicate) with him. No one else knew her address.
8. Such things ... not (to be allowed).
9. You ... not (to write) such a long composition. The teacher only asked for 200 words, and you have written 400.
10. "Perhaps I... not (to trouble) you." He closed his lips tight. He was offended.

Ex. 12. Translate the sentences into English, using MUST, OUGHT, SHOULD, NEED, HAVE TO or BE TO.

1. Извините, что задержал вас, но мне надо было позвонить домой и предупредить, чтобы меня не ждали к обеду.
2. В конце концов мы решили, что нам не следует там дольше оставаться и что нужно отправляться в горы.
3. Ты должна одеться в самое лучшее, я хочу, чтобы ты произвела на всех наилучшее впечатление.
4. Вы должны были приготовить домашнее задание как следует. Тогда бы вам не пришлось задавать подобных вопросов.
5. Напрасно ты ждала столько времени. Тебе бы лучше было оставить мне записку. Я бы сделала все, что ты хотела.
6. Они, должно быть, работают в лаборатории. Не следует им мешать.
7. Почему ты не пришла вчера? – Я должна была встречать двоюродную сестру на вокзале. – Тогда ты должна была бы позвонить, мы бы тебя не ждали.
8. Поступай, как знаешь, я не собираюсь мешать тебе, кроме того, мне предстоит вскоре уехать.
9. Вечер, вероятно, будет интересным. Студенты так долго готовили его.
10. Нет ничего смешного в том, что он сказал. Нужно быть серьезнее.
11. Ему придется работать здесь, пока лаборатория ремонтируется.
12. Ты сказал, это шутки ради, а она обиделась. Нужно быть более внимательным к людям.

13. Подготовка к их приезду заняла у нас целый день. Каждому пришлось что-то сделать.

14. Такие люди достойны восхищения.

15. Мне не пришло в голову поговорить с ним, а следовало бы.

16. Не разрешай детям играть в моей комнате. Они перевернут там все вверх дном, а тебе потом придется приводить все в порядок.

17. Вам не нужно было беспокоить профессора. Я мог бы дать вам всю необходимую информацию.

18. Им следовало бы удержать его от такого неразумного шага. Они еще пожалеют об этом.

19. Я точно следую указаниям, которые получила. Я хорошо знаю, с чего мне надо начинать.

25. SHALL, WILL, WOULD

SHALL is never a purely modal verb. It always combines its modal meaning with the function of an auxiliary expressing futurity.

Meanings:

1. Compulsion or strict order. In this meaning it is always used with the second and third persons.

• *She shall go off tomorrow.* – *Она уедет завтра же.*

In interrogative sentences **SHALL** is used in the first and third persons to inquire after wish of the person addressed.

• *Shall I shut the door, madam?* – *Закреть дверь, мадам?*

• *Shall he go there?* – *Идти ему туда?*

2. Threat or warning. In this meaning it is also used in the second and third persons.

• *You shall repent of this neglect of duty.* – *Вы еще раскаетесь в том, что пренебрегаете долгом.*

• *You shall be punished if you go on behaving like this.* – *Ты будешь наказан, если будешь продолжать так себя вести.*

3. Promise (second, third, first persons).

• *You shall do what you like.* – *Вы будете делать, что хотите.*

WILL is hardly ever a purely modal verb. It generally combines its modal meaning with its function of an auxiliary expressing futurity.

Meanings:

1. Volition, intention. In most cases this meaning is rendered in Russian by emphatic intonation, but sometimes the verb *хотеть* is used. It is used with all persons but mostly with the first person.

• *Besides since happiness is irrevocably denied me, I have a right to get pleasure out of life: and I will get it, cost what it may.* – *Кроме того, раз счастье для меня невозможно, я вправе получать от жизни удовольствие, и я буду получать его, чего бы это ни стоило.*

Very often WILL is used after the conjunction *IF* in conditional clauses where it retains its modal meaning of volition.

• *You may laugh if you will but I was sure I should see her there.* – *Можете смеяться, если хотите, но я был уверен, что встречу ее там.*

2. Polite requests.

• *Will you have a cup of tea?* – *Не хотите ли чашечку чая?*

3. Persistence referring to the present or to the future.

• *She begins to act very strangely. She will not speak, she will not eat.* – *Она начинает вести себя очень странно. Она не желает говорить, она не желает есть.*

WILL is also used in speaking about lifeless things when the speaker is annoyed at something and speaks about a thing or a phenomenon of nature as if it possessed a will of its own.

• *It's no use trying to open the door, it will not open.* – *Нечего стараться открыть эту дверь – она все равно не откроется.*

WOULD was originally the past tense of WILL.

Meanings:

1. Volition. In this meaning it is mostly used in negative sentences.

• *She was going away and would not say where she was going.* – *Она уезжала и не хотела сказать, куда едет.*

2. Persistence.

• *I asked him not to bang the door, but he would do it.* – *Я просил его не хлопать дверь, а он все продолжал хлопать.*

WOULD is also used in speaking about lifeless things in the same way as WILL.

• *And it was all he could see, for the sedan doors wouldn't open and the blinds wouldn't pull up.* – *И это было все, что ему было видно, так как двери портшеза никак не открывались и занавеси никак не поднимались.*

Practice

Ex. 1. Translate the sentences, comment on the use of the verb *SHALL*.

1. You shall do as you are told to.
2. I advise you to keep your word. If you don't, you shall repent.
3. We shall get a new flat in a month.
4. Shall I help you?
5. Shall he come to your place to help you with your luggage?
6. If I have enough money, you shall have the book you asked me for.
7. She shall come back, believe me.

Ex. 2. Translate the sentences, comment on the use of the verbs *WILL* and *WOULD*.

1. Though the work is difficult, I will do it, and it will be done well!
2. Will you kindly pass me the salt?
3. I will do it whether you like it or not!
4. Would you be so kind as to shut the window?
5. She pushed the door, but it would not open.
6. I asked him not to switch on the radio early in the morning but he would do it.

Ex. 3. Comment on the use of the verbs *WILL*, *WOULD*, *SHALL*.

1. "Would you go along? Would you?" Samson said to him. "I might", Roy said with obvious trickery. "If I go."
2. "Go now to the bridge. I will look after the equipment... It shall be covered and no one shall touch it," the woman of Pablo said.
3. "I can't stand it any more, Emmy," Jos said, "I won't stand it; and you must come with me."
4. "Sophia, will you take this medicine, or won't you?" – "I won't take it," said Sophia. "
5. "But I shall not let you," he said angrily. "You cannot prevent me," she retorted. "But I will prevent you."
6. "Mrs. Smith," he returned, laughing, "upon my honor, no. I will make no such pretence to you."
7. "I don't know what she saw in me to marry me, but she saw something in me, I suppose, or she wouldn't have married me."
8. "That Politt creature wouldn't have had the least idea what to do."
9. "Do come and see Miss Emily, Miss Marple. I'm sure it would do her good."
10. "Will you please tell me about it?" she said.
11. "Will my saying acquit him? Will they believe me?"

12. She shook her head, smiling a little. "Yes, you would like to know. But I shall not tell you. I will keep my secret."

13. "Wondering why I hide my beauty, dear? Afraid it may tempt you? But you shall see – you shall see."

14. "All is over. Shake hands, old man, for the last time." "Yes," replied he, "I will shake hands; for, as sure as I am here, I bear no malice."

15. "Will you do me a favour?" "With pleasure," replied the other. "What shall it be?"

Ex. 4. Comment on the modal colouring of the following sentences with SHALL.

1. You shall not search my rooms. You have no right to do it. I forbid you!

2. He hasn't seen you and he shan't.

3. The police shall take you up.

4. All right; if she wants to be entertained, she shall be.

5. You shall go up and down and round the town in a taxi every day.

6. You shall have all the news I can send you.

7. "Shall I order a taxi?" he asked.

8. That shall be put an end to now and for ever!

Ex. 5. Comment on the meaning of WILL and WOULD. Translate the sentences.

1. I will let you know, so you can be there.

2. I will tell you what it is.

3. I will make your excuses to Margaret.

4. If it had been a girl I would have called her after my mother.

5. Will you go out on the terrace and look at the sunset?

6. I am afraid – if you will excuse me – I must join my wife.

7. Arthur, would you mind seeing if Mrs. Erlynne has come back?

8. I want a photograph of you, – would you give me one?

9. Will you ask them to call my carriage, please?

10. Will you go and look over the photograph album that I see there?

11. I will never speak to you again.

12. No, no! I will go back, let Arthur do with me what he pleases.

13. But I told him I wouldn't give him an answer till tomorrow.

14. You did want to come, although you wouldn't say so.

15. She'd like you to ring her up this afternoon, before five-thirty, if you would.

16. I should be so glad if you would tell him to come up, Jane.

17. I knocked more than once but she wouldn't let me in.

18. "I wish you would leave me alone sometimes," said Dora.

19. I suppose this will be the last ball of the season?
20. He would sit on the bed beside him and watch him for hours.
21. I smoke like a chimney! And my lighter won't work.

Ex. 6. Comment on the meaning of *SHALL* and *WILL*. Translate the sentences.

1. Where shall we put this vase?
2. I want to be helpful to you both; if you will let me.
3. Don't you worry about anything. I will be all right.
4. "You must always come to me if anything goes wrong." "Of course, I will," she said as if she were soothing him.
5. Will there be time to buy the tickets?
6. I'll begin again and you shan't stop me this time!
7. "Do give my love to Christine," said Dora. "Surely I will," said Michael.
8. Children, have you been playing with my umbrella? It won't open!
9. They shall not pass!
10. Will you have something to drink?
11. How long will your friends be here?
12. You shall have it back tomorrow.
13. As he can't create anything himself, he is determined you won't.
14. Will you come to tea tomorrow?
15. He shall never come here again! I'll take care of it.
16. If you will wait here a moment, I'll fetch you a chair.

Ex. 7. Fill in the blanks with *SHOULD* or *WOULD*.

1. "If I see him," I said, "I'll let you know." "I ... be very much obliged if you ...," said Brown.
2. But I ...n't lie about a thing like that, ... I?
3. ... you drive us back to Campden Hill?
4. She ...n't go in to supper with anyone but Winton.
5. If I were you, I ... buy that hat, I like the colour very much.
6. It's ridiculous that you ... conceal it from your mother.
7. If only Henrietta ... make up her mind to marry him.
8. Why ... I suffer more than I've suffered already? Why ... I?
9. ... you care to come to tea with us?
10. He ...n't look at her. He shook her off gently and gently said, "We'll see about that."
11. He pressed something into her palm. "Here's a shilling in case you ... need it."
12. I wonder if you ... mind me laying down my umbrella.

13. Why, oh! Why ... I have to expose my misfortune to the public like this?

14. He ... rather listen to the others than talk himself.

15. He ordered that the horses ... be saddled.

16. She ... sit for hours watching the ships.

17. I wish you ...n't quarrel with Jessie.

18. He fully believed, had it been necessary, she... have been a genius at anything.

19. In order to make these demands effective we suggested that there ... be no return to work today.

20. Why don't you want to stay another week in the country? It ... do you only good.

Ex. 8. Translate the sentences into English, using SHOULD or WOULD.

1. Он предложил, чтобы собрание было назначено на пятницу.

2. Мы спросили маму, не возражает ли она против поездки за город на машине.

3. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы ты с отцом не спорила.

4. С какой стати я стану помогать ему? Он просто ленится и все может сделать сам.

5. Удивительно, как некоторые дети невнимательны к своим родителям!

6. Вполне естественно, что студенты хотят знать как можно больше о народе, язык которого они изучают.

7. Не будете ли вы любезны немного подождать? Ваши документы еще не готовы.

8. Нам хотелось узнать некоторые детали, но он не стал ничего обсуждать с нами. Мы были разочарованы.

9. Доктор настаивает на том, чтобы она строго соблюдала диету.

10. Принести вам стакан воды? – Да, если вы будете так любезны.

11. Необходимо, чтобы каждый член клуба принимал участие в работе его секций.

12. Если она вдруг спросит вас об этом, скажите, что я ей обо всем напишу сам.

13. Не хочешь ли немного супа? Он очень вкусный.

14. За чаем, который они пили с лимоном, Сомс сказал, что скоро будет война.

15. Зачем мне делать то, что мне не нравится? – Неважно, нравится тебе это или не нравится. Это следует сделать, и ты это знаешь.

16. Я, пожалуй, почитаю с полчаса перед сном. У меня интересная книга.

17. Я был бы вам премного обязан, если бы вы пришли в шесть часов.
18. Почему мне знать, что они собираются делать? Они никогда ничего мне не говорят.
19. Как я ни старался, ящик не выдвигался.
20. Детям следовало бы остаться дома в такую скверную погоду.

REVISION EXERCISES ON MODAL VERBS

Ex. 1. Comment on the meaning of the modal verbs and translate the sentences.

1. If you want to meet lots of English people, you might like to go to a holiday camp.
2. The only trouble is I couldn't take my exams in spring and must have them now.
3. My parents had to go on an expedition, they are geologists, as you know, and I was left to keep house.
4. You are to take a table-spoonful of this mixture three times a day.
5. In this hurry-scurry I must have left the sugar-basin in the dresser.
6. He couldn't pay his hotel bill and they wouldn't give him any more credit.
7. The swim shouldn't take you much over an hour and a quarter.
8. I needn't have hurried; he wasn't ready yet.
9. We are to have a lecture now.
10. May I have a look at the photos?
11. There must be some mistake here.
12. He said you were the prettiest girl present. – He can't have possibly meant it.
13. If you are interested in churches and historic places you should go to Westminster Abbey, the Houses of Parliament, St. Paul's and the Tower.
14. I'm told one ought to see the British Museum.
15. I couldn't imagine that in an English paper I should have to look for the chief articles in the middle of the paper.
16. If you don't take care of yourself, you may have a nervous breakdown and have to go to hospital.
17. You can't come in. You mustn't have the disease I have.
18. The germs of influenza can only exist in an acid condition.
19. I hear they are to choose the players tomorrow for the All-Union match.

Ex. 2. Use the verbs CAN or MAY.

1. One ... never know what... happen.
2. You ... have sent us a note at least! We waited for you the whole day.
3. Do you think you ... command an army?

4. Well, your wives ... not like the lady I'm going to marry.
5. Last winter he ... be seen in the club any night.
6. What ... Anne be doing all this time in the kitchen?
7. Whatever the reason ... be, the fact remains.
8. She ... have lost her ring herself, it ... not have been stolen.
9. Who ... have said such a thing?
10. Somebody ... have given her my address.
11. Such difficulties ... be easily put up with.
12. If only I ... make him understand me properly.
13. I ... have helped him but I didn't receive his letter.

Ex. 3. Fill in the blanks with *SHOULD, NEED, HAVE TO* with the appropriate form of the infinitive.

1. I ... (to prepare) for my coming exam yesterday, but I ... (to look after) my sick sister.
2. He ... not (to get up) early. He begins working at 9:30.
3. "I ... (to say) those wounding words," he reproached himself.
4. It isn't the sort of thing one ... (to discuss) with unknown people.
5. You ... not (to worry) about money. I've got enough for both of us.
6. You ... not (to walk) all the way to the station. You ... (to take) a bus round the corner.
7. Sooner or later one ... (to choose).
8. Mother ... (to get up and down) a good bit during the meal, fetching things back and forward.
9. I managed to get there at half past twelve. But I ... not (to hurry). They had already left.
10. Breakfast is often a quick meal, because the father of the family ... (to get) away to his work, children ... (to go) to school, and the mother has her housework to do.
11. If you are interested in historic places you ... (to go) to Westminster Abbey.
12. She drew a chair near his – he wondered if he ... (to help) her with the chair – and sat down beside him.
13. They ... (to knock) twice before the door was opened.
14. She ... (not to give) money to her boy. Then it wouldn't have happened.
15. She ... (to conceal) her real feelings lest anyone ... (to notice) how unhappy she was.
16. You ... (not to come) yourself. You may send somebody else.

Ex. 4. Translate the sentences into English, using modal verbs.

1. У него плохо со зрением, и он вынужден постоянно носить очки.
2. Не нужно звонить, у меня есть ключ.

3. Не может быть, чтобы дверь была открыта. Я сама ее заперла.
4. Возможно, он уже достал билеты, и мы сможем пойти на премьеру в воскресенье.
5. Неужели ты забыл о нашей встрече?
6. Ему следовало бы быть осторожнее при проведении эксперимента.
7. Что он может делать там так долго? Наверное, он просто уснул. Ты же знаешь, он может заснуть где угодно и в любое время.
8. Никогда нельзя судить по первому впечатлению. Оно может оказаться ошибочным.
9. Вам следует прочесть эту книгу. Она вам должна понравиться.
10. Вам обязательно сообщат, если в этом будет необходимость.
11. О, как вы пожалеете о своих словах!
12. Он выглядит очень радостным: его работу, очевидно, одобрили.
13. В самом деле, ты могла бы предупредить меня заранее! Тогда мне не пришлось бы тратить столько времени понапрасну.
14. Вы должны были сделать вид, что не заметили, что она хромает.
15. Должно быть, очень приятно путешествовать на юге.
16. Вы могли бы с таким же успехом сделать это сами.
17. Не может быть, чтобы он отправил телеграмму. Он не выходил из дому. Он, наверное, забыл.
18. Вам бы не надо было сообщать им об этом сегодня. Можно было подождать до завтра.

Ex. 5. Insert the appropriate modal verb.

1. He has insulted our family and he ... suffer for it!
2. You ... not have gone out without an umbrella in such rainy weather.
3. I'm afraid I ... have sounded a bit unfriendly over the phone.
4. "I ... to have told Soames," he thought, "that I think him comic."
5. We ... live to their age, perhaps.
6. Here she ... sit, sewing and knitting, while he worked at the table.
7. Why ... you be different from other people?
8. "Good morning," said the girl. "I believe you ... be Toby. Have I guessed right?"
9. If you ... read without spectacles, and I believe you ... be so good as to read this letter for me.
10. Captain Steerforth, ... I speak to you for a moment?
11. Anne felt she ... not stand much more of this discussion. She said she ... go on with her work and began to rise.
12. Why... one make trouble for oneself when one is old?
13. ... you do me a favour and meet her at the station?
14. He was not old, he ... not have been more than forty.

15. The day we ... to start it rained worse than ever.
16. You ... not hurry. There is plenty of time.
17. Mother has fallen ill, so I ... to change my plans.
18. We didn't know what to do; the key... not turn and we ... not get into the room.
19. I ... not to have left Cape Town last night. I wish I had not.
20. ... I speak to Mr. Pitt, please? – I'm afraid he's out at the moment. ... you ring back later?

Ex. 6. Translate the sentences into English using modal verbs.

1. Его зовут Фостер. Возможно, вы слышали его имя.
2. Женщина в синем костюме, стоящая у окна, кажется мне знакомой. Должно быть, я где-то встречал ее.
3. Нигде не могу найти эту пластинку. Неужели ее разбили?
4. Напрасно я сказала ему это. Вероятно, он обиделся на меня.
5. Всё обязательно будет в порядке! Ваша дочь непременно поправится!
6. Вы вчера поздно вернулись; вам сегодня следует пораньше лечь спать.
7. Ты не должна была так говорить с ней; она этого не заслужила. Кроме того, она старше тебя.
8. Необходимо, чтобы каждый студент принял участие в этом соревновании.
9. Нельзя же без конца говорить об одном и том же!
10. Председатель предложил, чтобы все присутствующие высказали свое мнение по этому вопросу.
11. Вам не придется ничего выдумывать. Вам скажут, что делать.
12. Вы никогда о нем не слышали? Ну, так вы еще услышите!
13. Джейн не могла забыть день, который должен был быть днем ее свадьбы и который так трагически закончился.
14. Мне теперь не нужно рано вставать: я учусь во вторую смену.
15. Не может быть, чтобы я пропустил его. Я все время стоял у дверей.
16. Незачем ему было работать так поздно. Часть работы можно было отложить на сегодня.
17. Могу я предложить вам чашку чаю, доктор?
18. Нельзя быть таким нетерпеливым. Всегда следует считаться с привычками других людей.
19. Вы должны вести себя так, словно ничего не случилось и не могло случиться.
20. Вам часто приходится ходить к врачу?
21. Не будете ли вы добры помочь мне отпереть чемодан? Что-то неладно с замком, и он никак не открывается.

22. Он должен был прийти в пять часов, мы ждем его полтора часа, а его все нет. Где бы он мог быть?

23. Зачем нам помогать ему? Он просто не хочет работать.

24. Он присылал ей подарки, но она упорно не хотела их принимать.

Ex. 7. Choose the right modal verb.

1. We.... cancel the meeting. The proposals are not ready yet.

a) may b) can c) have to

2. Sorry I won't be in Moscow at that time. I go to Minsk. My parents will celebrate their fortieth anniversary.

a) must b) need to c) may

3. Youthank them. They've done so much for you.

a) can b) may c) ought to

4. The shop was losing money, so they close down.

a) must b) had to c) could

5. You exercise every day to keep fit.

a) can b) may c) must

6. He is overworking. He really go to bed earlier.

a) may b) can c) should

7. I have a splitting headache. I.....take an aspirin.

a) may b) can c) must

8. I know you.....do the job because you have knowledge and experience.

a) can b) may c) have to

9. We told him he.....go home.

a) could b) may c) can

10. Youdrive carefully, it's foggy today.

a) can b) could c) should

11. Times are hard but I.....survive.

a) may b) ought to c) must

12.....you travel to the UK without a visa?

a) should b) must c) can

13. She.....visit her parents more often.

- a) may b) should c) needs to

14. The child.....not part with his old teddy bear.

- a) shall b) can c) may

15. Must I work this weekend? – No, you.....

- a) mustn't b) can't c) needn't

16. It is difficult to work with her. Sometimes she.....be very hard to deal with.

- a) can b) must c) have to

17. Jack.....look for another job in a month. His position was cut back.

- a) can b) will have to c) must

18..... I park my car here?

- a) can b) may c) shall

19. She pass her exams otherwise she will be expelled from the university.

- a) is able to b) must c) may

20. If she really tries she.....pass the exam.

- a) may b) can c) must

Ex. 8. Complete each sentence with an appropriate modal verb.

1. In my dream the gates were closed but I ____ to pass through.

2. We ____ have looked a strange pair as we walked into the hotel restaurant that day.

3. The man who owns Manderley. You ____ have heard of it – a beautiful old house in the west of England.

4. Everyone who left the restaurant ____ to walk past this seat.

5. I went up to her rooms as slowly as I ____.

6. He stood up at once and said, "You ____ not keep your dressmaker waiting.

7. There is just one letter that I thought ____ interest you.

8. You'll need a nurse to look after you. You ____ stay in bed for a week or two.

9. The whole general effect reminded him of someone or something – but for the moment he ____ not recollect who or what it was.

10. I do not bargain. I am an expert. For the services of an expert you ____ to pay.

11. I calmed down after a while – after all, the thing was done and you ___ not expect a woman to behave with any sense.

12. I arrived in Paris during one of those long national holidays which ___ sometimes last a week.

13. Mrs John Dashwood had never been a favourite with any of her husband's family, but never before had she had the opportunity of showing them how inconsiderate and selfish she ___ act when the situation required it.

14. Furthermore, the balcony railing was broken. This was quite dangerous and ___ have caused an accident.

15. She wants to be a singer, you think she ___ go for a long-term career with job security and eventually retire with a good pension.

Ex. 9. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Ви можете допомогти мені з цим важким питанням? Я ніяк не можу зрозуміти його.

2. Чому ти не сказала, що повинна бути там раніше? Ми б викликали таксі.

3. Тобі слід бути уважнішим на уроках, бо ти завжди не слухаєш вчителя, а потім робиш багато помилок.

4. Діти не повинні плавати в басейні без нагляду дорослих. Це дуже небезпечно.

5. Він дійсно може бути вдома зараз, тому що я бачив його машину біля будинку.

6. Клер не змогла зрозуміти запитання, тому її відповідь була досить нечіткою, й вона отримала погану відмітку.

7. Ти не пам'ятаєш, що ми мали зустрітися біля кінотеатру? Чому ти не прийшов?

8. Джек даремно купував усі ті речі, він витратив занадто багато грошей, і його мати буде дуже незадоволена.

9. Дітям не треба було робити домашнє завдання, тому що літо вже розпочалося і школу було зачинено на канікули.

10. Книжки, можливо, допоможуть підготуватися до іспитів, але все ж таки тобі слід було відвідувати заняття протягом року.

11. Вистава мала відбутися п'ятого лютого, але її відмінили через хворобу диригента.

12. Петро пояснив, що саме в той день захворіла його сестра, і він мав опікуватися нею.

13. Не може бути, що він більше не цікавиться своєю працею.

14. Він гадав, що замість того, щоб сердитися на нього, вона мала б радіти його успіхам.

15. Але він не міг довго розмірковувати, він був надто зайнятий; він повинен був обслуговувати всіх пацієнтів.

16. Він погодився приїхати до неї, хоча подумав, що вона могла б запросити й Христину.

17. Невже вона забула, як кохала мене?

18. Не може бути, щоб вона забула наше чудове літо.

19. «Це має бути місіс Бетсі», – подумала Кейті, побачивши незнайому даму, яка гуляла садом.

20. Невже вона поїхала і навіть не захотіла побачити дитину?

21. Вона не могла так зробити, не зважаючи навіть на те, що іноді її поведінка може здаватися дивною.

22. Анна знайшла інше застосування цієї книзи: на ній мав спати її кіт на підвіконні.

23. Тобі часто думав, що його тітонька могла б приїхати та познайомитися з його дружиною.

24. Зазвичай я ходжу до театру пішки, але вчора я вийшов з дому запізно, тому змушений був викликати таксі.

25. Вам не слід дозволяти їй читати, коли так темно, це може зашкодити її зору.

Ex. 10. Fill in a modal verb and the appropriate form of the infinitive in brackets.

1. I'm getting fat. I really ___ (try) to lose some weight, like the doctor said.

2. What a lovely day! ___ (we\go) for a walk?

3. I'm not sure where Gary is. He ___ (be) at the library.

4. That ___ (not\be) Bill's car. He doesn't own one.

5. Tom ___ (sleep) but I'm not sure. Why don't you go and see?

6. Don't worry. You ___ (not\dress) formally for the party.

7. If you wanted to borrow my car, you ___ (ask) me.

8. This dog ___ (belong) to Harry. It's got his address on its collar.

9. Only authorized personnel ___ (enter) this area.

10. You ___ (not\smoke) in some public places.

11. I saw John in the town center this morning. He ___ (go) to Spain yet.

12. Fortunately he ___ (convince) the police that he was innocent.

13. Tom drives really well now. He ___ (pass) his driving test easily.

14. She ___ (be) at the party last night. She was ill.

15. They ___ (announce) the winners on March 16th. It's scheduled.

16. She ___ (start) working on Monday. The manager has told her to.

17. I missed the film last night because I ___ (work) late.

18. Everyone in the world ___ (have) food and shelter.

19. You ___ (comply) with the regulations. We expect you to do so.

20. People ___ (treat) animals in a better way but they don't always do so.

Ex. 11. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Use the word given and other words to complete each sentence.

1. It wasn't necessary for you to bring me flowers as I already had a lot.
Needn't You _____ flowers.
2. Perhaps he left the car unlocked.
May He _____ the car unlocked.
3. I'll carry that bag for you.
Like Would _____ that bag for you?
4. I advise you to drive more quickly.
Should You _____ slowly.
5. I'm sure he lied to you.
Have He _____ to you.
6. It's possible that Ann is looking for a new job.
May Ann _____ a new job.
7. It was not necessary for him to pay for the damage, although he did.
Needn't He _____ for the damage.
8. You are not allowed to leave until the exam has finished.
Mustn't You _____ the exam has finished.
9. I'd better start saving for my summer holiday.
Should I _____ for my summer holiday.
10. It's possible that you forgot to pick up your change.
Have You _____ up your change.
11. It wasn't necessary for them to pay for our meal, but they did.
Paid They _____ for our meal.
12. Is it possible that hats are coming back into fashion?
Be Could _____ back into fashion?
13. It wasn't necessary to get dressed up, so we didn't.
Need We _____ get dressed up.

Ex. 12. Insert a proper modal verb and translate the sentences.

1. I said, "I am Martin. We have met before, though you ___ have forgotten. Palmer asked me to meet you. ___ I carry something?"
2. There is a man I know, you ___ have met him, a man named Tompson.
3. I ___ neither lie comfortably in bed nor find anything to do with myself if I got up.
4. It was dark in the room. The lights in the house ___ have gone out.
5. Where is that funny boy? – He ___ be anywhere, he is so restless.
6. Your mother arranged that she ___ to come down from London in the evening.
7. I didn't save a penny last year and so I ___ to come here for the summer.

8. Surely he ___ have told you how much he hates me.
9. There were thirty poems in the collection and he ___ to receive a dollar for each.
10. Never forget that we ___ always think of others and work for others.
11. I had the door painted only last week, you ___ be more careful!
12. You must be mistaken, he ___ be more than thirty, dear. He looks so young.

Ex. 13. Rephrase the following sentences using modal verbs.

1. You aren't allowed to park your car in the college car park.
2. I strongly advise you to speak to your parents about your decision.
3. It isn't necessary for Emma to attend tomorrow's staff meeting.
4. Jack is obliged to wear a suit and a tie at work because the manager says so.
5. Susan is obliged to work overtime because her boss says so.
6. Perhaps Laura has left the phone off the hook.
7. It wasn't necessary for Peter to wash the dog, so he didn't.
8. I'm sure Helen didn't know about her surprise party.
9. Surgeons are obliged to scrub their hands before operating on patients.
10. Emily managed to reach the top shelf, even though she didn't have a ladder.
11. Do you mind if I take the rest of the day off?
12. Why don't we go to a Japanese restaurant for a change?
13. It wasn't necessary for Betty to call a taxi because I gave her a lift.
14. You aren't allowed to keep pets in the building.
15. It wasn't necessary for Jane to attend the meeting but she did.

Ex. 14. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Вы можете взять эту книгу, если хотите.
2. Можешь сразу не соглашаться, подумай несколько дней, ведь это, должно быть, сложный вопрос.
3. Я должна купить торт, потому что, возможно, приедут гости.
4. Он, должно быть, видел этот памятник, когда был в нашем городе.
5. Им незачем было переезжать в другой город, потому что Джон отказался от этой работы.
6. Вам следовало извиниться, и вы не должны были продолжать этот глупый спор.
7. Вам следует поговорить с ними до того, как они расскажут все родителям.
8. Дети должны быть более внимательны к своим родителям.

9. Не может быть, что она такая молодая, ведь она уже больше десяти лет работает в этой школе.

10. Моя сестра, должно быть, поехала в библиотеку, ведь ей нужно готовиться к отчету.

Ex. 15. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Ти можеш купити цю книжку; вона зараз у продажу.
2. Не може бути, щоб вона зараз була вдома, я бачила її машину біля цирку.
3. Можна скористатися вашим телефоном?
4. Ти міг би бути трохи уважнішим, ти ж розумів, що поряд багато дітей!
5. Завтра ми повинні прийти до школи о восьмій годині.
6. Щоб потрапити на поїзд, я мушу встати о шостій.
7. Вона подивилася на полицю, але грошей там не було. Певна річ, їх узяла Мейбл.
8. Вам слід більше відпочивати, ви вже не такий молодий, щоб постійно працювати.
9. Я зовсім не мав грошей і тому змушений був продати більшість своїх речей.
10. За планом ми мали працювати дві години кожного ранку.
11. Їх не можна було побачити на головних вулицях.
12. Я часто пишу йому, але він не відповідає.
13. Не треба було виконувати цю вправу письмово.

26. GENERAL REVISION

Ex. 1. Open the brackets to make the story complete. Retell it.

Deciding the Future

Now Mr. Rochester was becoming angry, and he looked as if he (be) about (lose) control. But I knew I still had the power (calm) him. So I took his hand and stroked it, (say), "I do love you, but there is only one thing for me (do). I must (leave) you. If I (live) with you like that, I (be) your mistress." "Jane, I want you (listen) to my story. My father loved money very much and he hated the idea (divide) the family property, so he left it all to my elder brother. I (have to) marry a rich girl. Very soon I (discover) that my bride's mother was mad and that it ran in the family. We lived for four years. She was course and stupid, and her madness also made her violent. Well, in moments of despair I intended (shoot) myself, but in the end I decided (bring) the

mad woman here. Once she nearly burnt me in my bed, and the second time she visited you. She must (remind) of her own wedding day at (see) your wedding dress. I travelled all over Europe, Jane, (look) for an ideal, for a woman (love). Finally, bitter and disappointed, I returned to Thornfield on a frosty winter afternoon. And when my horse slipped and fell on the ice, a little figure appeared and insisted (help) me. Soon I began (depend) on you for my happiness.”

“Don’t talk any more of the past, sir,” I said, (wipe) a secret tear from my eye. “No, Jane, it was stupid of me (marry) you like that without (explain). I should (confess) everything as I do now. I promise (love) you for ever.” “No, sir, it (be) wicked to do what you want. You can only (trust) in God and yourself. Live without (do) wrong, and die (hope) to go to heaven.” “But you have no family (offend) (live) with me!” He was beginning (sound) desperate. I knew that what he said was true. However, in my heart I also knew I had the right (leave). He seemed (read) my thoughts. (Rush) furiously across the room, he stared fiercely into my eyes. I stared firmly back at him. He (can) (break) me in two with one hand, but he (can) not (break) my spirit. “Goodbye, my dear master!” I said. “May God (protect) you!”

That night I only slept a little, (dream) of the red room at Gateshead. The moonlight shone into my bedroom, and suddenly I saw a white figure on the ceiling (look) down at me. It seemed (whisper) to my spirit, “Daughter, leave now before you are tempted (stay).” “Mother, I will,” I answered. I woke up (find) that it was still night. I wrapped up some clothes in a parcel, and crept downstairs, (fear) lest Mr. Rochester (hear) me (leave) his house. While (go) down, I (can) (hear) my master (walk) up and down and (sigh). I could (find) heaven in this room if I (want). But I stopped (reproach) myself and went miserably out of the house.

(Walk) along on the road, I could not (help) (think) of Mr. Rochester’s despair at (find) himself abandoned. I hated myself for (wound) him. I wanted desperately (be) with him, (comfort) him, but somehow I made myself (keep) (walk). When I heard a coach (pass) by, I arranged (travel) on it as far as my money (allow). Inside the coach I cried the bitterest tears of my life.

(after Charlotte Bronte)

Ex. 2. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Не зная правил игры, они ушли, не приняв в ней участия.
2. Услышав новости, которые были потрясающими, она не могла не расплакаться от счастья.
3. Не настаивайте, чтобы я выступила. Я пришла, чтобы расслабиться. Я с таким нетерпением ждала этого события.

4. Наши партнеры, работавшие в Нидерландах, сейчас работают в Бельгии.

5. Нам нужно еще так много сделать, прежде чем мы уедем: почистить зимние вещи, подстричься, пройти техосмотр.

6. Малыш перестал плакать, только лишь когда мать остановилась, чтобы купить ему шоколадку.

7. Вы можете избежать сложных ситуаций тем, что будете более терпеливы, сдержанны и находчивы.

8. Всегда неприятно, когда человек разговаривает, не глядя вам в глаза.

9. – Что-то мне не хочется сегодня работать. Стоит ли вообще идти в офис? – Это тебе решать.

10. Мы поблагодарили его за то, что он помог нам.

11. Он определенно скоро придет. Он достаточно умен, чтобы понять, что мы те люди, которые ему помогут.

12. Ее манера одеваться раздражает меня.

Ex. 3. Read the texts, translate them and comment on the verbals.

1. Meredith cleared her throat, and went on, “I never had any sense of identity when I was young. Not knowing who you are and where you come from is very frightening. It’s almost like being a non-person. Since I didn’t have an identity, I invented myself. But now getting my birth certificate means a great deal to me.”

2. Always, in the past, Meredith had used work to subjugate heartache, bring it to heal. Working hard until she dropped had enabled her to keep her mind off her troubles, to function properly.

3. Left alone, Meredith and Eunice looked at each other carefully without speaking. It was Eunice who finally said at last, “You’ve grown up to be a wonderful-looking woman, and you’ve certainly made a go of it, you really have. Living in America, owning all these inns.”

4. Reed Jamison was speechless. In all of his forty-one years he had never been discarded by a woman. He had always been the one to end affairs or start them controlling, manipulating, pulling the puppet’s strings and getting his own way. He continued to stare at Meredith. She was the only woman who had ever bested him, and a terrible rage began to fulminate in him. He leapt to his feet, glaring at her. “I’m glad I found out what kind of woman you really are! Before I made the terrible mistake of marrying you!” he shouted.

5. After that she managed to put the matter out of her mind; she had always had the ability to pigeonhole problems until it was the appropriate time to deal with them. And so she managed to get through the next few days without dwelling too much on her health or mental state.

6. After this sleepless night I was eager to see Mr. Rochester in the morning, but there was no sign of him. He had obviously told the servants that he had accidentally set fire to his room by knocking over a lighted candle. As I passed his bedroom, I saw Grace sitting inside, calmly mending the curtains. She certainly did not look mad enough to have tried to murder her master. But I decided to investigate.

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Он стоял, словно громом пораженный. Непредвиденный поворот событий заставил его почувствовать себя победленным.

2. – Я сейчас читаю «Униженные и оскорбленные» Ф. Достоевского. – А я читаю «Отверженные» Виктора Гюго.

3. Представьте себе, сколь многого мы еще не знаем, сколь многое остается скрытым от нас.

4. Застигнутый врасплох, мальчик спрятал руки за спину.

5. Мы ценим все усилия, сделанные вами.

6. Гости разъехались по домам, весьма заинтригованные.

7. Хлеб, выпекаемый в этой пекарне, особенно вкусен.

8. Давайте будем считать это дело решенным.

9. Она выглядела глубоко обиженной.

10. Ребенок рыдал над разбитой игрушкой.

11. Войдя в столовую, мы увидели (обнаружили), что стол уже накрыт.

12. Методы, используемые для тестирования знаний студентов, не всегда эффективны.

13. Давно забытые мечты ожили в его душе.

14. Обещание, данное ею в последний момент, тяготило ее.

15. Когда этот роман был экранизирован, он имел мгновенный успех.

16. Незамеченный, он внимательно наблюдал за всем и всеми.

17. Увядающая роза – символ давно забытой любви.

18. Заново отремонтированный, дом выглядел новым, как с иглолки.

19. Предоставленный самому себе, мальчик стал разбирать новую игрушку.

20. Сконструированный по последнему слову техники, автомобиль вызвал всеобщее восхищение.

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. Каждая женщина знает, что если у нее плохое настроение, то она должна купить что-то новое или же сделать прическу.

2. Мне подарили новые серьги. Нужно проколоть уши.

3. Мне опять разбили окно в машине. Нужно срочно установить сигнализацию.

4. Три месяца назад мы подали заявку на установку нового телефона. Мы все еще ждем.

5. Нужно пройти техосмотр. Но перед этим нужно сменить покрышки, зарядить аккумулятор, залить бак.

6. У него отобрали права за то, что он нарушил правила движения.

7. Смотри, чтобы тебе не прищемило пальцы дверью.

8. У моей бабушки частые головные боли. Ей нужно проверить сосуды.

9. – Реклама говорит, что если хочешь иметь ослепительную улыбку, нужно отбелить зубы. – Мне нужно их сначала запломбировать.

10. Если ты не хочешь, чтобы у тебя опять угнали машину, держи ее в гараже, а не на улице.

11. Мне нужно сделать встроенные шкафы в квартире (to recabinet).

12. Они собираются окрестить своего ребенка в следующее воскресенье.

13. Вам нужно подписать все бумаги, прежде чем идти к юристу.

14. Пока не пришла зима, мне нужно сдать в чистку все зимние вещи.

15. У него сдуло ветром шляпу и унесло далеко в море. Нужно покупать новую.

16. Я проявила пленки и заплатила целое состояние за это.

17. Мне нашли комнату.

18. Им доставили пиццу в комнату.

19. Им должны установить новую копировальную машину в четверг.

20. Фермер собрал урожай в конце августа.

Ex. 6. Read and translate the sentences. Comment on the difference in the functions of the verbals.

1. Being short-sighted, she wears contact lenses. Being short-sighted can cause problems.

2. Reaching the crest of the hill, we stopped to admire the view. Reaching the crest of the hill will take all my strength.

3. Being rather absent-minded, he tends to forget things. Being absent-minded can cause serious troubles.

4. Having no money, they decided to stay at home. Having no money can't stop them from marrying.

5. Not having a work permit, he couldn't get a job. Not having a work permit can be the reason for being refused.

6. Fastening their seat belts, they prepared to land. Fastening your seat belt is a must when the plane takes off and lands.

7. Feeling tired, I decided to go to bed. Feeling tired is no excuse for being rude to your children.

8. Being ambitious, he hopes to get promotion. Being ambitious is the driving force to success.

Ex. 7. Translate into English.

1. Картины, висящие в этом зале, принадлежат кисти Левитана, Поленова, Коровина.

2. Картины, висевшие в зале номер пять, сейчас реставрируются.

3. Платье, выставленное в витрине магазина, стоит в целом состоянии.

4. Платье, висевшее в витрине магазина, исчезло.

5. Девочка, качающаяся на качелях, – моя внучка.

6. Мальчик, катавшийся здесь на велосипеде, убежал купаться на речку.

7. Вчера была открыта новая линия метро, соединяющая этот район с центром города.

8. Панамский канал, соединяющий Тихий океан с Атлантическим океаном, был официально открыт в 1920 году.

9. Вертолет, летящий над шоссе, преследует черный джип.

10. Самолет, летевший в Бразилию, исчез из поля зрения час назад.

11. Студенты-медики не могли не восхищаться хирургом, проводившим эту уникальную операцию.

12. Хирург, сделавший эту операцию, обещал пациенту быстрое выздоровление.

13. Его внимание привлекла девушка, сидевшая напротив него в метро.

14. Девушка, сидевшая напротив него в вагоне, вдруг встала и вышла.

15. Через открытую дверь мы могли слышать студентов, репетировавших новогодний концерт.

16. Студенты, готовившиеся к фонетическому конкурсу, уже ушли.

Ex. 8. Read and translate the sentences. Define the verbals and their functions.

1. Not wanting to stir up bad memories, he said carefully: "I got the impression you didn't have a very good childhood."

2. The cause of your tiredness is an emotional problem. Or you could be depressed without knowing it.

3. Closing her eyes, she tried to push the fear away, not understanding why she was so frightened.

4. It's easy to get injured in a football match without knowing how it happened.

5. Since I live in the land of political correctness, my car is the only place where I can smoke without getting dirty looks.

6. Not willing to take “no” for an answer, Norris came up with a plan.

7. Not knowing quite how to begin, she started in a roundabout way.

8. The boy made it home without running into more trouble.

9. Without ever having been told, he knew intuitively that Irina would be closely tied to the movement.

10. Maxim glanced at the first page and put the paper down, not being in the mood to read it.

11. Not a day went by without her thinking of them.

12. One day, as she was scolding me, I suddenly threw a question at her. The words just came out without my planning to say them.

13. Not giving him a chance to say another word, Meredith walked rapidly to the elevator.

14. Forgive me for bursting in on you like this without warning.

15. After hanging up the coat in the hall closet, Teddy crept gingerly up the stairs, having no wish to disturb her aunt.

16. On the doorstep, Harry Potter rolled over inside his blankets without waking up. The boy slept on, not knowing he was special, not knowing he was famous, not knowing he would be woken in a few hours' time by Mrs.'s scream as she opened the front door to put out the milk bottles.

Ex. 9. Translate into English.

1. Он забыл, что звонил мне, и позвонил во второй раз и в конце разговора сказал: «Не забудь позвонить мне вечером».

2. Помню, как мы мечтали о студенческой жизни. Я всегда помню, что нужно позвонить моим друзьям по особым датам.

3. Моя дочь любит готовить. Сегодня она хотела бы приготовить пиццу с грибами.

4. Многие люди предпочитают оставаться за городом в жаркие дни. А я бы предпочла сейчас уехать к морю.

5. Бабушка запрещает курить в доме. Она разрешает внукам курить на балконе.

6. Он никогда не забудет, как впервые встретил ее.

7. Перестань укорять меня. Ведь мы остановились, чтобы поговорить.

8. Сожалею, что сказала вам это. С сожалением сообщаю вам, что самолет опаздывает на два часа.

9. Они продолжали танцевать всю ночь. Он продолжил учиться, чтобы стать юристом.

10. Если вы хотите усовершенствовать свой английский, вы можете попытаться смотреть фильмы. Я пытаюсь бросить пить кофе.

11. Когда я был ребенком, я имел обыкновение ломать многие игрушки. Когда я была студенткой, мне пришлось привыкать к тому, чтобы много читать.

12. Полы нужно натереть, ковры пропылесосить, а окна помыть.

Ex. 10. Comment on the meanings of the modal verbs in bold type.

1. My mother said I never **should** play with the Gypsies in the wood. If I did so, she **would** say, "Naughty Girl, if you disobey your hair **won't** curl, your shoes **won't** shine. Naughty Girl, you **won't** be mine."

2. Supposing she **had** to return home to Mother without Jack. She **couldn't**. She **wouldn't**, she vowed to herself. She **would** stay in this country and search until the Black Leaf was found, even if she **had** to wait for years ... and here her tears began to flow again.

3. "You'll **have** to be very **cautious**, missie, if you go back to the wood," said Farmer Rose. "It **wouldn't** do for you to get caught, too." "But I **mustn't** be afraid of anything now."

4. "Let's stop! It **wouldn't** do for us to run on him like this. It **might** look as if we were – oh, well, it **would** look funny, you know."

5. You **must** try to get a good rest tonight, and then you **can** start off fresh in the morning – and you **mustn't** cry anymore or you'll make yourself ill.

6. What **ought** she to do, she wondered. **Should** she open the envelope? What was she to do with it?

7. I don't feel I **dare** go out again. I **will** wait here. I can trust no one.

8. He, who spends more than he **should**, **shall not have** to spare when he **would**.

9. You **can't** make me let him do what he **ought not** to do.

10. – You **needn't** explain, Fred. – But I want to. I **have** to. We **must** improve the situation.

11. "I **must** have this mink coat! I **can't** bear somebody else wearing it," she said to her husband. "Very well, my dear, you **shall** have the coat!"

12. The past **can't** be helped! It's the future we **can** help, and it's the future we **should** give our thought to.

13. I daresay, I **can't** make him change the way he dresses. He **needs** a new style, he really does.

14. Little birds that **can** sing and **won't** sing **must** be made to sing.

Ex. 11. Read the texts, translate them and comment on the meanings of the modal verbs in bold type.

I. The next morning everybody was waiting for Charlie to start opening his present. Charlie looked down at the bar of chocolate lovingly. How he wished there could be a Golden Ticket inside it! Then

his mother said gently, “You **mustn’t** be too disappointed, if you don’t find what you’re looking for, my dear. You really **can’t** expect to be as lucky as all that.” But the grown-ups knew that however small the chance **might** be of striking lucky, the chance was there. The chance **had** to be there. Very slowly Charlie’s fingers began to tear the wrapper, but when he did it there was no sign of a Golden Ticket.

II. “Did you love my Chocolate Factory, Charlie?” Mr. Wonka asked the boy. “Oh, yes, it’s the most wonderful place in the world. I **couldn’t** believe my eyes when I saw it. Can it be really yours? It **must** have been a dream!” “I am very pleased to hear you say that”, said Mr. Wonka, looking more serious than ever. “I have decided to make you a present of the factory. I have no children of my own, no family at all. Someone **has** to keep it going, I don’t want a grown-up person at all. He **wouldn’t** listen to me, he **wouldn’t** learn. So I **have** to have a child, I want a good sensible boy, one whom I can tell all my most precious sweet-making secrets – while I am still alive. We **must** go at once and fetch the rest of your family. They **can** all live in the factory from now on! They **can** all help to run it until you are old enough to do it by yourself!”

III. Matilda knew she **had** to tell somebody about what had happened with the glass. She **couldn’t** possibly keep the gigantic secret like that bottled up inside her. What she **needed** was just one person, wise and sympathetic, who **could** help her to understand the meaning of this extraordinary happening. She knew her parents almost certainly **would** fail to realize what an astonishing event had taken place that afternoon. So, the one person she **would** like to confide in was Miss Honey. Matilda said, “Please may I talk to you for a moment?” “Of course you may. What’s troubling you?” “I made the glass tip over, and I did it with my eyes.” Miss Honey did not think Matilda was meaning to tell a lie. “**Could** you do it again?” she asked, not unkindly. “I don’t know,” Matilda said, “but I think I **might be able to**.” Miss Honey moved the now empty glass to the middle of the table. “**Should** I put water in it?” she asked, smiling a little. “I don’t think it matters, but it may take some time.” “Take all the time you want, I’m in no hurry.” Miss Honey replied, smiling a little. “I **have** to stare at it very, very hard, and then I can feel it happening behind my eyes,” the little girl explained.

Ex. 12. Insert the verbs CAN, COULD, MAY, MIGHT, SHOULD, WOULD.

1. It is very curious that you ... take that view.
2. It is disappointing that he ... know so little.
3. If the enterprise ... succeed, he will be a rich man.

4. I hope I ... be famous some day.
5. I ... not despair even though I... lose all my money.
6. He declared he ... not believe it, even though he ... see it with his own eyes.
7. It ... be so, though I doubt it.
8. He ... perhaps succeed, if he changed his way of living.
9. If there were less ice it... be easy to reach the Pole.
10. I ... come and see you next summer, but my plans are not fixed.
11. If the matter were less involved, I... possibly be able to help you.
12. However poor a man ... be, he has always something to be thankful for.
13. If it... turn out wet, we must seek shelter where we can.
14. I am grieved that you ... be so overworked.
15. If disaster... come upon us, we will cling to our leader.
16. Pigs ... fly, but they ... be strange birds.
17. If that... happen, we could only say it was contrary to our experience.
18. Yet we trust that the sun ... continue to rise as before, and that we ... be alive to enjoy its warmth.

Ex 13. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Вы, возможно, правы, но я все-таки не могу согласиться с вами.
2. Возможно, он получит первую премию.
3. Мне, возможно, понравится этот фильм, хоть мне не нравятся боевики.
4. Она, возможно, сумеет сдать историю английского языка с первого раза.
5. Она, возможно, смогла бы пройти интервью, если бы постаралась.
6. – Могу я взглянуть на фото? – Да, конечно.
7. Не могла бы я пройти сегодня в банк без пропуска?
8. Вы, возможно, неправильно истолковали мои слова.
9. Когда врач сказал, что я могу покинуть больницу, то я просто не мог поверить в это.
10. Какая жалость, что ребенок не умеет плавать! Это может ему очень понадобиться в жизни.
11. Каким бы важным это дело ни было, я не могу сейчас им заниматься.
12. Кто бы он ни был, он должен играть по правилам.
13. Где бы вы ни были, мы всегда вспоминаем вас с любовью.
14. Как бы вы ни старались, но я не уступлю.
15. Все, что бы он ни сказал или сделал, всегда умиляет ее.
16. Ужасно, когда ты не можешь вспомнить чье-то имя.

16. Если вы хотите преуспеть, то вам следует набраться знаний, опыта и терпения.

17. Тебе следует проконсультироваться у профессионала, прежде чем принимать какие-либо решения.

18. А не следует ли мне начать брать уроки вождения?

19. Единокровных детей не следует разлучать.

20. Тебе не следует есть так много конфет! Это же плохо для тебя.

21. Замороженные продукты следует разморозить, прежде чем готовить их.

22. Я убеждена, что тебе следует обратиться к врачу по поводу сердечной боли.

23. В больших городах животных следует держать под контролем.

24. Животных не следует запира́ть в клетки, им следует жить в естественных условиях.

25. Как настоящему другу тебе не следовало бы скрывать правду, тебе следовало все мне рассказать именно в тот критический момент.

26. Не следует тебе так много думать о нем. Свет клином на нем не сошелся.

27. Раньше нужно было думать об этом, моя дорогая! Но делать нечего, давай посмотрим, что можно сделать.

28. Вам следовало давным-давно бросить пить и курить. Нужно было думать о своем здоровье смолоду.

29. – Ну откуда же мне знать, как она поживает? – Как близкому родственнику тебе следовало бы знать это.

30. Тебе не следовало брать с нее пример все эти годы! То, что хорошо для нее, не может быть хорошо для тебя. Вы абсолютно разные люди.

31. Вам следовало высадить луковицы осенью, если вы хотели, чтобы цветы появились весной.

Ex 14. Translate the sentences into English.

1. – Можно взглянуть на этот документ, инспектор? – Боюсь, что пока нет.

2. Решение может быть очень простым, можешь мне поверить.

3. – Можно мне вызвать портье? – Можно было бы, если бы вы жили в этом отеле.

4. Вы, возможно, приняли меня за сестру. Мы близнецы.

5. Я, может быть, совершаю ошибку, но я не вижу другого выхода.

6. Вы, возможно не осознаете этого, но вы великий человек.

7. Я был уверен, что могут появиться другие проблемы.

8. Он уверил нас, что мы можем прийти в любой удобный для нас день.

9. Ребенок поинтересовался, можно ли ему посмотреть еще два мультика.

10. Он, вероятно, опаздывает. Застрял, наверное, где-нибудь в автомобильной пробке.

11. Я не уверена, но, возможно, они встретились на чьей-то свадьбе.

12. – Она выглядит так, словно ничего не случилось. – Она, вероятно, не слышала последних новостей.

13. Вы могли бы оказать им финансовую помощь! Теперь они обанкротились.

14. – Ты мог бы быть более отзывчивым, дорогой! – Уж какой есть.

15. Она решила, что может воспользоваться машиной отца.

16. На олених можно охотиться только лишь в определенное время года.

17. Она никогда не может прийти вовремя.

18. Нельзя игнорировать влияние всеобщей компьютеризации.

19. Они были счастливы, что сумели помочь друзьям.

20. – Ты можешь ей помочь? – Мог бы, если бы хотел.

21. Она не могла заставить себя приняться за работу.

22. Петр не посоветовался с отцом, а ведь он мог бы дать ему дельный совет.

23. Эмили и в голову не приходило, что с Робертом могло что-то случиться.

24. Не может быть, чтобы он был такой жестокий! Не мог он этого сделать!

25. Где она может быть? Неужели она все еще делает покупки?

26. У него есть слабые стороны, это верно. И все-таки не мог он вас так подвести.

27. Не может быть, чтобы редактор не заметила этой ошибки.

28. Я тебе не верю, ты не мог не узнать меня. Неужели я так изменилась?

29. Неужели вы его неправильно поняли? Ведь он так четко все объяснил.

30. Неужели вы не нашли время, чтобы поговорить с сыном?

31. Не может быть, чтобы она неправильно истолковала его слова. Ведь это на него непохоже.

32. Он просто не мог этого сделать! Он не может быть настолько глуп!

33. Не могу не смотреть телевизор до конца по вечерам, и это просто ужасно.

34. Мне ничего не остается, как уступить вам. (Не могу не уступить вам.)

35. Ну что я могу сказать? Правилам нужно подчиняться.

36. В этой горячей точке могла разразиться война, но, к счастью, люди сумели предотвратить ее.

Ex 15. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Тебе в самом деле нужен этот словарь? Но ведь он такой дорогой! Ты можешь пользоваться моим.
2. Если тебе не хочется, то незачем ехать с нами.
3. Ни к чему торопиться. У нас еще масса времени.
4. Необязательно сдавать плащ в чистку. Он чистый.
5. Напрасно я брала сегодня зонтик. Дождя так и не было.
6. Зачем ты вымыла окна? Они же чистые. Не нужно было делать этого.
7. Холодильник полон. Тебе незачем идти за продуктами.
8. Не нужно было покупать шоколад! Не много ли ты его ешь?
9. Мне вчера не пришлось рано вставать, и поэтому я ото-спался.
10. Вы совершенно напрасно так рано поднялись сегодня! Ведь сегодня воскресенье, или вы забыли?
11. Вы нуждаетесь в отдыхе, не нужно отрицать, что вы пере-работали.
12. Ни к чему было брать такси. От станции до моего дома рукой подать.
13. – Мне нужны верные друзья. – А кому же они не нужны?
14. Я независим, и мне ни к чему просить денег у родителей.
15. Только не рассказывай мне, что ты опять забыл о нашей встрече. Не нужно мне было волноваться и торопиться.
16. – Им срочно нужна твоя помощь! – В самом деле?
17. Мне нужен был отдых от всей этой сумасшедшей жизни, и я уехала в Сочи.
18. Тебе нужно снять розовые очки и реально взглянуть на жизнь.

Ex 16. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Что же мне делать, сэр? Должен ли я уехать?
2. Мы условились встретиться завтра.
3. Детектив обязан провести расследование.
4. Детектив должен был провести расследование, но обстоятель-ства изменились.
5. Премьер-министр должен вылететь в Ирак через неделю.
6. Генерал должен был вылететь на Балканы, но ситуация изме-нилась, и пилоту пришлось повернуть самолет обратно.
7. Нина должна была сделать массу вещей, но забыла о них.
8. Я знала, что этому суждено было случиться.
9. Он должен был выступить на конференции, но неожиданно заболел.
10. Какой беспорядок! Кто должен был делать уборку сегодня?

11. Ни в коем случае вы никому не должны говорить об этом!

12. Они собирались пожениться, но этому не суждено было случиться.

13. А откуда мне было знать, что это судьба? И что ему суждено было стать моим мужем?

14. Ты не съешь ни одной конфетки перед обедом, а то я очень, очень рассержусь на тебя!

15. Они направились в зал, где должен был состояться аукцион.

Ex. 17. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Сегодня Александру необходимо поехать в центр города, потому что у него там деловая встреча.

2. Наконец-то она купила себе машину, и теперь ей не приходится пользоваться автобусом.

3. Если вы хотите получить хорошее образование, то нужно много заниматься.

4. Я не могу пойти с вами на вечер, мне придется посидеть с младшей сестренкой.

5. Если он хочет быть здоровым, ему придется следовать советам врача.

6. Вчера мы хотели поехать на пикник, но не смогли, потому что вместо этого нам пришлось принимать неожиданных гостей.

7. Мистер Рич очень богат. Ему не приходится зарабатывать на жизнь.

8. Большинство овощей можно есть сырыми, их не приходится готовить.

9. По субботам моим детям не приходится как обычно ложиться спать в восемь часов, они могут не спать до девяти часов.

10. Сегодня мне не нужно готовить домашнее задание, я все сделала вчера.

11. – Вам никогда не приходится ездить в командировки, не так ли? – Бывает иногда.

12. Психологу приходится помогать людям преодолевать трудности, не так ли?

13. Мэри пришлось внимательно слушать, чтобы понять его.

14. Ей пришлось покориться его воле.

15. Твоему боссу никогда не приходится брать кредит в банке, не так ли?

16. Ей приходится думать о себе, защищать себя.

Ex. 18. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Вы должны следовать инструкции и ни в коем случае не должны нажимать на эту кнопку.

2. Чтобы преподавать грамматику, вы должны понять, что язык – это система.

3. Чтобы приготовить хороший торт, нужно сначала хорошенько взбить яйца.

4. Он, должно быть, очень силен. Посмотрите на его бицепсы. Он, по всей видимости, тренируется уже много лет.

5. Ты не должна приходить домой так поздно. Ты, должно быть, не можешь понять, что это опасно.

6. Он, должно быть, не узнал ее. Жизнь, вероятно, была сурова к ней.

7. Диктор, должно быть, неправильно произнес это трудное японское имя.

8. Луиза, должно быть, опять влюбилась. Достаточно просто посмотреть на нее.

9. Раненый, должно быть, был без сознания несколько дней, прежде чем охотники нашли его.

10. Дома, наверное, опять никого нет. Видимо, все ушли на концерт.

11. Извините, но вы, должно быть, либо неправильно услышали, или же неправильно истолковали мои слова.

12. – Марина, по всей видимости, ждет нас у клуба. – Да, и ждет, должно быть, с шести часов.

13. – Нужно ли связаться с агентством сегодня же? – Нет, не нужно. Но нужно сделать это завтра.

14. Вам нужно уходить. Вы, должно быть, устали.

15. Он, должно быть, в полном неведении, что ситуация кардинально переменялась.

16. Это, должно быть, была любовь.

Навчальне видання

**Всьчсва Ксенія Олександрівна
Мурич Валентина Володимирівна**

ПРАКТИЧНА ГРАМАТИКА АНГЛІЙСЬКОЇ МОВИ

Частина II

Навчальний посібник

(англійською, українською та російською мовами)

Редактор *М.С. Кузнецова*

Комп'ютерна верстка *А.Ю. Такій*

Підписано до друку 11.01.2018. Формат 60×84/16.

Ум. друк. арк. 18,13. Тираж 350 пр. Зам. № .

ВНЗ «Університет імені Альфреда Нобеля».
49000, м. Дніпро, вул. Січеславська Набережна, 18.

Тел. (056) 778-58-66, e-mail: rio@duan.edu.ua

Свідоцтво ДК № 5309 від 20.03.2017 р.

Віддруковано у ТОВ «Роял Принт».
49052, м. Дніпро, вул. В. Ларіонова, 145.

Тел. (056) 794-61-05, 04

Свідоцтво ДК № 4765 від 04.09.2014 р.